



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

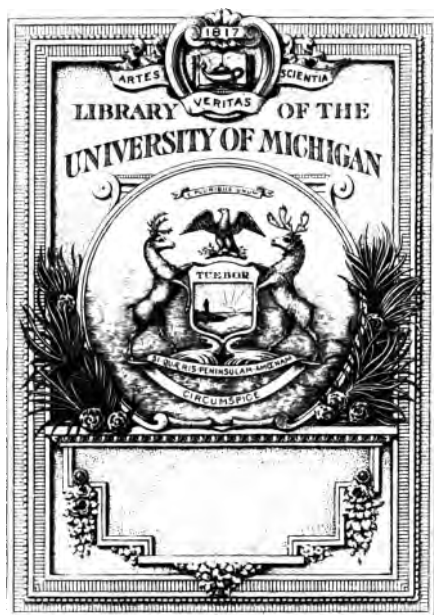
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

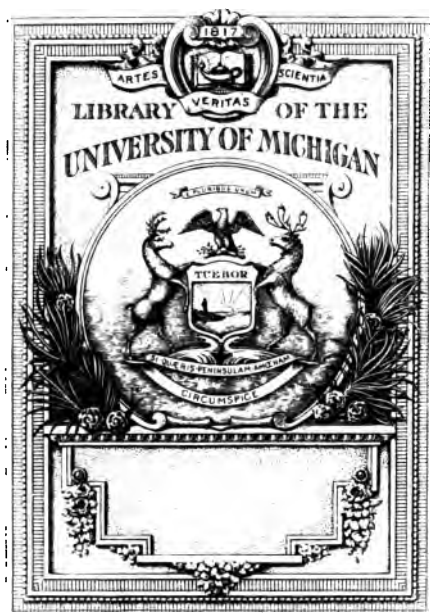
A 467813



SMITH'S  
SMALLER LATIN  
GRAMMAR







Edward H. H. 57. 3  
L. 1964 579  
H. 1964 & H. 1964

E. U. W.

Edward H. H. 1964  
L. 1964 & H. 1964



*W. Smith*

A SMALLER GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

For the Use of the Middle and Lower Forms in Schools.

THIRTEENTH EDITION.

Toronto:  
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY  
(LIMITED).  
1879.





4

9th  
5-13-30

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

| CHAP.                                                                      | PAGE |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| I. THE ALPHABET .. .. .                                                    | 1    |
| II. PARTS OF SPEECH, INFLEXION, STEM .. .. .                               | 3    |
| III. THE SUBSTANTIVE .. .. .                                               | 4    |
| IV. THE FIRST DECLENSION .. .. .                                           | 5    |
| V. THE SECOND DECLENSION .. .. .                                           | 6    |
| VI. THE THIRD DECLENSION .. .. .                                           | 8    |
| VII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION .. .. .                                         | 18   |
| VIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION .. .. .                                         | 19   |
| IX. IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES .. .. .                                         | 20   |
| X. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .                                        | 21   |
| XI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .                                       | 24   |
| XII. THE NUMERALS .. .. .                                                  | 27   |
| XIII. THE PRONOUNS .. .. .                                                 | 30   |
| XIV. THE VERB .. .. .                                                      | 35   |
| XV. THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.                                | 38   |
| XVI. DEPONENT VERBS .. .. .                                                | 58   |
| XVII. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.. .. .                                      | 60   |
| XXVIII. STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND<br>PECULIAR FORMS .. .. . | 61   |
| XIX. IRREGULAR VERBS .. .. .                                               | 65   |
| XX. DEFECTIVE VERBS .. .. .                                                | 73   |
| XXI. IMPERSONAL VERBS .. .. .                                              | 75   |
| XXII. ADVERBS .. .. .                                                      | 76   |
| XXIII. PREPOSITIONS .. .. .                                                | 78   |
| XXIV. CONJUNCTIONS.. .. .                                                  | 80   |
| XXV. INTERJECTIONS.. .. .                                                  | 81   |
| XXVI. APPENDIX A.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES                              | 82   |
| XXVII. APPENDIX B.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS                           | 89   |
| XXVIII. FORMATION OF WORDS. DERIVATION OF SUB-<br>STANTIVES .. .. .        | 101  |
| XXIX. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .                                     | 107  |
| XXX. DERIVATION OF VERBS .. .. .                                           | 110  |
| XXXI. DERIVATION OF ADVERBS .. .. .                                        | 112  |
| XXXII. COMPOSITION OF WORDS.. .. .                                         | 113  |

## PART II.—SYNTAX.

| CHAP.                                               | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------|
| XXXIII. OF SENTENCES .. .. .                        | 115  |
| XXXIV. CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT .. .. .               | 116  |
| XXXV. THE NOMINATIVE CASE .. .. .                   | 120  |
| XXXVI. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE .. .. .                  | 121  |
| XXXVII. THE GENITIVE .. .. .                        | 128  |
| XXXVIII. THE DATIVE .. .. .                         | 124  |
| XXXIX. THE ABLATIVE .. .. .                         | 140  |
| XL. THE VOCATIVE .. .. .                            | 148  |
| XLI. ADJECTIVES .. .. .                             | 149  |
| XLII. PRONOUNS .. .. .                              | 153  |
| XLIII. THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD .. .. .            | 159  |
| XLIV. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD .. .. .                   | 163  |
| XLV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .                   | 164  |
| XLVI. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .                   | 180  |
| XLVII. PARTICIPLES .. .. .                          | 184  |
| XLVIII. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE .. .. . | 186  |
| XLIX. THE SUPINES .. .. .                           | 188  |

## PART III.—PROSODY.

|                     |     |
|---------------------|-----|
| L. QUANTITY .. .. . | 190 |
| LI. METRE .. .. .   | 198 |

## APPENDICES.

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| I. THE CALENDAR .. .. .      | 208 |
| II. MONEY .. .. .            | 209 |
| III. ROMAN NAMES .. .. .     | 210 |
| IV. ABBREVIATIONS .. .. .    | 211 |
| V. VERSUS MEMORIALES .. .. . | 213 |

# A SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR.

## PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

### CHAPTER I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. The Latin Language was the language of *Latium*, of which Rome was the chief city. The conquests of the Romans caused it to spread over the rest of Italy, and over the greater part of France and Spain. The Latin Language is no longer spoken, but the French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages are mainly derived from it

§ 2. The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, being the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,  
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.  
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

*Obs. 1.* Originally *i* was used to express also the semivowel *j*, and *v* to denote both the vowel sound *u* and the semivowel sound *v*.

*Obs. 2.* The letter *y* does not belong to the old Latin alphabet, and occurs only in words borrowed from the Greek.

§ 3. The letters are divided into Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves; and Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a Vowel.

§ 4. The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

§ 5. Consonants are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Sibilants, and Semivowels.

The *Mutes* are divided according to the vocal organ which is chiefly employed in pronouncing them.

|                                   | Sharp or Thin.           | Flat or Medial. | Aspirated. |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|------------|
| <i>Labials</i> (lip-letters)      | <i>p</i>                 | <i>b</i>        | <i>f</i>   |
| <i>Gutturals</i> (throat-letters) | <i>c</i> ( <i>k, q</i> ) | <i>g</i>        | <i>h</i>   |
| <i>Dentals</i> (teeth-letters)    | <i>t</i>                 | <i>d</i>        | (none).    |
| SM. L. G.                         |                          |                 | B          |

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*.

The *Sibilants* are *s, x, and z*. *X* is compounded of *cs* or *gs*: *as, dux = ducs, a leader*; *rex = regs, a king*. *X* and *z* are sometimes called double consonants.

The *Semivowels* are *j* and *v*.

*Obs. 1.* *X* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: *as, Kalendariae, the Calends*.

*Obs. 2.* *Q* is used only before *u*: *as, sēquor, I follow*.

§ 6. A *Diphthong* is the blended sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use; and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

*Obs.* The diphthongs *ae (æ), oe (œ)*, are pronounced as *ē*.

§ 7. A *Syllable* consists of one or more letters pronounced together, and having only one vowel sound.

A *Syllable* is either *short, long, or doubtful*, according as the vowel belonging to it is pronounced rapidly, or slowly, or sometimes rapidly and sometimes slowly. This characteristic of a vowel or syllable is called its *quantity*.

A *short vowel* is marked by (˘): *as, pāter, a father*.

*Obs.* A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: *as, pūer, a boy*.

A *long vowel* is marked by (—), and may be either long by nature: *as, māter, a mother*; or long by position: *as, mēnsa, a table*; *dūx, a leader*. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

*Obs. 1.* These marks of quantity were not used by the Latin writers; serving only for grammatical purposes.

*Obs. 2.* All diphthongs are long by nature: *as, āurāe, breezes*.

A *doubtful vowel* is sometimes short, sometimes long: *as, amō or amō, I love, tenēbrae or tenēbrae, darkness*.

*Obs.* A vowel is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid, especially *l* or *r*: *as, dūplex or dūplex, twofold; tenēbrae or tenēbrae, darkness*.

§ 8. *Accent*.—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable: *as, mūsa, a muse, dōlus, deceit*.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long: *as, Rōmānus, a Roman*; or on the last syllable but two, if the last syllable but one is short: *as, dōminūs, a lord*.

## CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLEXION. STEM.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech :

I. The NOUN SUBSTANTIVE, or simply SUBSTANTIVE, is the name (Nōmen) of a person or thing: as, *Caesār, Caesar*; *vir, a man*; *dōmūs, a house*; *virtūs, valour*.

*Obs.* Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns*: all other Substantives are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives*.

II. The NOUN ADJECTIVE, or simply ADJECTIVE (Adjectivum, *joined to*), is joined to a Substantive to express its quality or nature: as, *bōnus vir, a good man*.

III. The PRONOUN (Prōnōmen) is used instead of a Substantive: as, *ēgo, I*; *tū, thou*.

IV. The VERB (Verbum, *word*) is the word by which we make an assertion about something: as, *ēquus currit, the horse runs*; *vir sēdet, the man sits*.

V. The ADVERB (Adverbium) is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning: as, *cēlērīter currit, he runs quickly*; *māgis pius, more dutiful*; *sātīs diū, long enough*.

VI. The PREPOSITION (Praepōsitio) is placed before Substantives to mark their relation to other words: as, *in, in*; *hābito in urbē, I dwell in the city*.

VII. The CONJUNCTION (Conjunctio) unites words and sentences: as, *et, and*; *ūt, in order that*: *vir et femīna, the man and the woman*; *ēdīmūs ūt vivāmus, we eat in order that we may live*.

VIII. The INTERJECTION (Interjectio) is a word of exclamation: as, *heu, alas*!

§ 10. There is no article in the Latin language: thus *dōmus* may be translated by either *house*, or *a house*, or *the house*.

§ 11. Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected: that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension* (Dēclensio): the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation* (Conjūgatio).

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called PARTICLES.

§ 12. The Stem of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away: thus, in *trab-s*, *a plank*, *trāb-is*, *of a plank*, *trāb-i*, *to a plank*, the Stem is *trāb*: and in *lĕg-o*, *I read*, *lĕg-is*, *thou readest*, the Stem is *lĕg*.

## CHAPTER III.—THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 13. There are three *Genders*: the *Masculine* (Masculinum), the *Feminine* (Femininum), and the *Neuter* (Neutrum).

*Obs.* Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*. The rules for the *Genders* are collected in §§ 141-148.

§ 14. There are two *Numbers* (Nūmēri): the *Singular* (Singulāris), which designates one, and the *Plural* (Plūrālis), which designates more than one.

§ 15. There are six *Cases* (Cāsūs):

I. The *Nominative* (Nōminātīvus) Case answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence: as, māgister docēt, *the master teaches*; dōmus est amplā, *the house is large*.

II. The *Genitive* (Gēnītīvus) Case answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, māgistri dōmus, *the master's house*; fōlia arbōrum, *the leaves of trees*.

III. The *Dative* (Dātīvus) Case answers the question *To* or *for whom?* *To* or *for what?* as, dō librum māgistro, *I give the book to the master*.

IV. The *Accusative* (Accūsātīvus) Case answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, amo māgistrum, *I love the master*. It also signifies motion *towards*: as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome*.

V. The *Vocative* (Vōcātīvus) Case is used for addressing: as, O māgistēr, *O master!*

VI. The *Ablative* (Ablātīvus) Case answers the questions *By* or *with what?* *When?* &c.: as, Hastā interfectūs est, *he was killed with a spear*; aestātē, *in the summer*. It also signifies motion or separation *from*: as, ābeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome*.

§ 16. All the Substantives in the Latin language are arranged in five classes, called Declensions, which may be distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

|                   | I.    | II.   | III.        | IV.  | V.    |
|-------------------|-------|-------|-------------|------|-------|
| <i>Gen. Sing.</i> | ae    | i     | is          | ūs   | eī    |
| <i>Gen. Plur.</i> | ā-rum | ō-rum | -um<br>i-um | ū-um | ē-rum |

The *Stems* of Substantives can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in:—

| I. | II. | III.                 | IV. | V. |
|----|-----|----------------------|-----|----|
| a  | o   | consonant<br>or<br>i | u   | e  |

## CHAPTER IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the First Declension, with the exception of a few Greek nouns, ends in *a*.

|      | Sing.                                |                     | Plur.                     |
|------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| Nom. | Mens- <i>a</i> , a table             | Mens- <i>ae</i> ,   | tables                    |
| Gen. | Mens- <i>ae</i> , of a table         | Mens- <i>arum</i> , | of tables                 |
| Dat. | Mens- <i>ae</i> , to or for a table  | Mens- <i>is</i> ,   | to or for tables          |
| Acc. | Mens- <i>am</i> , a table            | Mens- <i>as</i> ,   | tables                    |
| Voc. | Mens- <i>a</i> , O table [table.     | Mens- <i>ae</i> ,   | O tables                  |
| Abl. | Mens- <i>a</i> , by, with, or from a | Mens- <i>is</i> ,   | by, with, or from tables. |

*Obs.* The meanings here and in subsequent examples assigned to the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

**GENDER.**—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: *as*, *nauta* (masc.), *a sailor*.

## Examples for Declension.

|                          |                              |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>ala</i> , a wing.     | <i>hōra</i> , an hour.       | <i>silva</i> , a wood.       |
| <i>barba</i> , a beard.  | <i>poena</i> , a punishment. | <i>stella</i> , a star.      |
| <i>causa</i> , a cause.  | <i>fēmina</i> , a woman.     | <i>via</i> , a way.          |
| <i>coena</i> , a supper. | <i>porta</i> , a gate.       | <i>victōria</i> , a victory. |

*Obs.* 1. The stems of all substantives of the first declension end in *a*.

*Obs.* 2. The *Genitive Singular* ended originally in *as* (a contraction of *a-es*).

This ending is kept in *familia*, when compounded with *pater*, *mater*, *filius* or *filia*: *as*, *paterfamilias*, *the father of a family*; *Gen.* *patris familias*; *Dat.* *patris familias*, &c. In poetry the old form of the *Genitive ai* instead of *ais*, is sometimes found: *as*, *aquai*, *of the water*; *terrai*, *of the earth*.

*Obs.* 3. The *Genitive Plural* of some substantives ends in *um* instead of *arum*. The ending in *um* is found in the compounds of *cōla* and *gēna*: *as* *coelestium* from *coelestia*, *an inhabitant of heaven*; *terrigenum* from *terrigēna*, *earth-born*: also in *drachmum*, *amphorum*, from *drachma*, *amphora* (with numerals): and in Greek patronymics: *as*, *Aeneidum*, from *Aeneidēs*, *a descendant of Aeneas*.

*Obs.* 4. The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* of some words end in *ibus*: *as*, *deūbus* from *dea*, *a goddess*; *filibus* from *filia*, *a daughter*. This ending distinguishes them from corresponding masculine substantives of the second declension: *as*, *deīs* from *deus*, *a god*; *filis* from *filius*, *a son*. So likewise *duibus* from *duae*, *two*; *ambibus* from *ambae*, *both*. See § 68.

## § 18. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin end in *ā*, *es*, in the Nominative Singular, and are thus declined:—

| Feminine.                          | Masculine.                    | Masculine.                      |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Nom. Ēpītōm- <i>ā</i> , abridgment | Aenē- <i>ās</i> (proper name) | Anchis- <i>ēs</i> (proper name) |
| Gen. Ēpītōm- <i>ēs</i>             | Aenē- <i>ae</i>               | Anchis- <i>ae</i>               |
| Dat. Ēpītōm- <i>ae</i>             | Aenē- <i>ae</i>               | Anchis- <i>ae</i>               |
| Acc. Ēpītōm- <i>en</i>             | Aenē- <i>ūn</i> (am)          | Anchis- <i>ēn</i> (am)          |
| Voc. Ēpītōm- <i>ē</i>              | Aenē- <i>ā</i>                | Anchis- <i>ē</i> (ā, ē)         |
| Abl. Ēpītōm- <i>ē</i>              | Aenē- <i>ā</i>                | Anchis- <i>ē</i> (ā, ē)         |



## CHAPTER V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in *ūs* and *ēr* (*ir*), and of Neuter Substantives in *um*.

## A. Masculine.

| Sing.                           | 1.          | Plur.             |
|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| Nom. Dōmīn-ūs, a lord           | Dōmīn-I,    | lords             |
| Gen. Dōmīn-I, of a lord         | Dōmīn-ōrum, | of lords          |
| Dat. Dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord  | Dōmīn-is,   | to or for lords   |
| Acc. Dōmīn-um, a lord           | Dōmīn-ōs,   | lords             |
| Voc. Dōmīn-ō, O lord [a lord.   | Dōmīn-I,    | O lords [lords    |
| Abl. Dōmīn-ō, by, with, or from | Dōmīn-is,   | by, with, or from |

| Sing.                                       | 2.            | Plur.                      |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| Nom. Māgistr-, a master                     | Māgistr-I,    | masters                    |
| Gen. Māgistr-I, of a master                 | Māgistr-ōrum, | of masters                 |
| Dat. Māgistr-ō, to or for a master          | Māgistr-is,   | to or for masters          |
| Acc. Māgistr-um, a master                   | Māgistr-ōs,   | masters                    |
| Voc. Māgistr-, O master                     | Māgistr-I,    | O masters                  |
| Abl. Māgistr-ō, by, with, or from a master. | Māgistr-is,   | by, with, or from masters. |

| Sing.                            | 3.         | Plur.                   |
|----------------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. Puēr-, a boy                | Puēr-I,    | boys                    |
| Gen. Puēr-I, of a boy            | Puēr-ōrum, | of boys                 |
| Dat. Puēr-ō, to or for a boy     | Puēr-is,   | to or for boys          |
| Acc. Puēr-um, a boy              | Puēr-ōs,   | boys                    |
| Voc. Puēr-, O boy [boy.          | Puēr-I,    | O boys                  |
| Abl. Puēr-ō, by, with, or from a | Puēr-is,   | by, with, or from boys. |

## B. Neuter.

| Sing.                                     | Plur.                                |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Nom. Regn-um, a kingdom                   | Regn-ā, kingdoms                     |
| Gen. Regn-I, of a kingdom                 | Regn-ōrum, of kingdoms               |
| Dat. Regn-ō, to or for a kingdom          | Regn-is, to or for kingdoms          |
| Acc. Regn-um, a kingdom                   | Regn-ā, kingdoms                     |
| Voc. Regn-um, O kingdom                   | Regn-ā, O kingdoms                   |
| Abl. Regn-ō, by, with, or from a kingdom. | Regn-is, by, with, or from kingdoms. |

GENDER.—1. A few Substantives in *us* of the Second Declension are Feminine; the names of Trees, Towns, and Countries: *as*, pīrus, a pear-tree, Cōrinthus, Corinth; and a few other words: *as*, hūmus, the ground, alvus, the belly, cōlus, a distaff, vannus, a winnowing fan.

2. Three in *us* are Neuter: *vīrus*, poison; *pēlāgus*, the ocean; and *vilgus*, the multitude. The last is sometimes Masculine.

3. *All* Neuter Substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each Number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in *ä*.

Examples for Declension like *dōminūs*.

|                                             |                                      |                                           |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>albus</i> , food.                        | <i>annus</i> , a year.               | <i>nidus</i> , a nest.                    |
| <i>lūpus</i> , a wolf.                      | <i>rām</i> us, a branch.             | <i>hortus</i> , a garden.                 |
| <i>nūm</i> erus, a number.                  | <i>ri</i> vus, a stream.             | <i>cervus</i> , a stag.                   |
| <i>mā</i> lus ( <i>f.</i> ), an apple-tree. | <i>ul</i> mus ( <i>f.</i> ), an elm. | <i>prū</i> nus ( <i>f.</i> ), a plum-tree |

Examples for Declension like *māgister*.

|                        |                           |                         |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>ā</i> ger, a field. | cancer, a crab.           | <i>fā</i> ber, a smith. |
| <i>ā</i> per, a boar.  | <i>cā</i> per, a he-goat. | <i>lib</i> er, a book.  |

Examples for Declension like *puēr*.

|                                 |                                |                                 |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>sō</i> cer, a father-in-law. | <i>gē</i> ner, a son-in-law.   | <i>Liber</i> , Bacchus.         |
| <i>ves</i> per, evening.        | <i>ād</i> ulter, an adulterer. | <i>lib</i> eri (pl.), children. |

NOTE 1. The above are the only Substantives in *er* which preserve the *e* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, Obs. 1.

NOTE 2. *Vesper* is irregular. See § 53, Obs. 2.

Examples for Declension like *regnum*.

|                         |                           |                            |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>dō</i> num, a gift.  | <i>scū</i> tum, a shield. | <i>bell</i> um, war.       |
| <i>tec</i> tum, a roof. | <i>vin</i> um, wine.      | <i>templ</i> um, a temple. |

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the second declension end in *o*, as *dō*mino, *regno*, *puēro*, *māgisterō*. The Nominative Singular originally ended in *ōs*, and the Accusative in *om*: as, *dō*minō-s, *dō*mino-m: *puēro*-s, *puēro*-m. In the older writers and poets the *o* is usually found after *o*: as *servō*-s, *servo*-m, a slave.

Obs. 2. When the Genitive Singular ends in *ii*, it is often contracted into *i*: as, *filii* instead of *filii*, of a son; *ōti* instead of *ōtii*, of leisure.

Obs. 3. The Vocative Singular of *filius*, a son, *gēnius*, a guardian spirit, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in *i*: as, *filii*, O son; *gēni*, O guardian spirit; *Laeli*, O Laelius; *Tulli*, O Tullius.

Obs. 4. The Genitive Plural of some words ends in *um* instead of *orum*. This is especially the case with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, *nummum* from *nummus*, a piece of money; *sestertium* from *sestertius*, a sesterce, a silver coin (about 2d.); *mōdium* from *mōdus*, a Roman corn-measure, a peck; *fabrum*, from *fāber*, a smith.

Obs. 5. The only substantives of the second declension ending in *ir* are *vir*, a man, *Gen. vir-i*, &c., with its compounds, *triumvir*, &c.; and *lēvir*, *lēri*, a husband's brother, a brother-in-law.

Obs. 6. *Deūs*, God, is declined in the following manner:

|      | Sing.                          | Plur.                                                        |
|------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <i>Deūs</i> , God              | <i>Dei</i> , <i>Dii</i> , or <i>Di</i> , Gods                |
| Gen. | <i>Dei</i> , of God            | <i>Deōrum</i> or <i>Deūm</i> , of Gods                       |
| Dat. | <i>Deō</i> , to God            | <i>Deis</i> , <i>Ditis</i> , or <i>Dis</i> , to Gods         |
| Acc. | <i>Deum</i> , God              | <i>Deōs</i> , Gods                                           |
| Voc. | <i>Deūs</i> , O God [God.]     | <i>Dei</i> , <i>Dii</i> , or <i>Di</i> , O Gods [Gods.]      |
| Abi. | <i>Deō</i> , by, with, or from | <i>Deis</i> , <i>Dīs</i> , or <i>Dis</i> , by, with, or from |

The forms *Dei* (pl.) and *Deis* are rarely used.

## § 20. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin differ from the ordinary declension in the following points:—

1. Greek Substantives in *ōs* frequently have the Greek endings *ōs* and *ōn* instead of the Latin *ūs* and *um* in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Greek Substantives in *ōs* (*us*) of the Attic Second Declension generally retain the Greek declension, but they sometimes have in the *Gen. i* as well as *o*:

|                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Dēlōs        | Andrōgēōs           |
| <i>Gen.</i> Dēli         | Andrōgēi, Andrōgēō  |
| <i>Dat.</i> Dēlō         | Andrōgēō            |
| <i>Acc.</i> Dēlōn, Dēlam | Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō |
| <i>Voc.</i> Dēlō         | Andrōgēōs           |
| <i>Abl.</i> Dēlō         | Andrōgēō            |

*Obs.* Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnā*: as, *Andrōgēōnā*: so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnā.

3. Greek Substantives in *eus* (*eūs*) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension (except in the Nominative and Vocative), but frequently preserve the Greek declension:

|                            |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Orphēus        | Orphēus        |
| <i>Gen.</i> Orphēi, Orphēi | Orphēōs        |
| <i>Dat.</i> Orphēō         | Orphēi, Orphēi |
| <i>Acc.</i> Orphēum        | Orphēa         |
| <i>Voc.</i> Orphēu         | Orphēu         |
| <i>Abl.</i> Orphēō         |                |

4. The *Genitive Plural* in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *rum* or *um*: as, *Geōrgicōn libri*, *the books of the Georgics*.

## CHAPTER VI.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

§ 21. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

## A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

I. Substantives the stems of which end in the labial mutes *p, b*, and in the labial liquid *m*.

| Sing.                                   | 1.         | Plur.                   |
|-----------------------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Trab-s (f.), a beam         | Trāb-ēs,   | beams                   |
| <i>Gen.</i> Trāb-is, of a beam          | Trāb-um,   | of beams                |
| <i>Dat.</i> Trāb-i, to or for a beam    | Trāb-ībūs, | to or for beams         |
| <i>Acc.</i> Trāb-em, a beam             | Trāb-ēs,   | beams                   |
| <i>Voc.</i> Trab-s, O beam [beam.       | Trāb-ēs,   | O beams                 |
| <i>Abl.</i> Trāb-ē, by, with, or from a | Trāb-ībūs, | by, with, or from beams |

| Sing.                                    | 2.            | Plur.             |
|------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Princēp-s (m.), a chief      | Princēp-ēs,   | chiefs            |
| <i>Gen.</i> Princēp-is, of a chief       | Princēp-um,   | of chiefs         |
| <i>Dat.</i> Princēp-i, to or for a chief | Princēp-ībūs, | to or for chiefs  |
| <i>Acc.</i> Princēp-em, a chief          | Princēp-ēs,   | chiefs            |
| <i>Voc.</i> Princēps, O chief [a chief.  | Princēp-ēs,   | O chiefs [chiefs. |
| <i>Abl.</i> Princēp-ē, by, with, or from | Princēp-ībūs, | by, with, or from |

| Sing.                                 | 3.         | Plur.                  |
|---------------------------------------|------------|------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Hiēm-s (f.), winter       | Hiēm-ēs,   | winters                |
| <i>Gen.</i> Hiēm-is, of winter        | Hiēm-um,   | of winters             |
| <i>Dat.</i> Hiēm-i, to or for winter  | Hiēm-ībūs, | to or for winters      |
| <i>Acc.</i> Hiēm-em, winter           | Hiēm-ēs,   | winters                |
| <i>Voc.</i> Hiēm-s, O winter [winter. | Hiēm-ēs,   | O winters [ters.       |
| <i>Abl.</i> Hiēm-ē, by, with, or from | Hiēm-ībūs, | by, with, or from win- |

| Sing.                                  | 4.        | Plur.                     |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Urb-s (f.), a city         | Urb-ēs,   | cities                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Urb-is, of a city          | Urb-um,   | of cities                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Urb-i, to or for a city    | Urb-ībūs, | to or for cities          |
| <i>Acc.</i> Urb-em, a city             | Urb-ēs,   | cities                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> Urb-s, O city [city.       | Urb-ēs,   | O cities                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> Urb-ē, by, with, or from a | Urb-ībūs, | by, with, or from cities. |

*Obs.* 1. When a monosyllable Stem ends in two consonants, the *Gen. pl.* ends in *um*, not *um*: as *urb-lum*. So also below: *arz*, *Gen. Pl. arc-lum*; *mon*, *Gen. Pl. mont-lum*.

*Obs.* 2. When a Stem of more than one syllable has *s* in the last syllable, that *s* is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows: as, *Stem princēp*, *Gen. princēp-is*. So also below: *Stem jūdēc*, *Gen. ādic-is*; *Stem milēt*, *Gen. milēt-is*; *Stem nōmēn*, *Gen. nōmīn-is*.

## § 22. II. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural mutes c, g.

| Sing.                                  | 1.        | Plur.                      |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Dux (c. g.), a leader      | Dūc-ēs,   | leaders                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Dūc-is, of a leader        | Dūc-um,   | of leaders                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Dūc-i, to or for a leader  | Dūc-ībūs, | to or for leaders          |
| <i>Acc.</i> Dūc-em, a leader           | Dūc-ēs,   | leaders                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> Dux, O leader [leader.     | Dūc-ēs,   | O leaders                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> Dūc-ē, by, with, or from a | Dūc-ībūs, | by, with, or from leaders. |

|             | Sing.                         | 2.               | Plur.                         |
|-------------|-------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Lex</i> (f.), <i>a law</i> | <i>Lēg-ēs,</i>   | <i>laws</i>                   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Lēg-is,</i>                | <i>Lēg-um,</i>   | <i>of laws</i>                |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Lēg-I,</i>                 | <i>Lēg-ībūs,</i> | <i>to or for laws</i>         |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Lēg-em,</i>                | <i>Lēg-ēs,</i>   | <i>laws</i>                   |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Lex,</i>                   | <i>O law</i>     | <i>[law.</i>                  |
| <i>Abi.</i> | <i>Lēg-ē,</i>                 | <i>Lēg-ībūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from laws</i> |

|             | Sing.                                        | 3.                 | Plur.                           |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Jūdex</i> (c.), <i>a judge</i>            | <i>Jūdic-ēs,</i>   | <i>judges</i>                   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Jūdic-is,</i> <i>of a judge</i>           | <i>Jūdic-um,</i>   | <i>of judges</i>                |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Jūdic-I,</i> <i>to or for a judge</i>     | <i>Jūdic-ībūs,</i> | <i>to or for judges</i>         |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Jūdic-em,</i> <i>a judge</i>              | <i>Jūdic-ēs,</i>   | <i>judges</i>                   |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Jūdex,</i> <i>O judge</i> [ <i>judge.</i> | <i>Jūdic-ēs,</i>   | <i>O judges</i> [ <i>judges</i> |
| <i>Abi.</i> | <i>Jūdic-ē,</i> <i>by, with, or from a</i>   | <i>Jūdic-ībūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from</i>        |

|             | Sing.                             | 4.               | Plur.                              |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Arx</i> (f.), <i>a citadel</i> | <i>Arc-ēs,</i>   | <i>citadels</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Arc-is,</i>                    | <i>Arc-um,</i>   | <i>of citadels</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Arc-I,</i>                     | <i>Arc-ībūs,</i> | <i>to or for citadels</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Arc-em,</i>                    | <i>Arc-ēs,</i>   | <i>citadels</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Arx,</i>                       | <i>O citadel</i> | <i>O citadels</i>                  |
| <i>Abi.</i> | <i>Arc-ē,</i>                     | <i>Arc-ībūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from citadels.</i> |

## Examples for Declension.

|                     |                   |                 |                     |                   |                     |
|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| <i>nux</i> (f.),    | <i>nūc-is,</i>    | <i>a nut.</i>   | <i>grex</i> (m.),   | <i>grēg-is,</i>   | <i>a flock.</i>     |
| <i>fax</i> (f.),    | <i>fāc-is,</i>    | <i>a torch.</i> | <i>rēmex</i> (m.),  | <i>rēmīg-is,</i>  | <i>a rower.</i>     |
| <i>pax</i> (f.),    | <i>pāc-is,</i>    | <i>peace.</i>   | <i>pollex</i> (m.), | <i>pollīc-is,</i> | <i>the thumb.</i>   |
| <i>fornax</i> (f.), | <i>fornāc-is,</i> | <i>an oven.</i> | <i>index</i> (c.),  | <i>indīc-is,</i>  | <i>an informer.</i> |
| <i>vox</i> (f.),    | <i>vōc-is,</i>    | <i>a voice.</i> | <i>vertex</i> (m.), | <i>vertīc-is,</i> | <i>an eddy.</i>     |
| <i>rādix</i> (f.),  | <i>rādīc-is,</i>  | <i>a root.</i>  | <i>falx</i> (f.),   | <i>falc-is,</i>   | <i>a sickle.</i>    |
| <i>rex</i> (m.),    | <i>rēg-is,</i>    | <i>a king.</i>  | <i>merx</i> (f.),   | <i>merc-is,</i>   | <i>merchandise.</i> |

*Obs.* *Cs* and *gs* are contracted into *x*: as, *dux* instead of *duc-s*, *lex* instead of *leg-s*. In *nix*, *snow*, *Gen.* *nīv-is*, *Dat.* *nīv-I*, &c., the *Nom.* ends in *x*, because the Stem originally ended in a guttural.

§ 23. III. Substantives the Stems of which end in the dental mutes *t*, *d*.

|             | Sing.                                    | 1.                 | Plur.                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Aetā-s</i> (f.), <i>an age</i>        | <i>Aetāt-ēs,</i>   | <i>ages</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Aetāt-is,</i> <i>of an age</i>        | <i>Aetāt-um,</i>   | <i>of ages</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Aetāt-i,</i> <i>to or for an age</i>  | <i>Aetāt-ībūs,</i> | <i>to or for ages</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Aetāt-em,</i> <i>an age</i>           | <i>Aetāt-ēs,</i>   | <i>ages</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Aetā-s,</i> <i>O age</i>              | [ <i>an age.</i>   | <i>Aetāt-ēs,</i> <i>O ages</i> |
| <i>Abi.</i> | <i>Aetāt-ē,</i> <i>by, with, or from</i> | <i>Aetāt-ībūs,</i> | <i>by, with, or from ages.</i> |

|      | Sing.                      | 2.          | Plur.                     |
|------|----------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Nom. | Lāpī-s (m.), a stone       | Lāpīd-ēs,   | stones                    |
| Gen. | Lāpīd-is, of a stone       | Lāpīd-um,   | of stones                 |
| Dat. | Lāpīd-i, to or for a stone | Lāpīd-ibūs, | to or for stones          |
| Acc. | Lāpīd-em, a stone          | Lāpīd-ēs,   | stones                    |
| Voc. | Lāpī-s, O stone [a stone.  | Lāpīd-ēs,   | O stones                  |
| Abi. | Lāpīd-ē, by, with, or from | Lāpīd-ibūs, | by, with, or from stones. |

|      | Sing.                        | 3.          | Plur.                  |
|------|------------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| Nom. | Mīlī-s (c.), a soldier       | Mīlīt-ēs,   | soldiers               |
| Gen. | Mīlīt-is, of a soldier       | Mīlīt-um,   | of soldiers            |
| Dat. | Mīlīt-i, to or for a soldier | Mīlīt-ibūs, | to or for soldiers     |
| Acc. | Mīlīt-em, a soldier          | Mīlīt-ēs,   | soldiers               |
| Voc. | Mīlī-s, O soldier [soldier.  | Mīlīt-ēs,   | O soldiers [diers.     |
| Abi. | Mīlīt-ē, by, with, or from a | Mīlīt-ibūs, | by, with, or from sol- |

|      | Sing.                        | 4.         | Plur.                   |
|------|------------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. | Mon-s (m.), a mountain       | Mont-ēs,   | mountains               |
| Gen. | Mont-is, of a mountain       | Mont-um,   | of mountains            |
| Dat. | Mont-i, to or for a mountain | Mont-ibūs, | to or for mountains     |
| Acc. | Mont-em, a mountain          | Mont-ēs,   | mountains               |
| Voc. | Mon-s, O mountain            | Mont-ēs,   | O mountains             |
| Abi. | Mont-ē, by, with, or from a  | Mont-ibūs, | by, with, or from moun- |
|      | mountain.                    |            | tains.                  |

## Examples for Declension.

|                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| civītās (f.), civītāt-is, a state.    | obsēs (c.), obsīd-is, a hostage.     |
| virtūs (f.), virtūt-is, virtue.       | pars (f.), part-is, a part.          |
| sācerdōs (c.), sācerdōt-is, a priest, | serpens (c.), serpent-is, a serpent. |
| priestess.                            | ars (f.), art-is, an art.            |
| casēs (f.), cassīd-is, a helmet.      | frons (f.), front-is, a forehead.    |
| cōmēs (c.), cōmīt-is, a companion.    |                                      |

Obs. 1. *T* and *d* are dropped before *s*: as, aetā-s, lāpī-s, mīlī-s, mon-s, instead of aetat-s, lāpīd-s, mīlet-s, mont-s.

Obs. 2. In *nox*, noct-is, *night*, the *Stem* is *noct*: in the *Nom.* *t* is dropped before *s*, and the letters *cs* are contracted into *x*: noct-s = noc-s = *nox*.

§ 24. IV. Substantives the Stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

|      | Sing.                        | 1.           | Plur.             |
|------|------------------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Nom. | Consūl (m.), a consul        | Consūl-ēs,   | consuls           |
| Gen. | Consūl-is, of a consul       | Consūl-um,   | of consuls        |
| Dat. | Consūl-i, to or for a consul | Consūl-ibūs, | to or for consuls |
| Acc. | Consūl-em, a consul          | Consūl-ēs,   | consuls           |
| Voc. | Consūl, O consul             | Consūl-ēs,   | O consuls         |
| Abi. | Consūl-ē, by, with, or from  | Consūl-ibūs, | by, with, or from |
|      | a consul.                    |              | consuls.          |

|             | Sing.                       | 2. | Plur.                          |
|-------------|-----------------------------|----|--------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Clāmōr (m.), a shout        |    | Clāmōr-ēs, shouts              |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Clāmōr-is, of a shout       |    | Clāmōr-um, of shouts           |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Clāmōr-i, to or for a shout |    | Clāmōr-ibūs, to or for shouts  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Clāmōr-em, a shout          |    | Clāmōr-ēs, shouts              |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Clāmōr, O shout [a shout.   |    | Clāmōr-ēs, O shouts [shouts.   |
| <i>Abi.</i> | Clāmōr-ē, by, with, or from |    | Clāmōr-ibūs, by, with, or from |

|             | Sing.                      | 3. | Plur.                                |
|-------------|----------------------------|----|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Ansēr (m.), a goose        |    | Ansēr-ēs, geese                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ansēr-is, of a goose       |    | Ansēr-um, of geese                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Ansēr-i, to or for a goose |    | Ansēr-ibūs, to or for geese          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Ansēr-em, a goose          |    | Ansēr-ēs, geese                      |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Ansēr, O goose [a goose.   |    | Ansēr-ēs, O geese                    |
| <i>Abi.</i> | Ansēr-ē, by, with, or from |    | Ansēr-ibūs, by, with, or from geese. |

|             | Sing.                       | 4. | Plur.                                 |
|-------------|-----------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Pātēr, a father             |    | Patr-ēs, fathers                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Patr-is, of a father        |    | Patr-um, of fathers                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Patr-i, to or for a father  |    | Patr-ibūs, to or for fathers          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Patr-em, a father           |    | Patr-ēs, fathers                      |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Pāter, O father [father.    |    | Patr-ēs, O fathers                    |
| <i>Abi.</i> | Patr-ē, by, with, or from a |    | Patr-ibūs, by, with, or from fathers. |

|             | Sing.                       | 5. | Plur.                                 |
|-------------|-----------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Flōs (m.), a flower         |    | Flōr-ēs, flowers                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Flōr-is, of a flower        |    | Flōr-um, of flowers                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Flōr-i, to or for a flower  |    | Flōr-ibūs, to or for flowers          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Flōr-em, a flower           |    | Flōr-ēs, flowers                      |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Flōs, O flower [flower.     |    | Flōr-ēs, O flowers                    |
| <i>Abi.</i> | Flōr-ē, by, with, or from a |    | Flōr-ibūs, by, with, or from flowers. |

## Examples for Declension.

|             |           |           |              |            |            |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|------------|------------|
| sōl (m.),   | sōl-is,   | the sun.  | aggēr (m.),  | aggēr-is,  | a mound.   |
| exsūl (m.), | exsūl-is, | an exile. | carcēr (m.), | carcēr-is, | a prison.  |
| colōr (m.), | colōr-is, | colour.   | mūliēr,      | mūliēr-is, | a woman.   |
| tīmōr (m.), | tīmōr-is, | fear.     | mātēr,       | mātēr-is,  | a mother.  |
| mōs (m.),   | mōs-is,   | a custom  | frātēr,      | frātēr-is, | a brother. |

Obs. 1. In some Substantives ending in *ēr*, the *ē* is dropped in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as *pāter*, *māter*, etc.

Obs. 2. The *s* of the Stem is changed into *r*, when another syllable follows. as, *Stem* and *Nom.* *flōs*, *Gen.* *flōr-is*: *Stem* and *Nom.* *pulvis*, *dust*, *Gen.* *pulvēr-is*.

## § 25. V. Substantives the Stems of which end in on.

| Sing.                                   | 1.         | Plur.                    |
|-----------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Leo (m.), a lion            | Leōn-ēs,   | lions                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Leōn-is, of a lion          | Leōn-um,   | of lions                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Leōn-i, to or for a lion    | Leōn-ibūs, | to or for lions          |
| <i>Acc.</i> Leōn-em, a lion             | Leōn-ēs,   | lions                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> Leo, O lion [lion.          | Leōn ēs,   | O lions                  |
| <i>Abi.</i> Leōn-ē, by, with, or from a | Leōn-ibūs, | by, with, or from lions. |

| Sing.                                     | 2.           | Plur.               |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Virgo, a maiden               | Virgīn-ēs,   | maidens             |
| <i>Gen.</i> Virgīn-is, of a maiden        | Virgīn-um,   | of maidens          |
| <i>Dat.</i> Virgīn-i, to or for a maiden  | Virgīn-ibūs, | to or for maidens   |
| <i>Acc.</i> Virgīn-em, a maiden           | Virgīn-ēs,   | maidens             |
| <i>Voc.</i> Virgo, O maiden [maiden.      | Virgīn-ēs,   | O maidens [maidens. |
| <i>Abi.</i> Virgīn-ē, by, with, or from a | Virgīn-ibūs, | by, with, or from   |

## Examples for Declension.

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| sermo (m.), sermōn-is, a discourse. | hōmo (o.), hōmīn-is, a man or wo-     |
| pūgio (m.), pūgiōn-is, a dagger.    | grando (f.), grandīn-is, hail. [man.  |
| lātro (m.), lātrōn-is, a robber.    | ordo (m.), ordin-is, a rank.          |
| praeco (m.), praecōn-is, a crier.   | īmāgo (f.), īmāgīn-is, a likeness.    |
| ōrātiō (f.), ōrātiōn-is, a speech.  | hīrundo (f.), hīrundīn-is, a swallow. |
| pāvo (m.), pāvōn-is, a peacock.     | ārundo (f.), ārundīn-is, a reed.      |

*Obs. 1.* If the Stem ends in ōn (short), the ō is changed into ī, when another syllable follows: as, Stem virgōn, *Gen.* virgīn-is. Comp. § 21, *Obs. 2.*

*Obs. 2.* Cāro (Stem cārōn) flesh, drops the ō in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as, *Nom.* cāro, *Gen.* carn-is, *Dat.* carn-i, &c.

## § 26. VI. Substantives the Stems of which end in i.

| Sing.                                    | 1.         | Plur.                  |
|------------------------------------------|------------|------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Host-is (c.), an enemy       | Host-ēs,   | enemies                |
| <i>Gen.</i> Host-is, of an enemy         | Host-ium,  | of enemies             |
| <i>Dat.</i> Host-i, to or for an enemy   | Host-ibūs, | to or for enemies      |
| <i>Acc.</i> Host-em, an enemy            | Host-ēs,   | enemies                |
| <i>Voc.</i> Host-is, O enemy [enemy.     | Host-ēs,   | O enemies [mies.       |
| <i>Abi.</i> Host-ē, by, with, or from an | Host-ibūs, | by, with, or from ene- |

## Examples for Declension.

|                        |                     |                         |
|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| civis (o.), a citizen. | ovīs (f.), a sheep. | vestis (f.), a garment. |
| avis (f.), a bird.     | felis (f.), a cat.  | claudis (f.), a jest.   |



Some Stems end in *i* or *e*, and are thus declined:—

|      | Sing.                      | 2.                                  | Plur. |
|------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | Nüb-ēs, a cloud            | Nüb-ēs, clouds                      |       |
| Gen. | Nüb-īs, of a cloud         | Nüb-ium, of clouds                  |       |
| Dat. | Nüb-I, to or for a cloud   | Nüb-ibūs, to or for clouds          |       |
| Acc. | Nüb-em, a cloud            | Nüb-ēs, clouds                      |       |
| Voc. | Nüb-ēs, O cloud [cloud.    | Nüb-ēs, O clouds                    |       |
| Abl. | Nüb-ē, by, with, or from a | Nüb-ibūs, by, with, or from clouds. |       |

Examples for Declension.

clādēs, a defeat. | rūpēs, a rock. | sēdēs, a seat.

B. Neuter Substantives.

§ 27. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension are properly the same as the Stem. The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural always end in *ā*, as in the Second Declension.

§ 28. I. Substantives the Stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

|      | Sing.                        | 1.                            | Plur. |
|------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | Nömēn, a name                | Nömīn-ā, names                |       |
| Gen. | Nömīn-īs, of a name          | Nömīn-um, of names            |       |
| Dat. | Nömīn-I, to or for a name    | Nömīn-ibūs, to or for names   |       |
| Acc. | Nömēn, a name                | Nömīn-ā, names                |       |
| Voc. | Nömēn, O name [name.         | Nömīn-ā, O names [names.      |       |
| Abl. | Nömīn-ē, by, with, or from a | Nömīn-ibūs, by, with, or from |       |

|      | Sing.                                  | 2.                                         | Plur. |
|------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | Fulgūr, lightning                      | Fulgūr-ā, lightnings                       |       |
| Gen. | Fulgūr-īs, of lightning                | Fulgūr-um, of lightnings                   |       |
| Dat. | Fulgūr-I, to or for lightning          | Fulgūr-ibūs, to or for lightnings          |       |
| Acc. | Fulgūr, lightning                      | Fulgūr-ā, lightnings                       |       |
| Voc. | Fulgūr, O lightning                    | Fulgūr-ā, O lightnings                     |       |
| Abl. | Fulgūr-ē, by, with, or from lightning. | Fulgūr-ibūs, by, with, or from lightnings. |       |

|      | Sing.                       | 3.                                 | Plur. |
|------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | Crūs, a leg                 | Crūr-ā, legs                       |       |
| Gen. | Crūr-īs, of a leg           | Crūr-um, of legs                   |       |
| Dat. | Crūr-I, to or for a leg     | Crūr-ibūs, to or for legs          |       |
| Acc. | Crūs, a leg                 | Crūr-ā, legs                       |       |
| Voc. | Crūs, O leg [leg.           | Crūr-ā, O legs                     |       |
| Abl. | Crūr-ē, by, with, or from a | Crūr-ibūs, by, with, or from legs. |       |

|      | Sing.                               | 4.                                        | Plur. |
|------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | ŉpūs, <i>a work</i>                 | ŉpēr-ā, <i>works</i>                      |       |
| Gen. | ŉpēr-is, <i>of a work</i>           | ŉpēr-um, <i>of works</i>                  |       |
| Dat. | ŉpēr-i, <i>to or for a work</i>     | ŉpēr-ibūs, <i>to or for works</i>         |       |
| Acc. | ŉpūs, <i>a work</i>                 | ŉpēr-ā, <i>works</i>                      |       |
| Voc. | ŉpūs, <i>O work</i> [ <i>work</i> ] | ŉpēr-ā, <i>O works</i>                    |       |
| Abl. | ŉpēr-ē, <i>by, with, or from a</i>  | ŉpēr-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from works</i> |       |

|      | Sing.                                 | 5.                                          | Plur. |
|------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | Corpūs, <i>a body</i>                 | Corpōr-ā, <i>bodies</i>                     |       |
| Gen. | Corpōr-is, <i>of a body</i>           | Corpōr-um, <i>of bodies</i>                 |       |
| Dat. | Corpōr-i, <i>to or for a body</i>     | Corpōr-ibūs, <i>to or for bodies</i>        |       |
| Acc. | Corpūs, <i>a body</i>                 | Corpōr-ā, <i>bodies</i>                     |       |
| Voc. | Corpūs, <i>O body</i> [ <i>body</i> ] | Corpōr-ā, <i>O bodies</i> [ <i>bodies</i> ] |       |
| Abl. | Corpōr-ē, <i>by, with, or from a</i>  | Corpōr-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from</i>       |       |

|      | Sing.                                | 6.                                         | Plur. |
|------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| Nom. | Cāpūt, <i>a head</i>                 | Cāpīt-ā, <i>heads</i>                      |       |
| Gen. | Cāpīt-is, <i>of a head</i>           | Cāpīt-um, <i>of heads</i>                  |       |
| Dat. | Cāpīt-i, <i>to or for a head</i>     | Cāpīt-ibūs, <i>to or for heads</i>         |       |
| Acc. | Cāpūt, <i>a head</i>                 | Cāpīt-ā, <i>heads</i>                      |       |
| Voc. | Cāpūt, <i>O head</i> [ <i>head</i> ] | Cāpīt-ā, <i>O heads</i>                    |       |
| Abl. | Cāpīt-ē, <i>by, with, or from a</i>  | Cāpīt-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from heads</i> |       |

NOTE.—A few Substantives ending in *en* and *us* are not Neuter: as, flāmēn, *Inis* (*m.*), *a special priest*; Vēnūs, *ēris*, *the goddess of love*; lēpūs, *ōris* (*m.*), *a hare*.

#### Examples for Declension.

|                                              |                                               |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| flāmēn, <i>Inis</i> , <i>a river</i> .       | fūnūs, <i>ēris</i> , <i>a funeral</i>         |
| carmēn, <i>Inis</i> , <i>a song</i> .        | lātūs, <i>ēris</i> , <i>a side</i> .          |
| fulmēn, <i>Inis</i> , <i>a thunderbolt</i> . | sīdūr, <i>ēris</i> , <i>a constellation</i> . |
| sēmēn, <i>Inis</i> , <i>a seed</i> .         | vulnūs, <i>ēris</i> , <i>a wound</i> .        |
| murmūr, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a murmur</i> .      | littūs, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a shore</i> .        |
| guttūr, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a throat</i> .      | pignūs, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a pledge</i> .       |
| ōs, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a mouth</i> .           | tempūs, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a time</i> .         |
| gēnūs, <i>ēris</i> , <i>a race</i> .         | nēmūs, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a grove</i> .         |
| foedūs, <i>ēris</i> , <i>a treaty</i>        | pectūs, <i>ōris</i> , <i>a breast</i> .       |

Obs. 1. The substitution of *r* for the final *s* of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is an euphonic change: as, crūs, crūr-is, instead of crūs-is; ŉpēs, ŉpēr-is, instead of ŉpēs-is; corpōs, corpōr-is, instead of corpōs-is.

Obs. 2. The *u* in *ūs* of the *Nom. Sing.* is only an euphonic change of the *ī* and *ē* of the Stem: as, *Stems* ŉpēs, corpōs; *Nom.* ŉpūs, corpūs.

Obs. 3. In cāpūt, cāpīt-is, the *ā* of the Stem is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows, like the *ī* in nōmēn, nōmīn-is. See § 21, Obs. 2.

§ 29. II. Substantives the Stems of which end in *i* (the *Nom.* in *e*, *al*, *ar*).

| Sing.                                           | 1.                    | Plur.                          |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Mār-ē, <i>the sea</i>               | Mār-īā,               | <i>seas</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Mār-īa, <i>of the sea</i>           | Mār-īum,              | <i>of seas</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Mār-I, <i>to or for the sea</i>     | Mār-ībūs,             | <i>to or for seas</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> Mār-ē, <i>the sea</i>               | Mār-īā,               | <i>seas</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> Mār-ē, <i>O sea</i>                 | [ <i>sea.</i> Mār īā, | <i>O seas</i>                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> Mār-I, <i>by, with, or from the</i> | Mār ībūs,             | <i>by, with, or from seas.</i> |

| Sing.                                                     | 2.           | Plur.                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Ānimāl, <i>an animal</i>                      | Ānimāl-īā,   | <i>animals</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i> Ānimāl-īa, <i>of an animal</i>                | Ānimāl-īum,  | <i>of animals</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i> Ānimāl-I, <i>to or for an animal</i>          | Ānimāl-ībūs, | <i>to or for animals</i>          |
| <i>Acc.</i> Ānimāl, <i>an animal</i>                      | Ānimāl-īā,   | <i>animals</i>                    |
| <i>Voc.</i> Ānimāl, <i>O animal</i>                       | Ānimāl-īā,   | <i>O animals</i>                  |
| <i>Abl.</i> Ānimāl-I, <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i> | Ānimāl-ībūs, | <i>by, with, or from animals.</i> |

Examples for Declension.

|                            |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| rētē, <i>a net.</i>        | mōnīlē, <i>a necklace.</i> | cervicāl, <i>a pillow.</i> |
| ōvilē, <i>a sheepfold.</i> | vectigāl, <i>a tax.</i>    | calcār, <i>a spur.</i>     |

Obs. 1. The Stems of *mārē* and similar Substantives end in *i*, the final *ē* of the *Nom.* being only an euphonic change of the *i*: as, *Stem* mārī, *Nom.* mārē.

Obs. 2. The Stems of those whose Nominatives end in *āl* and *ār*, end in *āl* and *ārī*, the *i* being dropped and the *a* shortened in the *Nom.* Sing.: as, *Stem* ānimālī, *Nom.* ānimāl; *Stem* calcārī, *Nom.* calcār. Hence the *Abl.* in *i*, see §§ 31, 32.

§ 30. The following irregular Substantives are thus declined :

| Bōs (c.), <i>an ox or cow.</i> |                  | Ītēr, <i>a journey.</i> |             |
|--------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| Sing.                          | Plur.            | Sing.                   | Plur.       |
| <i>Nom.</i> Bōs                | Bōv-ēs           | Ītēr                    | Ītnēr-ā     |
| <i>Gen.</i> Bōv-īs             | Bōv-um or bō-um  | Ītnēr-īs                | Ītnēr-um    |
| <i>Dat.</i> Bōv-I              | Bō-būs or bū-būs | Ītnēr-I                 | Ītnēr-ībūs  |
| <i>Acc.</i> Bōv-em             | Bōv-ēs           | Ītēr                    | Ītnēr-ā     |
| <i>Voc.</i> Bōs                | Bōv-ēs           | Ītēr                    | Ītnēr-ā     |
| <i>Abl.</i> Bōv-ē              | Bō-būs or būbūs. | Ītnēr-ē                 | Ītnēr-ībūs. |

| Sēnex, <i>an old man.</i> |          | Jūptēr (=Jōv-ptēr,<br>i. e. pāter), <i>the god.</i> |       | Vis (f.) <i>strength.</i> |         |
|---------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------|---------|
| Sing.                     | Plur.    | Sing.                                               | Plur. | Sing.                     | Plur.   |
| <i>Nom.</i> Sēnex         | Sēn-ēs   | Jūptēr                                              |       | Vis                       | Vīrēs   |
| <i>Gen.</i> Sēn-īs        | Sēn-um   | Jōv-īs                                              |       | Vis                       | Vīrium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> Sēn-I         | Sēn-ībūs | Jōv-I                                               |       | Vī                        | Vīrībūs |
| <i>Acc.</i> Sēn-em        | Sēn-ēs   | Jōv-em                                              |       | Vīm                       | Vīrēs   |
| <i>Voc.</i> Sēnex         | Sēn-ēs   | Jūptēr                                              |       | Vīs                       | Vīrēs   |
| <i>Abl.</i> Sēn-ē         | Sēn-ībūs | Jōv-ē.                                              |       | Vī                        | Vīrībūs |

Jusjurandum (n.), *an oath*, is properly two words: *Gen.* jūrisjurandī; *Dat.* jūrijurandō; *Acc.* jusjurandum; *Voc.* jusjurandum; *Abl.* jūrējurandā.

REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 31-32. Stems in *i* have frequently the *Acc. Sing.* in *im*, the *Abi. Sing.* in *i*, and the *Acc. Pl.* in *is*. The cases are thus formed according to the analogy of words of other declensions of which the Stems end in a vowel; as,

|                   |                        |          |        |
|-------------------|------------------------|----------|--------|
| <i>Acc. Sing.</i> | puppi-m, like mensa-m, | grādū-m, | diē-m, |
| <i>Abi. Sing.</i> | puppi, „ mensā,        | grādū,   | diē,   |
| <i>Acc. Pl.</i>   | puppi-s, „ mensā-s,    | grādū-s, | diē-s. |

But many such words follow the analogy of words of the third declension, the Stems of which end in a consonant.

§ 35, 36. Stems in *i* have the *Gen. Pl.* in *ium* with the following exceptions:—*jūvēnis*, a youth; *vātēs*, a prophet; *cānis*, a dog; *vōlūcris*, a bird; which have the *Gen. jūvēnum*, *vātum*, *cānum*, *vōlūcrum*. The three words *āpis*, a bee; *mensis*, a month; *sēdēs*, a seat, have sometimes the *Gen. Pl.* in *um* as well as *ium*.

1. The following words have also the *Gen.* in *ium*, not *um*:

|                                              |                               |                                                |                                |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>imbēr</i> ( <i>imbrium</i> ), <i>m.</i>   | <i>rain.</i>                  | <i>Insūbēr</i> ( <i>Insubrium</i> ), <i>m.</i> | <i>name of a Gallic tribe.</i> |
| <i>ūtēr</i> ( <i>utrium</i> ), <i>m.</i>     | <i>a bag made of leather.</i> | <i>cāro</i> ( <i>carnium</i> ), <i>f.</i>      | <i>flesh.</i>                  |
| <i>līntēr</i> ( <i>lintrium</i> ), <i>m.</i> | <i>a wherry.</i>              | <i>ventēr</i> ( <i>ventrium</i> ), <i>m.</i>   | <i>the belly.</i>              |

2. Monosyllabic words, the stems of which end in two consonants: *as*, *urbs*, *urb-ium*; *arx*, *arc-ium*; *mons*, *mont-ium*. So also *os* (*Stem oss*), *n.*, a bone, *Gen. Pl. oss-ium*; as (*Stem ass*), *m.*, a small coin, *Gen. Pl. ass-ium*.

3. Also the following monosyllabic words in which the stem ends in a single consonant:

|                                           |                    |                                             |                    |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>līs</i> ( <i>litium</i> ), <i>f.</i>   | <i>a lawsuit.</i>  | <i>mās</i> ( <i>mārium</i> ),               | <i>a male.</i>     |
| <i>glīs</i> ( <i>glirium</i> ), <i>m.</i> | <i>a dormouse.</i> | <i>nix</i> ( <i>nivium</i> ), <i>f.</i>     | <i>snow.</i>       |
| <i>vis</i> ( <i>virium</i> ), <i>f.</i>   | <i>force.</i>      | <i>faux</i> ( <i>faucium</i> ), <i>f.</i>   | <i>the throat.</i> |
| <i>mūs</i> ( <i>mūrium</i> ), <i>m.</i>   | <i>a mouse.</i>    | <i>strix</i> ( <i>strigium</i> ), <i>f.</i> | <i>an owl.</i>     |

Obs. The *Nom.* *faux* is not used.

§ 38-45. GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. See § 20.

|             |                                     | Examples.                           |                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
|             | Sing.                               | Sing.                               | Sing.                                         |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Pēriclēs</i>                     | <i>Pallas</i>                       | <i>Pāris</i>                                  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Pēriclīs</i> , <i>Pēriclī</i>    | <i>Pallādīs</i> , <i>Pallādos</i>   | <i>Pāridīs</i> , <i>Pāridōs</i>               |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Pēricli</i>                      | <i>Pallādi</i>                      | <i>Pāridi</i>                                 |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Pēriclem</i> , <i>Pēriclē</i>    | <i>Pallādem</i> , <i>Pallādē</i>    | <i>Pāridem</i> , <i>Pāridā</i> , <i>Pārin</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Pēriclē</i> , <i>Pēriclēs</i> ,  | <i>Pallas</i>                       | <i>Parī</i>                                   |
| <i>Abi.</i> | <i>Pēriclē</i> . [ <i>Pēriclē</i> ] | <i>Pallādē</i> .                    | <i>Paridē</i> .                               |
|             | Sing.                               | Sing.                               | Plur.                                         |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Sapphō</i>                       | <i>chlāmýs</i> , a clout.           | <i>chlāmýdēs</i> or <i>-ēs</i>                |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Sapphūs</i> , <i>Sapphōnīs</i>   | <i>chlāmýlīs</i> , <i>chlāmýdōs</i> | <i>chlāmýdum</i>                              |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnī</i>     | <i>chlāmýdi</i>                     | <i>chlāmýdibūs</i>                            |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnem</i>    | <i>chlāmýdem</i> , <i>chlāmýdē</i>  | <i>chlāmýdēs</i> , <i>chlāmýdās</i>           |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Sapphō</i>                       |                                     |                                               |
| <i>Abi.</i> | <i>Sapphōnē</i>                     | <i>chlāmýdē</i> .                   | <i>chlāmýdibūs</i> .                          |

## CHAPTER VII.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

|      | Sing.                       | 1.         | Plur.                    |
|------|-----------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| Nom. | Grād-ūs, a step             | Grād-ūs,   | steps                    |
| Gen. | Grād-ūs, of a step          | Grād-uum,  | of steps                 |
| Dat. | Grād-ūi, to or for a step   | Grād-ībūs, | to or for steps          |
| Acc. | Grād-um, a step             | Grād-ūs,   | steps                    |
| Voc. | Grād-ūs, O step [step.      | Grād-ūs,   | O steps                  |
| Abl. | Grād-ū, by, with, or from a | Grād-ībūs, | by, with, or from steps. |

|      | Sing.                      | 2.        | Plur.                    |
|------|----------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Nom. | Gēn-u, a knee              | Gēn-ūā,   | knees                    |
| Gen. | Gēn-ūs, of a knee          | Gēn-ūum,  | of knees                 |
| Dat. | Gēn-ū, to or for a knee    | Gēn-ībūs, | to or for knees          |
| Acc. | Gēn-u, a knee              | Gēn-ūā,   | knees                    |
| Voc. | Gēn-u, O knee [knee.       | Gēn-ūā,   | O knees                  |
| Abl. | Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a | Gēn-ībūs, | by, with, or from knees. |

GENDER.—Substantives in *ūs* of the Fourth Declension are masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and the words mentioned below.

## Examples for Declension.

## Masculine.

|                    |                     |                    |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| fructus, a fruit.  | inōtus, a movement. | passus, a pace.    |
| curtus, a chariot. | ūsus, a use.        | cursus, a running. |
| sensus, a sense.   | cāsus, a fall.      | cantus, a song.    |

## Feminine.

|                                    |                                         |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| mānus, a hand.                     | nūrus, a daughter-in-law.               |
| tribus, a tribe (a division of the | socrus, a mother-in-law.                |
| acus, a needle. [Roman people].    | ānus, an old-woman.                     |
| porticus, a portico.               | idus (pl.), the Ides (a division of the |
| dōmus, a house.                    | Roman month).                           |

## Neuter.

|                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| cornu, a horn. | vēru, a spit. |
|----------------|---------------|

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fourth Declension end in *u*.

Obs. 2. The Gen. Sing. *ūs* is a contraction of *uīs*: as, grādūs from grādūis.

Obs. 3. The Dat. Sing. *ūi* is often contracted into *ū*: as, grādūi, grādū.

Obs. 4. The Dat. and Abl. Plur. of the following words end in *ūbūs*, but portus and vēru have also *ūbūs*:—

queruus, also āuus,  
arvus, vēru, lēuus,  
spēcus, tribus, arvus,  
portus, pēuu, partuus.

|                                       |                                           |                                        |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| queruus ( <i>f.</i> ), <i>an oak.</i> | lăcus ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a lake, tank.</i> | artus ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a joint.</i>   |
| lăcus ( <i>f.</i> ), <i>a needle.</i> | spăcus ( <i>m. f.</i> ) <i>a cave.</i>    | portus ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a harbour</i> |
| arous ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a bow.</i>    | & <i>n.</i> )                             | păcu ( <i>n.</i> ), <i>cattle.</i>     |
| văru ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a spit.</i>    | tribus ( <i>f.</i> ), <i>a tribe.</i>     | partus ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a birth.</i>  |

Obs. 5. Dămus, *a house*, belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.

| Sing.       | Plur.                           |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Nom. Dăm-ăs | Dăm-ăs                          |
| Gen. Dăm-ăs | Dăm-ăum or dăm-ărum             |
| Dat. Dăm-ai | Dăm-ăbăs                        |
| Acc. Dăm-am | Dăm-ăe ( <i>rarely dăm-ăs</i> ) |
| Voc. Dăm-ăs | Dăm-ăs                          |
| Abi. Dăm-ă  | Dăm-ăbăs.                       |

Hence the memorial line :

Tollă mă, mă, mî, mîs,  
SI declinără dămus via.

i. e. leave out the endings mă, mă, mî, mîs, if you wish to decline dămus.

Dămî is used only with the meaning *at home*, and is probably a dative.

## CHAPTER VIII.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

| Sing.                                 | Plur.                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Nom. Dî-ēs, <i>a day</i>              | Dî-ēs, <i>days</i>                      |
| Gen. Dî-ēi, <i>of a day</i>           | Dî-ărūm, <i>of days</i>                 |
| Dat. Dî-ēi, <i>to or for a day</i>    | Dî-ēbăs, <i>to or for days</i>          |
| Acc. Dî-em, <i>a day</i>              | Dî-ēs, <i>days</i>                      |
| Voc. Dî-ēs, <i>O day</i>              | Dî-ēs, <i>O days</i>                    |
| Abi. Dî-ē, <i>by, with, or from a</i> | Dî-ēbăs, <i>by, with, or from days.</i> |

GENDER.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine: excepting dies, which in the Singular is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine, and in the Plural always Masculine: also meridies (*m.*), *noon*, which is a compound of dies.

### Examples for Declension.

|                         |                             |                                      |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| rēs, <i>a thing.</i>    | effigēs, <i>a likeness.</i> | spēcēs, <i>apparances.</i>           |
| lăciēs, <i>a point.</i> | fidēs, <i>faith.</i>        | spēs, <i>hope.</i>                   |
| faciēs, <i>a face.</i>  | săriēs, <i>a series.</i>    | măriđies ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>noon.</i> |

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fifth Declension end in *e*

Obs. 2. In the Gen. and Dat. Sing. the *e* in *ei* is long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, dî-ēi, faci-ēi; but, rēi, fidēi.

Obs. 3. In the Gen. and Dat. Sing. the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, dîē, fidē.

Obs. 4. Rēs and dîēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural.

## CHAPTER IX.—IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 48. Some Substantives are not declined: *as, fās, permitted by divine law; nēfās, opposed to divine law; nihi, nothing; instār, resemblance.*

§ 49. Some Substantives have no Plural: *as, justitia, justice; fāmēs, hunger; aurum, gold.*

§ 50. Some Substantives have no Singular: *as, nuptiae, a marriage; feriæ, holidays; tēnebrae, darkness; libērī, children; armā, arms.*

§ 51. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: *as,*

| Sing.         | Plur.                                                                           |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Aedēs,        | aedēs,                                                                          |
| Āqua,         | āquae,                                                                          |
| Auxilium,     | auxilia,                                                                        |
| Carcer,       | carcerēs,                                                                       |
| Castrum,      | castrā,                                                                         |
| Cōmītium,     | Cōmītiā,                                                                        |
| Cōpia,        | cōpiae,                                                                         |
| Fortūna,      | fortūnae,                                                                       |
| Grātia,       | grātiae,                                                                        |
| Impēdimentum, | impēdimentā,                                                                    |
| Littera,      | litterae,                                                                       |
| Lūdus,        | lūdi,                                                                           |
| Ōpera,        | ōpērae,                                                                         |
| Ōpis (Gen.),  | ōpēs,                                                                           |
| Pars,         | partes,                                                                         |
| Rostrum,      | rostrā,                                                                         |
|               | a house.                                                                        |
|               | medicinal springs.                                                              |
|               | auxiliary forces.                                                               |
|               | a starting-place.                                                               |
|               | a camp.                                                                         |
|               | the Assembly itself.                                                            |
|               | forces.                                                                         |
|               | the gifts of fortune,                                                           |
|               | thanks. [property.]                                                             |
|               | an epistle.                                                                     |
|               | public games.                                                                   |
|               | workmen.                                                                        |
|               | power, wealth.                                                                  |
|               | a part in a play.                                                               |
|               | the platform for speakers in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of ships). |
| Tābula,       | tābulae,                                                                        |
|               | a board, picture; writing tablets.                                              |

§ 52. Some Substantives want one or more Cases: *as,*

*fors (f.), chance. Only Nom. and Abl. Sing. fortē (without Plural).*

*(ops) ōpis (f.), help. Only Gen., Acc., Abl., Sing. ōpis, ōpem, ōpē. Full Plural.*

*(prex, prēcis) (f.), prayer. Only Dat., Acc., and Abl. Sing. Full Plural.*

*(viciis), change. Only Gen., Acc., Abl. Sing. viciis, vicem, vicē. Full Plural, except Gen.*

§ 53. Some Substantives are *Heteroclītā*, that is, have a two-fold Declension.

1. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions: *as, dōmus, a house (see § 46, Obs. 5); laurus, a bay-tree; cūpressus, a cypress; ficus, a fig-tree; pinus, a pine-tree.*
2. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions: *as, plebs, plēbis, and plēbēs, plēbēi, the commonalty.*
3. *Jūgerum, an acre, is of the Second Declension in the Sing., but of the Third in the Plur.: as, jūgērā, jūgerum, jūgeribūs. Vās, vāsis, a vessel, is of the Third Declension in the Sing., but of the Second in the Plural: as vācē, vācōrum, vāsis.*

§ 54. Some Substantives are *Heterogēnă*, that is, have a different gender in the Singular and the Plural

| Sing.          |                       | Plur.                    |
|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| jocus (m.),    | a joke.               | joci (m.), joci (n.)     |
| locus (m.),    | a place.              | loci (m.), loca (n.)     |
| carbāsus (f.), | fine linen.           | carbāsă (n.), sails.     |
| coelum (n.),   | heaven.               | coeli (m.) (rare).       |
| frēnum (n.),   | a bit.                | frēni (m.), frēnă (n.)   |
| Tartārus (m.), | the infernal regions. | Tartără (n.)             |
| rastrum (n.),  | a rake.               | rastri (m.), rastră (n.) |

## CHAPTER X.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 55. Adjectives are either of *Three Terminations* (one for each gender); of *Two Terminations* (one for the Masculine and Feminine, and the other for the Neuter); or of *One Termination* (for all genders).

§ 56. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS ARE DIVIDED INTO TWO CLASSES.

Adjectives of the first class end in *ūs, ă, um, or ăr, ă, um*, and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: *as, bōnus, bōnă, bōnum, good; nigr̃, nigră, nigrum, black; tēnēr, tēnără, tēnērū, tender.*

|      | Sing.  |        |        | 1. | Plur.    |          |          |
|------|--------|--------|--------|----|----------|----------|----------|
|      | M.     | F.     | N.     |    | M.       | F.       | N.       |
| Nom. | Bōn-ūs | bōn-ă  | bōn-um |    | Bōn-i    | bōn-ae   | bōn-ă    |
| Gen. | Bōn-i  | bōn-ae | bōn-i  |    | Bōn-ōrum | bōn-ārum | bōn-ōrum |
| Dat. | Bōn-ō  | bōn-ae | bōn-ō  |    | Bōn-is   | bōn-is   | bōn-is   |
| Acc. | Bōn-um | bōn-am | bōn-um |    | Bōn-ōs   | bōn-ās   | bōn-ă    |
| Voc. | Bōn-ē  | bōn-ă  | bōn-um |    | Bōn-i    | bōn-ae   | bōn-ă    |
| Abl. | Bōn-ō  | bōn-ă  | bōn-ō  |    | Bōn-is   | bōn-is   | bōn-is   |

|      | Sing.   |         |         | 2. | Plur.     |           |           |
|------|---------|---------|---------|----|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|      | M.      | F.      | N.      |    | M.        | F.        | N.        |
| Nom. | Nigr̃   | nigr-ă  | nigr-um |    | Nigr-i    | nigr-ae   | nigr-ă    |
| Gen. | Nigr-i  | nigr-ae | nigr-i  |    | Nigr-ōrum | nigr-ārum | nigr-ōrum |
| Dat. | Nigr-ō  | nigr-ae | nigr-ō  |    | Nigr-is   | nigr-is   | nigr-is   |
| Acc. | Nigr-um | nigr-am | nigr-um |    | Nigr-ōs   | nigr-ās   | nigr-ă    |
| Voc. | Nigr-ē  | nigr-ă  | nigr-um |    | Nigr-i    | nigr-ae   | nigr-ă    |
| Abl. | Nigr-ō  | nigr-ă  | nigr-ō  |    | Nigr-is   | nigr-is   | nigr-ă    |



|      | Sing.    |          |          | 3.         | Plur.      |            |  |
|------|----------|----------|----------|------------|------------|------------|--|
|      | M.       | F.       | N.       | M.         | F.         | N.         |  |
| Nom. | Tēnēr    | tēnēr-ā  | tēnēr-um | Tēnēr-I    | tēnēr-ae   | tēnēr-ā    |  |
| Gen. | Tēnēr-I  | tēnēr-ae | tēnēr-I  | Tēnēr-ōrum | tēnēr-ārum | tēnēr-ōrum |  |
| Dat. | Tēnēr-ō  | tēnēr-ae | tēnēr-ō  | Tēnēr-īs   | tēnēr-īs   | tēnēr-īs   |  |
| Acc. | Tēnēr-um | tēnēr-am | tēnēr-um | Tēnēr-ōs   | tēnēr-ās   | tēnēr-ā    |  |
| Voc. | Tēnēr    | tēnēr-ā  | tēnēr-um | Tēnēr-I    | tēnēr-ae   | tēnēr-ā    |  |
| Abi. | Tēnēr-ō  | tēnēr-ā  | tēnēr-ō  | Tēnēr-īs   | tēnēr-īs   | tēnēr-īs   |  |

## Examples for Declension.

|         |    |     |         |           |       |      |            |
|---------|----|-----|---------|-----------|-------|------|------------|
| mālus,  | a, | um, | bad.    | superbus, | a,    | um,  | proud.     |
| cārus,  | a, | um, | dear.   | sācer,    | cra,  | rum, | sacred.    |
| clārus, | a, | um, | bright. | aeger,    | gra,  | rum, | sick.      |
| plēnus, | a, | um, | full.   | mācer,    | cra,  | rum, | lean.      |
| albus,  | a, | um, | white.  | pu.cher,  | chra, | rum, | beautiful. |
| magnus, | a, | um, | great.  | rūber,    | bra,  | rum, | red.       |
| parvus, | a, | um, | little. | sinister, | tra,  | rum, | left.      |

Obs. 1. The only Adjectives declined like tēnēr are the following:—

|                     |             |                   |           |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------|
| asper, ēra, ērum,   | rough.      | liber, ēra, ērum, | free.     |
| lācer, ēra, ērum,   | torn.       | miser, ēra, ērum, | wretched. |
| prosper, ēra, ērum, | prosperous. |                   |           |

With all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger*: as,

lānġer, ēra, ērum, wool-bearing. | ōpġfer, ēra, ērum, help-bringing.

All other Adjectives in *ēr* drop the *ē*, and are declined like nīġer.

Dextēr is declined in both ways, dextērā and dextrā, dextērūm and dextrum.

Obs. 2. There is one Adjective in *ūr*, sātūr, sātūrā, sātūrūm, full of food, sated.

§ 57. Irregular Declension in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *a*, *um*.

The following Adjectives and Pronouns,

ūnūs, sōlūs, tōtūs, ullūs,  
ūtēr, neutēr, altēr, nullūs,  
and āllūs,

have in the Genitive Sing. *ius* and in the Dative *i*. For example—

|      | M.     | F.     | N.     | M.     | F.     | N.     |
|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Nom. | Ull-ūs | ull-ā  | ull-um | Ūt-ēr  | utr-ā  | utr-um |
| Gen. | Ull-ūs |        |        | Utr-ūs |        |        |
| Dat. | Ull-i  |        |        | Utr-i  |        |        |
| Acc. | Ull-um | ull-am | ull-um | Utr-um | utr-am | utr-um |
| Abi. | Ull-ō  | ull-ā  | ull-ō  | Utr-ō  | utr-ā  | utr-ō  |

|        |        |         |               |         |                             |
|--------|--------|---------|---------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| ūnūs,  | one.   | ullūs,  | any.          | neuter, | neither of two.             |
| sōlūs, | alone. | nullūs, | none.         | alter,  | one of two.                 |
| ūtūs,  | whole. | ūtēr,   | which of two. | āllūs,  | one of any number, another. |

Obs. 1. In prose the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is always long, except in altērūs. The Gen. āllūs is a contraction of āll-ūs, and therefore always long. In the other words the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is short as well as long in poetry.

Obs. 2. The compounds of ūtēr are declined in the same way: as, ūterġuā, ūtervīs, ūterlibēt, ūtercunquē: Gen. utrīusque, utriusvīs, etc.

§ 58. Adjectives of Three Terminations of the second class end in *er*, *ris*, *re*, and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: in all other cases they have only two terminations: *as*, *acēr*, *acris*, *acōrē*, *sharp*.

|             | Sing. |       |       | Plur.     |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|-------|
|             | M.    | F.    | N.    | M. and F. | N.    |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Acēr  | acris | acōrē | Acērēs    | acriā |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Acris | —     | —     | Acrium    | —     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Acri  | —     | —     | Acribūs   | —     |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Acēm  | —     | acōrē | Acērēs    | acriā |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Acēr  | acris | acōrē | Acērēs    | acriā |
| <i>Abi.</i> | Acri  | —     | —     | Acribūs   | —     |

*Obs.* The termination *er* is sometimes, but very rarely, found in the *Nom. Sing. Fem.*

There are only thirteen Adjectives of this kind:

acer, alacer, campester,  
celer, celēber, equester,  
piter, volucer, terrester,  
paluster, pedester,  
saluber, silvester.

|            |             |            |                          |
|------------|-------------|------------|--------------------------|
| alacer,    | lively.     | volucer,   | winged.                  |
| campester, | level.      | terrester, | pertaining to the earth. |
| celer,     | quick.      | paluster,  | marshy.                  |
| celēber,   | crowded.    | pedester,  | pedestrian.              |
| equester,  | equestrian. | saluber,   | healthful.               |
| piter,     | rotten.     | silvester, | woody.                   |

*Obs.* 1. Celer, celēria, celērē is the only Adj. of this class that keeps the *e* before the *r*. Celēr has *um*, not *ium*, in the Gen. Pl.

*Obs.* 2. Sometimes these Adjectives have also the termination *ris* in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.*

§ 59. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: *as*, *tristis*, *tristē*, *sad*; *altior*, *altius*, *higher* (§ 63).

|             | Sing.     |         | Plur.      |          |
|-------------|-----------|---------|------------|----------|
|             | M. and F. | N.      | M. and F.  | N.       |
| <i>Fem.</i> | Trist-is  | trist-ē | Trist-ēs   | trist-iā |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Trist-is  | —       | Trist-ium  | —        |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Trist-i   | —       | Trist-ibūs | —        |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Trist-em  | trist-ē | Trist-ēs   | trist-iā |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Trist-is  | trist-ē | Trist-ēs   | trist-iā |
| <i>Abi.</i> | Trist-i   | —       | Trist-ibūs | —        |

Examples for Declension.

|         |         |          |              |          |        |
|---------|---------|----------|--------------|----------|--------|
| lēvis,  | light.  | brēvis,  | short.       | mollis,  | soft.  |
| lēvis,  | smooth. | fortis,  | brave.       | facilis, | easy.  |
| grāvis, | heavy.  | turpis,  | disgraceful. | vilis,   | cheap. |
| dulcis, | sweet.  | stultus, | foolish.     | humilis, | low.   |

§ 60. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *felix, fortunate*; *prūdens, prudent*.

| Sing.       |                            |              | 1. | Plur.             |                 |
|-------------|----------------------------|--------------|----|-------------------|-----------------|
|             | M. and F.                  | N.           |    | M. and F.         | N.              |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Fēlix</i>               | <i>fēlix</i> |    | <i>Fēlic-ēs</i>   | <i>fēlic-iā</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Fēlic-is</i>            | —            |    | <i>Fēlic-ium</i>  | —               |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Fēlic-i</i>             | —            |    | <i>Fēlic-ibūs</i> | —               |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Fēlic-em</i>            | <i>fēlix</i> |    | <i>Fēlic-ēs</i>   | <i>fēlic-iā</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Fēlix</i>               | —            |    | <i>Fēlic-ēs</i>   | <i>fēlic-iā</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Fēlic-i</i> or <i>ē</i> | —            |    | <i>Fēlic-ibūs</i> | —               |

| Sing.       |                             |                | 2. | Plur.              |                  |
|-------------|-----------------------------|----------------|----|--------------------|------------------|
|             | M. and F.                   | N.             |    | M. and F.          | N.               |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Prūdēns</i>              | <i>prūdēns</i> |    | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-iā</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Prūdēt-is</i>            | —              |    | <i>Prūdēt-ium</i>  | —                |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Prūdēt-i</i>             | —              |    | <i>Prūdēt-ibūs</i> | —                |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Prūdēt-em</i>            | <i>prūdēns</i> |    | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-iā</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Prūdēns</i>              | —              |    | <i>Prūdēt-ēs</i>   | <i>prūdēt-iā</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Prūdēt-i</i> or <i>ē</i> | —              |    | <i>Prūdēt-ibūs</i> | —                |

Examples for Declension.

|                |              |                   |                  |               |                  |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>audax,</i>  | <i>ācis,</i> | <i>bold.</i>      | <i>pōtēns,</i>   | <i>entis,</i> | <i>powerful.</i> |
| <i>vōrax,</i>  | <i>ācis,</i> | <i>truthful.</i>  | <i>ingens,</i>   | <i>entis,</i> | <i>huge.</i>     |
| <i>lōquax,</i> | <i>ācis,</i> | <i>talkative.</i> | <i>diligens,</i> | <i>entis,</i> | <i>diligent.</i> |
| <i>vēlox,</i>  | <i>ōcis,</i> | <i>swift.</i>     | <i>sāpiens,</i>  | <i>entis,</i> | <i>wise.</i>     |
| <i>fērox,</i>  | <i>ōcis,</i> | <i>haughty.</i>   | <i>praesens,</i> | <i>entis,</i> | <i>present.</i>  |

*Obs. 1.* On the *Abl. Sing.*, see §§ 81, 82. On the *Gen. Plur.* in *sum*, see §§ 85, 86.

*Obs. 2.* *Divēs, divītis, rich*, has a contracted form: *Nom. dis, diŋē*; *Gen. diŋ-is, &c.*; *Nom. Plur. Neut. diŋā*.

*Obs. 3.* Some Adjectives are indeclinable: as, *nēquam, worthless*; *frūgi, honest* (properly the Dative of a Substantive): as, *frūgi hōmō, frūgi hōminem*.

## CHAPTER XI.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: as,

| Positive.           | Comparative.           | Superlative.                |
|---------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>altūs, high.</i> | <i>altior, higher.</i> | <i>altissimūs, highest.</i> |

§ 62. The Comparative is formed by adding *ior*, and the Superlative by adding *issimūs*, to the Stem, any final vowel of which is dropped: as,

| Posit.   |         |            | Comp.       | Sup.            |
|----------|---------|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| Nom.     | Stem.   |            |             |                 |
| altūs,   | alto,   | high,      | alt-iōr,    | alt-issimūs.    |
| lēvis,   | lēvi,   | light,     | lēv-iōr,    | lēv-issimūs.    |
| felix,   | felic,  | fortunate, | felic-iōr,  | felic-issimūs.  |
| prūdēns, | prūdēt, | prudent,   | prūdēt-iōr, | prūdēt-issimūs. |

§ 63. The Comparative is an Adjective of Two Terminations, having *ior* in the Nom. Sing. of the Masculine and Feminine, and *ius* in that of the Neuter. It is declined as follows :

|      | Sing.              |        |  | Plur.       |          |
|------|--------------------|--------|--|-------------|----------|
|      | M. and F.          | N.     |  | M. and F.   | N.       |
| Nom. | Altiōr             | altiūs |  | Altiōr-ēs   | altiōr-ā |
| Gen. | Altiōr-is          | —      |  | Altiōr-um   | —        |
| Dat. | Altiōr-i           | —      |  | Altiōr-ibūs | —        |
| Acc. | Altiōr-em          | altiūs |  | Altiōr-ēs   | altiōr-ā |
| Voc. | Altiōr             | altiūs |  | Altiōr-ēs   | altiōr-ā |
| Abl. | Altiōr-ē rarely -i | —      |  | Altiōr-ibūs | —        |

§ 64. The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Terminations, *us*, *a*, *um*: *as*, *altissimūs*, *altissimā*, *altissimum*.

### § 65. EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rēmūs*: *as*,

| Posit.   |            | Comp.       | Sup.           |
|----------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| pulchēr, | beautiful, | pulchr-iōr, | pulcher-rimūs. |
| libēr,   | free,      | libēr-iōr,  | liber-rimūs.   |
| ācēr,    | sharp,     | ācr-iōr,    | ācer-rimūs.    |
| cēlēr,   | swift,     | cēlēr-iōr,  | cēler-rimūs.   |

Also *vētūs* (Gen. *vētēr-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vēter-rimūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *limūs*: *as*,

| Posit.      |            | Comp.         | Sup.            |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-----------------|
| facilis,    | easy,      | facil-iōr,    | facil-limūs.    |
| difficilis, | difficult, | difficil-iōr, | difficil-limūs. |
| similis,    | like,      | simil-iōr,    | simil-limūs.    |
| dissimilis, | unlike,    | dissimil-iōr, | dissimil-limūs. |
| gracilis,   | thin,      | gracil-iōr,   | gracil-limūs.   |
| humilis,    | low,       | humil-iōr,    | humil-limūs.    |

Obs. The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives is owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l*.

III. Adjectives ending in *-dicūs*, *-ficūs*, and *-völūs* (derived from the verbs *dico*, *facio*, and *volo*) form their Comparatives in *entiōr*, and their Superlatives in *entissimūs* (as if from Positives ending in *ens*): *as*,

## § 73. NUMERALS.

| ARABIC SYMBOLS. | ROMAN SYMBOLS. | CARDINALS.                          | ORDINALS.                                    | DISTRIBUTIVES. | ADVERBS.              |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1               | I              | unus                                | primus                                       | singuli        | sēmēl.                |
| 2               | II             | duo                                 | secundus or alter                            | binī           | bīs.                  |
| 3               | III            | trēs                                | tertius                                      | terni or trinī | tēr.                  |
| 4               | IV             | quattuor, quattuor                  | quartus                                      | quaterni       | quātēr.               |
| 5               | V              | quinquē                             | quintus                                      | quini          | quinquīa.             |
| 6               | VI             | sex                                 | sextus                                       | seni           | sexīa.                |
| 7               | VII            | septem                              | septimus                                     | septēni        | septīa.               |
| 8               | VIII           | octo                                | octavus                                      | octoni         | octīa.                |
| 9               | IX             | nōvem                               | nōnus                                        | nōvēni         | novīa.                |
| 10              | X              | dēcem                               | dēcimus                                      | dēni           | dēcīa.                |
| 11              | XI             | undēcim                             | undēcimus                                    | undēni         | undēcīa.              |
| 12              | XII            | duōdēcim                            | duōdēcimus                                   | duōdēni        | duōdēcīa.             |
| 13              | XIII           | trēdēcim                            | tertius dēcimus                              | terni dēni     | terdēcīa or trēdēcīa. |
| 14              | XIV            | quattuordēcim                       | quartus dēcimus                              | quaterni dēni  | quattuordēcīa.        |
| 15              | XV             | quindēcim                           | quintus dēcimus                              | quini dēni     | quindēcīa.            |
| 16              | XVI            | sedēcim                             | sextus dēcimus                               | seni dēni      | sedēcīa.              |
| 17              | XVII           | septendēcim                         | septimus dēcimus                             | septēni dēni   | septesadēcīa.         |
| 18              | XVIII          | duōdēviginti                        | duōdēvicesimus                               | duōdēvicēni    | duōdēviciēa.          |
| 19              | XIX            | undēviginti                         | undēvicesimus                                | undēvicēni     | undēviciēa.           |
| 20              | XX             | viginti                             | vicesimus                                    | vicēni         | viciēa.               |
| 21              | XXI            | (unus et viginti or<br>viginti unus | (primus et vicesimus, or<br>vicesimus primus | vicēni singuli | sēmēl et viciēa.      |
| 22              | XXII           | (duo et viginti or<br>viginti duo   | (alter et vicesimus, or<br>vicesimus alter   | vicēni binī    | bīs et viciēa.        |

|           | trés et viginti or   | (tertius et vicésimus, or) | viçeni terni          | ter et vicies.          |
|-----------|----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 23        | XXIII                | vicésimus tertius          | duodécim              | duodécimies.            |
| 28        | XXVIII               | undétrigésimus             | undétriceni           | undétricies.            |
| 29        | XXIX                 | undétrigésimus             | triceni               | tricies.                |
| 30        | XXX                  | trigésimus                 | quadragesni           | quadragesies.           |
| 40        | XLI                  | quadragesimus              | quingeni              | quingésies.             |
| 50        | L                    | sexagesimus                | sexageni              | sexagesies.             |
| 60        | LX                   | septuagesimus              | septuageni            | septuagesies.           |
| 70        | LXX                  | octogésimus                | octogeni              | octogésies.             |
| 80        | LXXX                 | nongésimus                 | nongeni               | nongésies.              |
| 90        | XO                   | centésimus                 | centeni               | centies.                |
| 100       | O                    | centésimus                 | diceni                | dicenties.              |
| 200       | CC                   | dicentésimus               | triceni               | trécénties.             |
| 300       | CCC                  | trécéntésimus              | quadragesni           | quadragesimies.         |
| 400       | CCCC                 | quingentésimus             | quingeni              | quingenties.            |
| 500       | D or I <sup>o</sup>  | sexcentésimus              | sexeni                | sexcenties.             |
| 600       | DC                   | septingentésimus           | septigeni             | septingenties.          |
| 700       | DCC                  | octingentésimus            | octigeni              | octingenties.           |
| 800       | DCCC                 | nongentésimus              | nongeni               | nongenties.             |
| 900       | DCCCC                | millésimus                 | singula millia        | millies.                |
| 1000      | M or I <sup>o</sup>  | bis millésimus             | binâ millia           | bis millies.            |
| 2000      | MM                   | quinquies millésimus       | quinâ millia          | quinquies millies.      |
| 5000      | I <sup>oo</sup>      | decies millésimus          | denâ millia           | decies millies.         |
| 10,000    | CC <sup>oo</sup>     | quingentes millésimus      | quingena millia       | quingentes millies.     |
| 50,000    | I <sup>ooo</sup>     | centies millésimus         | centena millia        | centies millies.        |
| 100,000   | CCC <sup>ooo</sup>   | quingentes millésimus      | quingena millia       | quingentes millies.     |
| 500,000   | I <sup>oooo</sup>    | decies centies millésimus  | decies centena millia | decies centies millies. |
| 1,000,000 | CCCC <sup>oooo</sup> |                            |                       |                         |

## CHAPTER XIII.—THE PRONOUNS.

§ 74. The *Pronouns* are :

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Reflective Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns.
5. Determinative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Interrogative Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.
9. Correlative Pronouns.

The Pronouns belonging to several of these classes are properly Adjectives.

## § 75. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

|      | Sing.                     |                     | Plur.        |
|------|---------------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| Nom. | Ēgō, I                    | Nōs,                | we           |
| Gen. | Meī, of me                | Nostri and nostrum, | of us        |
| Dat. | Mihī, to or for me        | Nōbīs,              | to or for us |
| Acc. | Mē, me                    | Nōs,                | us [from us. |
| Abl. | Mē, by, with, or from me. | Nōbīs,              | by, with, or |

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

|      | Sing.                       |                     | Plur.             |
|------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| Nom. | Tū, thou                    | Vōs,                | ye                |
| Gen. | Tuī, of thee                | Vestri and vestrum, | of you            |
| Dat. | Tibi, to or for thee        | Vōbīs,              | to or for you     |
| Acc. | Tē, thee                    | Vōs,                | you               |
| Voc. | Tū, O thou                  | Vēs,                | O ye [you.        |
| Abl. | Tē, by, with, or from thee. | Vōbīs,              | by, with, or from |

Obs. 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mēt* or *tē* ; as, *ēgōmēt*, *I myself* ; *tūtē*, *tātāmet*, *thou thyself* ; *noamet*, *vosmet*, *we ourselves*, *you yourselves*.

Obs. 2. The *Dat.* *mihī* is sometimes contracted into *mī*.

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he*, *she*, *it*, the Determinative Pronoun is, *eā*, *id* is usually employed. See § 79.

## § 76. II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflective Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and therefore do not require a Nominative case

The Reflective Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are the same as the First and Second Personal Pronouns ; but the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined :

Sing. and Plur.

*Nom.* (wanting)

*Gen.* Sui, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

*Dat.* Sibi, to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

*Acc.* Sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

*Abl.* Sē or sēsē, by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

*Obs.* Sibi and sē are strengthened by the addition of *mēt* : as, sēbimēt, sēmēt.

### § 77. III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined regularly :

| M.      | F.      | N.       |                       |
|---------|---------|----------|-----------------------|
| Meūs,   | meā,    | meum,    | my or mine.           |
| Tuūs,   | tuā,    | tuum,    | thy or thine.         |
| Nostēr, | nostrā, | nostrum, | our.                  |
| Vestēr, | vestrā, | vestrum, | your.                 |
| Suūs,   | suā,    | suum,    | his, her, its, their. |

*Obs.* 1. The *Voc. Sing. Masc.* of *meūs* is *mi*.

*Obs.* 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Pronouns is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *ptē* : as, *meoptē ingēniō*, *by my own ability*. *Mēt* is added to *suūs* : as, *suūmēt scēlērā*, *his own crimes*.

*Obs.* 3. A Possessive Pronoun is also formed from the Relative : as, *cūjūs*, *cūjā*, *cūjum*, *whose* ?

*Obs.* 4. From *nostēr*, *vestēr*, *cūjūs* (*ā*, *um*) are formed Adjectives ending in *ās* (*Gen. ātis*), which signify *belonging to a country* : as,

|                  |                |                          |
|------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>nostrās</i> , | <i>-ātis</i> , | <i>of our country ;</i>  |
| <i>vestrās</i> , | <i>-ātis</i> , | <i>of your country ;</i> |
| <i>cūjās</i> ,   | <i>-ātis</i> , | <i>of what country ?</i> |

### § 78. IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are of the *First, Second, and Third Persons* : namely, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, *this near me* ; *istē*, *istā*, *istūd*, *that near you* ; *illē*, *illā*, *illūd*, *that near him*, or *that yonder*.

1. *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, *this near me*.

|             | Sing.        |             |            |  | Plur.        |              |              |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------|--|--------------|--------------|--------------|
|             | M.           | F.          | N.         |  | M.           | F.           | N.           |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Hic</i>   | <i>haec</i> | <i>hoc</i> |  | <i>Hi</i>    | <i>hae</i>   | <i>haec</i>  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Hājūs</i> |             |            |  | <i>Hōrum</i> | <i>hārum</i> | <i>hōrum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Huic</i>  |             |            |  | <i>Hīs</i>   |              |              |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Hunc</i>  | <i>hanc</i> | <i>hoc</i> |  | <i>Hīs</i>   | <i>hās</i>   | <i>haec</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Hōc</i>   | <i>hāc</i>  | <i>hōc</i> |  | <i>Hīs</i>   |              |              |



2. Istē, istā, istū, *that near you.*

| Sing.      |       |      | Plur.   |         |         |
|------------|-------|------|---------|---------|---------|
| M.         | F.    | N.   | M.      | F.      | N.      |
| Nom. Istē  | istā  | istū | Istī    | istae   | istā    |
| Gen. Istūs |       |      | Istōrum | istārum | istōrum |
| Dat. Isti  |       |      | Istis   |         |         |
| Acc. Istum | istam | istū | Istos   | istās   | istā    |
| Abl. Istō  | istā  | istō | Istis   |         |         |

3. Illē, illā, illū, *that near him, that yonder.*

| Sing.      |       |      | Plur.   |         |         |
|------------|-------|------|---------|---------|---------|
| M.         | F.    | N.   | M.      | F.      | N.      |
| Nom. Illē  | illā  | illū | Illī    | illae   | illā    |
| Gen. Illūs |       |      | Illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| Dat. Illi  |       |      | Illis   |         |         |
| Acc. Illum | illam | illū | Illōs   | illās   | illā    |
| Abl. Illō  | illā  | illō | Illis   |         |         |

Obs. 1. The cases of these three Pronouns are strengthened by the particle *ē* or *o*. This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of *hic*, but may be added to others also : *as, hūjusē, hicē, &c.*

Istē with the particle *ee* or *o* is thus declined :

| Sing.         |        |       | Plur.    |          |          |
|---------------|--------|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| M.            | F.     | N.    | M.       | F.       | N.       |
| Nom. Istic    | istae  | istuc | Isticē   | istae    | istae    |
| Gen. Istiuscē |        |       | Istōrunc | istārunc | istōrunc |
| Dat. Isti     |        |       | Istiscē  |          |          |
| Acc. Istunc   | istanc | istuc | Istoscē  | istascē  | istae    |
| Abl. Istōc    | istāc  | istōc | Istiscē  |          |          |

Illē with the particle *ee* or *o* is declined in the same way : *as, illio, illae, illuc, &c.*

Obs. 2. *Ecce* or *en, behold*, are sometimes prefixed to *ille* and *iste* : *a, eccllum* or *ellum* ; *eccistam* ; which were of frequent use in ordinary life.

Obs. 3. Virgil often uses *olli* as a *Dat. Sing.* and *Nom. Pl.* instead of *illi*. The stem was originally *ol*, which appears in *ol-in, yonder*.

## § 79. V. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are : *is, eā, id, this, and he, she, that*, referring to words in the context of a sentence ; *its* compound, *idem, eādem, idem, the same* ; and *ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, same*.

1. *Is, eā, id, this, and he, she, it.*

| Sing.     |     |    | Plur.      |       |       |
|-----------|-----|----|------------|-------|-------|
| M.        | F.  | N. | M.         | F.    | N.    |
| Nom. Is   | eā  | id | II         | eae   | eā    |
| Gen. Ejus |     |    | Eōrum      | eārum | eōrum |
| Dat. Ei   |     |    | Iis or eis |       |       |
| Acc. Eum  | eam | id | Eōs        | eās   | eā    |
| Abl. Eō   | eā  | eō | Iis or eis |       |       |

2. *Idem, eādem, idem, the same.*

| Sing.        |        |       | Plur.          |          |          |
|--------------|--------|-------|----------------|----------|----------|
| M.           | F.     | N.    | M.             | F.       | N.       |
| Nom. Idem    | eādem  | idem  | Idem           | eaedem   | eādem    |
| Gen. Ejusdem |        |       | Eōrundem       | eārundem | eōrundem |
| Dat. Eidem   |        |       | Idem or eisdem |          |          |
| Acc. Eundem  | eandem | idem  | Eodem          | easdem   | eādem    |
| Abl. Eōdem   | eādem  | eōdem | Idem or eisdem |          |          |

3. Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, *self, same.*

| Sing.       |        |       | Plur. |         |         |         |
|-------------|--------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
|             | M.     | F.    | N.    | M.      | F.      | N.      |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Ipsē   | ipsā  | ipsum | Ipsi    | ipse    | ipsi    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ipsius |       |       | Ipsorum | ipsarum | ipsorum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Ipsi   |       |       | Ipsis   |         |         |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Ipsum  | ipsam | ipsum | Ipsos   | ipsas   | ipsos   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Ipsō   | ipsā  | ipsō  | Ipsis   |         |         |

*Obs.* 1. Ecce is frequently prefixed to *is*: as, ecce, eorum, eorum, eorum, eorum, eorum.  
See § 78, *Obs.* 2.

*Obs.* 2. *Ipe* compounded with some cases of *is* sometimes loses the *i*: as, eumpse, campse, eopse, eapse; also reapse = *rē ipsā* or *rē eā ipsā*.

## § 80. VI. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui, quae, quod, *who or which.*

|             | Sing.      |      |      |  | Plur.  |        |        |
|-------------|------------|------|------|--|--------|--------|--------|
|             | M.         | F.   | N.   |  | M.     | F.     | N.     |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Qui        | quae | quod |  | Qui    | quae   | quae   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Cujus      |      |      |  | Quorum | quarum | quorum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Cui or cūi |      |      |  | Quibus |        |        |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Quem       | quam | quod |  | Quos   | quas   | quae   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Quō        | quā  | quō  |  | Quibus |        |        |

*Obs.* 1. There is an older form in the *Gen. Sing.* quōtūs, in the *Dat. Sing.* quōi, in the *Abl. Sing.* qui (instead of quō), and in the *Dat.* and *Abl. Pl.* quī (instead of quibus). The *Abl. qui* is usually found in combination with the preposition *cum*: as, quicum instead of quocum.

*Obs.* 2. From *qui* are formed the two indefinite relatives quicunque and quisquis, *whoever, whosoever, whichever, whatever.*

Quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque is declined like *qui, quae, quod*, with the addition of the indeclinable *cunque*: as, *Gen.* cūjuscunque, &c.

Besides *quisquis*, the *Neut.* quidquid (or quicquid) and *Abl.* quocquō are the only forms in use.

Quicunque is generally an Adjective; *quisquis* always a Substantive.

*Obs.* 3. The interrogative utrū, utrū, utrum, *which of the two?* is used as a relative with *cunque*; as, utercunque, utracunque, utrumcunque, *whichever of the two.*

## § 81. VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quis or qui, quae, quid or quod, *who, which? what?*

|             | Sing.       |      |           |  | Plur.  |        |        |
|-------------|-------------|------|-----------|--|--------|--------|--------|
|             | M.          | F.   | N.        |  | M.     | F.     | N.     |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Quis or qui | quae | quid      |  | Qui    | quae   | quae   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Cujus       |      | [or quod] |  | Quorum | quarum | quorum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Cui         |      | [or quod] |  | Quibus |        |        |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Quem        | quam | quid      |  | Quos   | quas   | quae   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Quō         | quā  | quō       |  | Quibus |        |        |

*Obs.* 1. *Quis* is used both as a Substantive and as an Adjective; *quid* only as a Substantive; *qui* and *quod* as Adjectives: as, quid commisit, *what has he done?* quod facinus commisit, *what deed has he done?*

**Obs. 2.** The *Abl. Sing.* *qui* is used only in the signification *how* ? as, *qui fit* ? *how does it happen* ?

**Obs. 3.** *Quis* and *qui* are strengthened by the addition of *nam* in emphatic interrogations : as, *quisnam* or *quīnam*, *quenam*, *quidnam* or *quodnam*, *who then, what then* ?

**Obs. 4.** When the question refers to one of two, *utēr*, *utrū*, *utrum*, *which of the two*, is used. For the declension of *utēr* and its compounds see § 57, **Obs. 2.**

**Obs. 5.** Some derivatives of *quis* are also capable of being used interrogatively ; as, *quantus*, *how great* ? *quālis*, *of what sort* ? *quōt*, *how many* ? See § 83.

## § 82. VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*Quis* is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions *et*, *if*, and *nē*, *lest*. Thus, *si quis* is "*if any one*"; *nē quis*, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When *quis* is so used, it changes *quae* to *qua* wherever that form occurs. In other respects it is declined like the Interrogative *quis*.

**Obs. 1.** *Quid* is used as a Substantive, *quōd* as an Adjective : *quis* both as a Substantive and as an Adjective, *qui* usually as an Adjective.

**Obs. 2.** *Ecquīs* (*ecquī*), *ecquā* (*ecquae*), *ecquid* (*ecquōd*), *any*, and, strengthened with the particle *nam*, *ecquisnam*, is formed from *quis*, and declined in the same manner.

**Obs. 3.** *Alīquis*, *āliquīd*, *any one, some one* (as Substantive), and *āliquī*, *āliquā*, *āliquōd*, *any, some* (as Adjective), are declined like *quis* (*qui*), except that in the *Nom. Fem. Sing.* and in the *Neutr. Plur.* only the form *āliquā* is used.

**Obs. 4.** *Quisquam*, *quidquam* (*quicquam*), *any one*, has no Feminine and no Plural. *Gen. cūjusquam*, &c. It is used as a Substantive in negative sentences. The corresponding Adjective is *ullūs*.

**Obs. 5.** The following Indefinite Pronouns are declined either like the Relative or the Interrogative ; the Neuters in *quid* being used Substantively, and those in *quōd* Adjectively :—

|                      |                     |                                            |                                                  |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Quidam</i> ,      | <i>quaedam</i> ,    | <i>quoddam</i> or <i>quiddam</i> ,         | <i>a certain one.</i>                            |
| <i>Quispiam</i> ,    | <i>quaequam</i> ,   | <i>quodpiam</i> or <i>quidpiam</i> ,       | <i>any one.</i>                                  |
| <i>Quivīs</i> ,      | <i>quaevis</i> ,    | <i>quodvis</i> or <i>quidvis</i> ,         | <i>any one you please.</i>                       |
| <i>Quilibet</i> ,    | <i>quaelibet</i> ,  | <i>quodlibet</i> or <i>quidlibet</i> ,     | <i>any one you please.</i>                       |
| <i>Quisque</i> ,     | <i>quaeque</i> ,    | <i>quodque</i> or <i>quidque</i> ,         | <i>every one.</i>                                |
| <i>Unusquisque</i> , | <i>unāquaeque</i> , | <i>unumquodque</i> or <i>unumquidque</i> , | <i>Gen. unuscujusque</i> , &c., <i>each one.</i> |

**Obs. 6.** The following form the *Gen.* in *ūs* and the *Dat.* in *ī* : *ullus*, *any*, *nullus*, *none* ; *nonnullus* (*usu.* in *pl.*) *some* ; *ālius*, *one, another* ; *alter*, *the one or other of two* ; neuter, (a contraction of *ne uter*), *neither of two*. See § 57.

In early Latin and sometimes in the best writers the *Gen.* is also found in *i*, *ae*, and the *Dat.* in *o*, *ae* : as *nulli consilii*, *nullo consilio*, &c. The compound *alterūter* is declined either in both words : as, *Gen. altērius strīus* ; or only in the latter : as, *Dat. alterutrō*.

## § 83. IX. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Correlative Pronouns denote relation to one another by corresponding forms.

| Demonstrative.                                                   | Relative and Interrogative.                                  | Indefinite Relative.                                    | Indefinite.                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tālis,<br>of such a kind.                                        | Quālis,<br>of such a kind as (rel.); of what kind? (interr.) | Quālisecunquē,<br>Quālisquālis,<br>of what kind soever. | Quālislibēt,<br>of any kind you please.                                                                   |
| Tantū,<br>so great.                                              | Quantū,<br>so great as (rel.); how great? (interr.)          | Quantuscunquē,<br>Quantusquantus,<br>how great soever.  | Alīquantū,<br>of a certain, considerable size.<br>Quantuslibēt,<br>Quantusvis,<br>of any size you please. |
| Tūt (Indecl.),<br>so many.<br>Tūtdem (Indecl.),<br>just so many. | Quōt (Indecl.),<br>so many as (rel.); how many? (interr.)    | Quotcunquē,<br>Quotquōt,<br>how many soever.            | Alīquōt (Indecl.),<br>some number.<br>Quotlibēt (Indecl.)<br>any number you please.                       |

## CHAPTER XIV.—THE VERB.

## § 84. VERBS are of two kinds:

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the object of the action: as, *āmo puērū, I love the boy.*

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not govern an Accusative Case: as, *sēdēō, I sit; curro, I run.*

Transitive Verbs have Two VOICES:

(i.) The ACTIVE VOICE, before which the Nominative represents the actor (from *āgo, actum, to do*): as, *pātēr āmat, the father loves.*

(ii.) The PASSIVE VOICE, (from *pātīōr, passūs, to suffer*), before which the Nominative represents the object of the action: as, *pātēr āmātur, the father is loved.*

*Obs. 1.* Some Verbs may have a reflexive sense in the Passive Voice: as, *armōr, I arm myself; vertōr, I turn myself; lāvōr, I wash myself.*

*Obs. 2.* Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal: as, *currītūr, it is run (they run).*

DEPONENT VERBS have a Passive form but an Active meaning, and are hence called Deponent, because they lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive sense. They are either Transitive, Intransitive, or Reflective: as, hortor milites, *I exhort the soldiers*; miles moritur, *the soldier is dying*; glorior, *I glorify myself* (or, more usually, *I boast*).

§ 85. Verbs have Four MOODS (Mōdi):

- I. The INDICATIVE MOOD declares a thing positively or unconditionally: as, amo, *I love*; scribit, *he writes*.
  - II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD is subjoined to another Verb, and states what is conditional, relative, or contingent: as, scribo ut legat, *I write that he may read*; legat aliquis, *let some one read*.
- Obs.* The Subjunctive Mood however must frequently be translated as an Indicative; owing to the defectiveness of the English Verb.
- III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands or entreats: as, amā, *love*; nē occidito, *thou shalt not kill*.
  - IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the action denoted by the Verb without reference to person: as, amārē, *to love*.

§ 86. Besides these four Moods three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs.

1. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective.

There are four Participles:

| <i>Active.</i>    |           |                       |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | Amans,    | <i>loving.</i>        |
| <i>Future.</i>    | Amāturus, | <i>about to love.</i> |

| <i>Passive.</i>   |          |                         |
|-------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i>   | Amātus,  | <i>loved.</i>           |
| <i>Gerundive.</i> | Amandus, | <i>fit to be loved.</i> |

2. The SUPINE, which is strictly a Verbal Substantive of the fourth declension, having two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: as,

|         |                                |
|---------|--------------------------------|
| Amātum, | <i>to love.</i>                |
| Amātū,  | <i>in loving, to be loved.</i> |

3. The GERUND, which is also a Verbal Substantive, having four Cases: as,

|             |          |                   |
|-------------|----------|-------------------|
| <i>Gen.</i> | Amandi,  | <i>of loving</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Amando,  | <i>for loving</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Amandum, | <i>a loving</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Amando,  | <i>by loving.</i> |

*Obs.* The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

§ 87. Verbs have six TENSES (Temporā) or times, three expressing *Imperfect* or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action.

*Imperfect Tenses.*

- |                    |         |                               |
|--------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i> | Āmo,    | <i>I love or I am loving.</i> |
| 2. <i>Past.</i>    | Āmābam, | <i>I was loving.</i>          |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>  | Āmābo,  | <i>I shall love.</i>          |

*Obs.* The *Present* and *Future* Tenses are frequently Indefinite and not Imperfect. In Active Verbs the Future Tense is never Imperfect: āmābo never signifies *I shall be loving*. Hence it is better to call these two tenses *Present* and *Future* simply.

*Perfect Tenses.*

- |                    |           |                            |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i> | Āmāvī,    | <i>I have loved.</i>       |
| 2. <i>Past.</i>    | Āmāvēram, | <i>I had loved.</i>        |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>  | Āmāvēro,  | <i>I shall have loved.</i> |

*Obs.* The *Present-Perfect* has also the meaning of an Indefinite-Past: thus, āmāvī signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved*; and in the former sense it is sometimes called the *Aorist*. As the tense has thus two meanings, it is better to call it *Perfect* simply.

§ 88. Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number: as,

| Sing.    |                    | Plur.   |                   |
|----------|--------------------|---------|-------------------|
| 1. Āmo,  | <i>I love</i>      | Āmāmūs, | <i>We love</i>    |
| 2. Āmās, | <i>thou lovest</i> | Āmātīs, | <i>ye love</i>    |
| 3. Āmāt, | <i>he loves.</i>   | Āmant,  | <i>they love.</i> |

§ 89. Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final vowel of the Stem, which is seen in the Imperfect Infinitive Active. (See further, Chap. XVIII.)

| I. or A<br>Conjugation.                 | II. or E<br>Conjugation. | III. or Consonant<br>and U Conjugation.   | IV. or I<br>Conjugation |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Stem.</i> āma,                       | mōne,                    | rēg, mīnu,                                | audi,                   |
| <i>Infinitive.</i> {āmā-re,<br>to love. | mōnē-re,<br>to advise.   | rēg-ēre, mīnū-ēre,<br>to rule, to lessen. | audi-re,<br>to hear.    |

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine, are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

## CHAPTER XV.—THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 90. The Verb *sum*, *I am*, is irregular, its inflexions differing in many respects from those of the Verbs belonging to the four Conjugations.

*Sum, fūl, fūtūrūs, eessē,—to be. Stem : ēs-, fu-*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                   |                 |                     |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Sing. Sum,</i> | <i>I am</i>     | <i>Plur. Sūmūs,</i> | <i>We are</i>    |
| <i>Es,</i>        | <i>thou art</i> | <i>Estis,</i>       | <i>ye are</i>    |
| <i>Est,</i>       | <i>he is.</i>   | <i>Sunt,</i>        | <i>they are.</i> |

#### 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                    |                  |                      |                   |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing. Ēram,</i> | <i>I was</i>     | <i>Plur. Ērāmūs.</i> | <i>We were</i>    |
| <i>Ērās,</i>       | <i>thou wast</i> | <i>Ērātis,</i>       | <i>ye were</i>    |
| <i>Ērāt,</i>       | <i>he was.</i>   | <i>Ērant,</i>        | <i>they were.</i> |

#### 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|                   |                     |                      |                      |
|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Sing. Ēro,</i> | <i>I shall be</i>   | <i>Plur. Ērimūs,</i> | <i>We shall be</i>   |
| <i>Ēris,</i>      | <i>thou wilt be</i> | <i>Ēritis,</i>       | <i>ye will be</i>    |
| <i>Ērit,</i>      | <i>he will be.</i>  | <i>Ērant,</i>        | <i>they will be.</i> |

#### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                   |                           |                      |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing. Fui,</i> | <i>I have been, or</i>    | <i>Plur. Fuimūs,</i> | <i>We have been, or</i>   |
|                   | <i>I was</i>              |                      | <i>we were</i>            |
| <i>Fuisti,</i>    | <i>thou hast been, or</i> | <i>Fuistis,</i>      | <i>ye have been, or</i>   |
|                   | <i>thou wast</i>          |                      | <i>ye were</i>            |
| <i>Fuisti,</i>    | <i>he has been, or</i>    | <i>Fuerunt</i>       | <i>they have been, or</i> |
|                   | <i>he was.</i>            | <i>or fuerē</i>      |                           |

#### 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                        |                        |                       |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing. Fuēram,</i> | <i>I had been</i>      | <i>Plur. Fuērāmūs,</i> | <i>We had been</i>    |
| <i>Fuēras,</i>       | <i>thou hadst been</i> | <i>Fuērātis,</i>       | <i>ye had been</i>    |
| <i>Fuērāt,</i>       | <i>he had been.</i>    | <i>Fuērant,</i>        | <i>they had been.</i> |

#### 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                            |                        |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing. Fuēro,</i> | <i>I shall have been</i>   | <i>Plur. Fuērimūs,</i> | <i>We shall have been.</i> |
| <i>Fuēris,</i>      | <i>thou wilt have been</i> | <i>Fuēritis,</i>       | <i>ye will have been</i>   |
| <i>Fuērit,</i>      | <i>he will have been.</i>  | <i>Fuērint,</i>        | <i>they will have been</i> |

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                  |                |                    |              |
|------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| <i>Sing. Es,</i> | <i>Be thou</i> | <i>Plur. Estē,</i> | <i>Be ye</i> |
|------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|

#### 2. FUTURE TENSE.

|                    |                            |                      |                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing. Esto,</i> | <i>Thou shalt be</i>       | <i>Plur. Estōtē,</i> | <i>Ye shall be</i>           |
| <i>Esto,</i>       | <i>he shall be, or let</i> | <i>Sunto,</i>        | <i>they shall be, or let</i> |
|                    | <i>him be.</i>             |                      | <i>them be.</i>              |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|         |                      |           |                     |
|---------|----------------------|-----------|---------------------|
| S. Sim, | <i>I may be</i>      | P. Simus, | <i>We may be</i>    |
| Sis,    | <i>thou mayst be</i> | Sitis,    | <i>ye may be</i>    |
| Sit,    | <i>he may be.</i>    | Sint,     | <i>they may be.</i> |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|             |                          |               |                      |                         |  |
|-------------|--------------------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
| S. Essem or | } <i>I might be</i>      | P. Essēmus or | } <i>We might be</i> |                         |  |
| förem,      |                          | föremūs,      |                      |                         |  |
| Essēs or    |                          | Essētis or    |                      |                         |  |
| föres,      | } <i>thou mightst be</i> | företis,      | } <i>ye might be</i> |                         |  |
| Essēt or    |                          | Essent or     |                      |                         |  |
| föret,      | } <i>he might be.</i>    |               | förent,              | } <i>they might be.</i> |  |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|            |                             |              |                            |
|------------|-----------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|
| S. Fuërim, | <i>I may have been</i>      | P. Fuërimus, | <i>We may have been</i>    |
| Fuëris,    | <i>thou mayst have been</i> | Fuëritis,    | <i>ye may have been</i>    |
| Fuërit,    | <i>he may have been.</i>    | Fuërint,     | <i>they may have been.</i> |

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|             |                                  |              |                              |  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|--|
| S. Fuissem, | } <i>I might</i>                 | P. Fuissēms, | } <i>We might</i>            |  |
| Fuissēs,    |                                  | Fuissētis,   |                              |  |
| Fuissēt,    |                                  | Fuissent,    |                              |  |
|             | } <i>thou mightst have been.</i> |              | } <i>ye might have been.</i> |  |
|             | } <i>he might</i>                |              | } <i>they might</i>          |  |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|            |                        |                           |
|------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| IMPERFECT. | Essē,                  | <i>to be.</i>             |
| PERFECT.   | Fuissē,                | <i>to have been.</i>      |
| FUTURE.    | Füturus essē, or före, | <i>to be about to be.</i> |

## PARTICIPLE.

|         |                   |                     |
|---------|-------------------|---------------------|
| FUTURE. | Füturus, -a, -um, | <i>about to be.</i> |
|---------|-------------------|---------------------|

Obs. 1. The Supine and Gerund are wanting. The Present Participle is found only in Absens from Absum, and Praesens from Praesum.

Obs. 2. The Verb has two Stems, *es* (whence *esum*, afterwards *'sum*, and all the Imperfect Tenses), and *fu* (whence all the Perfect Tenses).

Obs. 3. Like Sum are conjugated its compounds :

|           |                         |           |                          |
|-----------|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Absum,    | <i>I am away.</i>       | Obsum,    | <i>I am in the way.</i>  |
| Adsum,    | <i>I am present.</i>    | Praesum,  | <i>I am before.</i>      |
| Dæsum,    | <i>I am wanting.</i>    | Præsum,   | <i>I am serviceable.</i> |
| Insum,    | <i>I am in.</i>         | Subsum,   | <i>I am under.</i>       |
| Intersum, | <i>I am present at.</i> | Sûpersum, | <i>I am surviving.</i>   |

Præsum, however, takes *s* before *e* ; as,

|               |                 |                     |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Sing. Præsum, | Plur. Præsumus, | Past-Imp. Præderam. |
| Prædes,       | Prædestis,      | Future. Prædero.    |
| Prædest,      | Præsent.        | Imp. Inf. Prædesse. |

Obs. 4. Possum, *I am able*, is a contraction of potis (pot)-sum, but is irregular.



## § 91. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Amo, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, *āmārē*,—*to love*. Stem : *āma-*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|              |                                                |                                                         |              |                                                      |                                                       |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-o,</i><br><i>Am-as,</i><br><i>Am-āt,</i> | <i>I love</i><br><i>thou lovest</i><br><i>he loves.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-āmūs,</i><br><i>Am-ātīs,</i><br><i>Am-ant,</i> | <i>We love</i><br><i>ye love</i><br><i>they love.</i> |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                                                       |                                                                         |              |                                                            |                                                                            |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-ābam,</i><br><i>Am-ābās,</i><br><i>Am-ābāt,</i> | <i>I was loving</i><br><i>thou wast loving</i><br><i>he was loving.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-ābāmūs,</i><br><i>Am-ābātīs,</i><br><i>Am-ābant,</i> | <i>We were loving</i><br><i>ye were loving</i><br><i>they were loving.</i> |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|              |                                                      |                                                                      |              |                                                            |                                                                       |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-ābo,</i><br><i>Am-ābīs,</i><br><i>Am-ābīt,</i> | <i>I shall love</i><br><i>thou wilt love</i><br><i>he will love.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-ābīmūs,</i><br><i>Am-ābītīs,</i><br><i>Am-ābunt,</i> | <i>We shall love</i><br><i>ye will love</i><br><i>they will love.</i> |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|              |                                                                |                                                                                                                                               |              |                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-āvi,</i><br><br><i>Am-āvistī,</i><br><br><i>Am-āvīt,</i> | <i>I have loved, or</i><br><i>I loved</i><br><i>thou hast loved,</i><br><i>or thou lovedst</i><br><i>he has loved, or</i><br><i>he loved.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-āvimūs,</i><br><br><i>Am-āvistīs,</i><br><br><i>Am-āverunt,</i><br><i>or Am-āvērē</i> | <i>We have loved,</i><br><i>or we loved</i><br><i>ye have loved,</i><br><i>or ye loved</i><br><i>they have loved,</i><br><i>or they loved.</i> |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|              |                                                             |                                                                       |              |                                                                  |                                                                      |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-āveram,</i><br><i>Am-āvērās,</i><br><i>Am-āvērāt,</i> | <i>I had loved</i><br><i>thou hadst loved</i><br><i>he had loved.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-āvērāmūs,</i><br><i>Am-āvērātīs,</i><br><i>Am-āvērant,</i> | <i>We had loved</i><br><i>ye had loved</i><br><i>they had loved.</i> |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|              |                                                            |                                                                     |              |                                                                  |                                                                      |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-āvero,</i><br><i>Am-āvērīs,</i><br><i>Am-āvērīt,</i> | <i>I shall have</i><br><i>thou wilt have</i><br><i>he will have</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-āvērimūs,</i><br><i>Am-āvērītīs,</i><br><i>Am-āvērint,</i> | <i>We shall have</i><br><i>ye will have</i><br><i>they will have</i> |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

|              |              |                   |              |                |                 |
|--------------|--------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-ā,</i> | <i>Love thou.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-ātē,</i> | <i>Love ye.</i> |
|--------------|--------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|

## FUTURE TENSE.

|              |                                  |                                                                            |              |                                     |                                                                             |
|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Am-āto,</i><br><i>Am-āto,</i> | <i>Thou shalt love</i><br><i>he shall love, or</i><br><i>let him love.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Am-ātētē,</i><br><i>Am-anto,</i> | <i>Ye shall love</i><br><i>they shall love, or</i><br><i>let them love.</i> |
|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                  |                        |                    |                       |
|------------------|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| S. <i>Am-em,</i> | <i>I may love</i>      | P. <i>Am-ēmūs,</i> | <i>We may love</i>    |
| <i>Am-ēs,</i>    | <i>thou mayst love</i> | <i>Am-ētis,</i>    | <i>ye may love</i>    |
| <i>Am-ēt,</i>    | <i>he may love.</i>    | <i>Am-ent,</i>     | <i>they may love.</i> |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                    |                          |                      |                         |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| S. <i>Am-ārem,</i> | <i>I might love</i>      | P. <i>Am-ārēmūs,</i> | <i>We might love</i>    |
| <i>Am-ārēs,</i>    | <i>thou mightst love</i> | <i>Am-ārētis,</i>    | <i>ye might love</i>    |
| <i>Am-ārēt,</i>    | <i>he might love.</i>    | <i>Am-ārent,</i>     | <i>they might love.</i> |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                      |                   |                        |                 |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| S. <i>Am-āverim,</i> | <i>I may</i>      | P. <i>Am-āverimūs,</i> | <i>We may</i>   |
| <i>Am-āveris,</i>    | <i>thou mayst</i> | <i>Am-āveritīs,</i>    | <i>ye may</i>   |
| <i>Am-āverit,</i>    | <i>he may</i>     | <i>Am-āverint,</i>     | <i>they may</i> |
|                      | <i>have</i>       |                        | <i>have</i>     |
|                      | <i>loved.</i>     |                        | <i>loved</i>    |

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                     |                         |                   |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| S. <i>Am-āvissēm,</i> | <i>I might</i>      | P. <i>Am-āvissēmūs,</i> | <i>We might</i>   |
| <i>Am-āvissēs,</i>    | <i>thou mightst</i> | <i>Am-āvissētīs,</i>    | <i>ye might</i>   |
| <i>Am-āvissēt,</i>    | <i>he might</i>     | <i>Am-āvissent,</i>     | <i>they might</i> |
|                       | <i>have</i>         |                         | <i>have</i>       |
|                       | <i>loved.</i>       |                         | <i>loved</i>      |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| IMPERF. <i>Am-ārē,</i>     | <i>to love.</i>      |
| PERFECT. <i>Am-āvissē,</i> | <i>{ to have</i>     |
|                            | <i>loved.</i>        |
| FUTURE. <i>Am-ātūrus</i>   | <i>{ to be about</i> |
| (a, um) <i>essē,</i>       | <i>to love.</i>      |

## GERUND.

|                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Gen. <i>Am-andī,</i>  | <i>of loving</i>  |
| Dat. <i>Am-ando,</i>  | <i>for loving</i> |
| Acc. <i>Am-andum,</i> | <i>the loving</i> |
| Abl. <i>Am-ando,</i>  | <i>by loving.</i> |

## SUPINES.

|                 |                 |                |                     |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------------|
| <i>Am-ātum,</i> | <i>to love.</i> | <i>Am-ātū,</i> | <i>to be loved.</i> |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------------|

## PARTICIPLES.

|                                   |                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| IMPERF. <i>Am-ans (ntis),</i>     | <i>loving.</i>        |
| FUTURE. <i>Am-ātūrus (a, um),</i> | <i>about to love.</i> |

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*: as

|                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>āmāviatī</i> becomes <i>āmasti</i> | <i>āmāveram</i> becomes <i>āmāram</i> |
| <i>āmāviatis</i> „ <i>āmastis</i>     | <i>āmāvērō</i> „ <i>āmāro</i>         |
| <i>āmāverunt</i> „ <i>āmāvērunt</i>   | <i>āmāvērim</i> „ <i>āmārim</i>       |
| (but <i>āmāvērē</i> does not become   | <i>āmāvissem</i> „ <i>āmāassem</i>    |
| <i>āmārē</i> , which would be con-    | <i>āmāvisse</i> „ <i>āmāasse</i>      |
| founded with the Imperf. Infm.).      |                                       |

## § 92. SECOND OR 2 CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mönö, mönül, mönltum, mönörö,—to advise. Stem : möne-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|           |                      |              |                     |
|-----------|----------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| S. Mön-ö, | <i>I advise</i>      | P. Mön-ömüs, | <i>We advise</i>    |
| Mön-ös,   | <i>thou advisest</i> | Mön-ötis,    | <i>ye advise</i>    |
| Mön-ët,   | <i>he advises.</i>   | Mön-ent,     | <i>they advise.</i> |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                           |                |                            |
|--------------|---------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| S. Mön-ëham, | <i>I was advising</i>     | P. Mön-ëbämüs, | <i>We were advising</i>    |
| Mön-ëbäs,    | <i>thou wast advising</i> | Mön-ëbätis,    | <i>ye were advising</i>    |
| Mön-ëbät,    | <i>he was advising.</i>   | Mön-ëbant,     | <i>they were advising.</i> |

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|             |                         |                |                          |
|-------------|-------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| S. Mön-ëbo, | <i>I shall advise</i>   | P. Mön-ëbimüs, | <i>We shall advise</i>   |
| Mön-ëbis,   | <i>thou wilt advise</i> | Mön-ëbitis,    | <i>ye will advise</i>    |
| Mön-ëbit,   | <i>he will advise.</i>  | Mön-ëbunt,     | <i>they will advise.</i> |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|            |                              |               |                           |
|------------|------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| S. Mön-ul, | <i>I have advised, or</i>    | P. Mön-ülmüs, | <i>We have advised,</i>   |
|            | <i>I advised</i>             |               | <i>or we advised</i>      |
| Mön-üisti, | <i>thou hast advised, or</i> | Mön-üistis,   | <i>ye have advised,</i>   |
|            | <i>thou advisedst</i>        |               | <i>or ye advised</i>      |
| Mön-üit,   | <i>he has advised, or</i>    | Mön-üerunt    | <i>they have advised,</i> |
|            | <i>he advised.</i>           | or -üerö,     | <i>or they advised</i>    |

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|               |                           |                 |                          |
|---------------|---------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| S. Mön-üëram, | <i>I had advised</i>      | P. Mön-üëramüs, | <i>We had advised</i>    |
| Mön-üëräs,    | <i>thou hadst advised</i> | Mön-üërätis,    | <i>ye had advised</i>    |
| Mön-üërät,    | <i>he had advised.</i>    | Mön-üërant,     | <i>they had advised.</i> |

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|              |                      |                 |                      |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| S. Mön-üëro, | <i>I shall</i>       | P. Mön-üërimüs, | <i>We shall</i>      |
| Mön-üëris,   | <i>thou wilt</i>     | Mön-üëritis,    | <i>ye will</i>       |
| Mön-üërit,   | <i>he will</i>       | Mön-üërint,     | <i>they will</i>     |
|              | <i>have advised.</i> |                 | <i>have advised.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

|           |                     |             |                   |
|-----------|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| S. Mön-ö, | <i>Advise thou.</i> | P. Mön-ëtö, | <i>Advise ye.</i> |
|-----------|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|

## FUTURE TENSE.

|             |                                |               |                              |
|-------------|--------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| S. Mön-ëtö, | <i>Thou shalt advise</i>       | P. Mön-ëtötö, | <i>Ye shall advise</i>       |
| Mön-ëtö,    | <i>he shall advise, or let</i> | Mön-ëntö,     | <i>they shall advise, or</i> |
|             | <i>him advise.</i>             |               | <i>let them advise.</i>      |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                                        |                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mōn-eam, <i>I may advise</i> | <i>P.</i> Mōn-eāmūs, <i>We may advise</i> |
| Mōn-eās, <i>thou mayest advise</i>     | Mōn-eātīs, <i>ye may advise</i>           |
| Mōn-eāt, <i>he may advise.</i>         | Mōn-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>         |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                                           |                                              |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mōn-ērem, <i>I might advise</i> | <i>P.</i> Mōn-ērēmūs, <i>We might advise</i> |
| Mōn-ērēs, <i>thou mightst advise</i>      | Mōn-ērētīs, <i>ye might advise</i>           |
| Mōn-ērēt, <i>he might advise.</i>         | Mōn-ērent, <i>they might advise.</i>         |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                                   |                                  |                                      |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mōn-uērim, <i>I may</i> | } <i>have</i><br><i>advised.</i> | <i>P.</i> Mōn-uērimūs, <i>We may</i> | } <i>have</i><br><i>advised.</i> |
| Mōn-uērīs, <i>thou mayest</i>     |                                  | Mōn-uērītīs, <i>ye may</i>           |                                  |
| Mōn-uērīt, <i>he may</i>          |                                  | Mōn-uērint, <i>they may</i>          |                                  |

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                                     |                                  |                                         |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Mōn-uīsem, <i>I might</i> | } <i>have</i><br><i>advised.</i> | <i>P.</i> Mōn-uīseēmūs, <i>We might</i> | } <i>have</i><br><i>advised.</i> |
| Mōn-uīseēs, <i>thou mightst</i>     |                                  | Mōn-uīseētīs, <i>ye might</i>           |                                  |
| Mōn-uīseēt, <i>he might</i>         |                                  | Mōn-uīssent, <i>they might</i>          |                                  |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                            |                                                         |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>IMPERF.</i> Mōn-ērē,    | <i>to advise.</i>                                       |
| <i>PERFECT.</i> Mōn-uīseē, | { <i>to have</i><br><i>advised.</i>                     |
| <i>FUTURE.</i> Mōn-ītūrus  | { <i>to be about</i><br><i>(a, um) esse, to advise.</i> |

## GERUND.

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Gen.</i> Mōn-endī,  | <i>of advising</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> Mōn-endo,  | <i>for advising</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> Mōn-endam, | <i>the advising</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> Mōn-endo,  | <i>by advising.</i> |

## SUPINES.

|           |                   |          |                       |
|-----------|-------------------|----------|-----------------------|
| Mōn-ītum, | <i>to advise.</i> | Mōn-ītū, | <i>to be advised.</i> |
|-----------|-------------------|----------|-----------------------|

## PARTICIPLES.

|                                    |                         |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>IMPERF.</i> Mōn-ens (ntis),     | <i>advising.</i>        |
| <i>FUTURE.</i> Mōn-ītūrūs (a, um), | <i>about to advise.</i> |

§ 93. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION  
ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexi, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem : rēg-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

|           |             |              |            |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| S. Rēg-o, | I rule      | P. Rēg-imūs, | We rule    |
| Rēg-is,   | thou rulest | Rēg-itīs,    | ye rule    |
| Rēg-īt,   | he rules.   | Rēg-unt,     | they rule. |

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                  |                |                   |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| S. Rēg-ēbam, | I was ruling     | P. Rēg-ēbāmūs, | We were ruling    |
| Rēg-ēbās,    | thou wast ruling | Rēg-ēbātīs,    | ye were ruling    |
| Rēg-ēbāt,    | he was ruling.   | Rēg-ēbant,     | they were ruling. |

3. FUTURE TENSE.

|            |                |              |                 |
|------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| S. Rēg-am, | I shall rule   | P. Rēg-ēmūs, | We shall rule   |
| Rēg-ēs,    | thou wilt rule | Rēg-ētīs,    | ye will rule    |
| Rēg-ēt,    | he will rule.  | Rēg-ent,     | they will rule. |

4. PERFECT TENSE.

|           |                                     |                       |                                    |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. Rex-I, | I have ruled, or<br>I ruled         | P. Rex-imūs,          | We have ruled, or<br>we ruled      |
| Rex-istī, | thou hast ruled, or<br>thou ruledst | Rex-istīs,            | ye have ruled, or<br>ye ruled      |
| Rex-īt,   | he has ruled, or<br>he ruled.       | Rex-ērunt or<br>-ērē, | they have ruled, or<br>they ruled. |

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|              |                  |                |                 |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| S. Rex-ēram, | I had ruled      | P. Rex-ērāmūs, | We had ruled    |
| Rex-ērās,    | thou hadst ruled | Rex-ērātīs,    | ye had ruled    |
| Rex-ērāt,    | he had ruled.    | Rex-erant,     | they had ruled. |

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|             |                      |                |                       |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| S. Rex-ēro, | I shall have ruled   | P. Rex-ērīmūs, | We shall have ruled   |
| Rex-ērīs,   | thou wilt have ruled | Rex-ērītīs,    | ye will have ruled    |
| Rex-ērīt,   | he will have ruled.  | Rex-erint,     | they will have ruled. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

|           |            |             |          |
|-----------|------------|-------------|----------|
| S. Rēg-ē, | Rule thou. | P. Rēg-ītē, | Rule ye. |
|-----------|------------|-------------|----------|

FUTURE TENSE.

|             |                                    |               |                                       |
|-------------|------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| S. Rēg-ito, | Thou shalt rule                    | P. Rēg-ītōtē, | Ye shall rule                         |
| Rēg-ito,    | he shall rule, or let<br>him rule. | Rēg-unto,     | they shall rule, or<br>let them rule. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

|            |                 |              |                |
|------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| S. Rēg-am, | I may rule      | P. Rēg-āmūs, | We may rule.   |
| Rēg-ās,    | thou mayst rule | Rēg-ātīs,    | ye may rule    |
| Rēg-āt,    | he may rule.    | Rēg-ant,     | they may rule. |

2. ~~P~~ IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                   |                |                  |
|--------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| S. Rēg-ēram, | I might rule      | P. Rēg-ērēmūs, | We might rule    |
| Rēg-ērās,    | thou mightst rule | Rēg-ērētīs,    | ye might rule    |
| Rēg-ērēt,    | he might rule.    | Rēg-ērent,     | they might rule. |

3. PERFECT TENSE.

|              |            |                |          |
|--------------|------------|----------------|----------|
| S. Rex-ērim, | I may      | P. Rex-ērīmūs, | We may   |
| Rex-ēris,    | thou mayst | Rex-ērītīs,    | ye may   |
| Rex-ērīt,    | he may     | Rex-ērint,     | they may |

4. ~~Past~~ PERFECT TENSE.

|               |              |                 |            |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|
| S. Rex-issēm, | I might      | P. Rex-issēmūs, | We might   |
| Rex-issēs,    | thou mightst | Rex-issētīs,    | ye might   |
| Rex-issēt,    | he might     | Rex-issent,     | they might |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| IMPERF. Rēg-ērē,   | to rule.         |
| PERFECT. Rex-issē, | { to have ruled. |
| FUTURE. Rect-ūrus  | { to be about    |
| (a, um) essē,      | { to rule.       |

GERUND.

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| Gen. Rēg-endī,  | of ruling  |
| Dat. Rēg-endo,  | for ruling |
| Acc. Rēg-endum, | the ruling |
| Abl. Rēg-endo,  | by ruling. |

SUPINES.

|          |          |         |              |
|----------|----------|---------|--------------|
| Reo-tum, | to rule. | Rec-tū, | to be ruled. |
|----------|----------|---------|--------------|

PARTICIPLES.

|                            |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| IMPERF. Rēg-ens (ntis),    | ruling.        |
| FUTURE. Rec-tūrūs (a, um), | about to rule. |

## § 94. "FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audīo, audīvi, audītum, audirē,—to hear. Stem: audi-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                                         |                                              |                                               |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-īo,<br>Aud-īs,<br>Aud-īt, | <i>I hear<br/>thou hearest<br/>he hears.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-īmūs,<br>Aud-ītis,<br>Aud-iunt, | <i>We hear<br/>ye hear<br/>they hear.</i> |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                                                  |                                                                |                                                       |                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-iēbam,<br>Aud-iēbās,<br>Aud-iēbāt, | <i>I was hearing<br/>thou wast hearing<br/>he was hearing.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-iēbāmūs,<br>Aud-iēbātis,<br>Aud-iēbant, | <i>We were hearing<br/>ye were hearing<br/>they were hearing.</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|                                            |                                                          |                                                 |                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-iam,<br>Aud-iēs,<br>Aud-iēt, | <i>I shall hear<br/>thou wilt hear<br/>he will hear.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-iēmūs,<br>Aud-iētis,<br>Aud-ient, | <i>We shall hear<br/>ye will hear<br/>they will hear.</i> |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                |                                                                                                                 |                                                                    |                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-īvi,<br>Aud-īvistī,<br>Aud-īvīt, | <i>I have heard, or<br/>I heard<br/>thou hast heard, or<br/>thou heardst<br/>he has heard, or<br/>he heard.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-īvīmūs,<br>Aud-īvistis,<br>Aud-īverunt<br>or -īverē, | <i>We have heard,<br/>or we heard<br/>ye have heard,<br/>or ye heard<br/>they have heard,<br/>or they heard.</i> |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                     |                                                           |                                                          |                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-ivēram,<br>Aud-ivērās,<br>Aud-ivērāt, | <i>I had heard<br/>thou hadst heard<br/>he had heard.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-ivērāmūs,<br>Aud-ivērātis,<br>Aud-ivērant, | <i>We had heard<br/>ye had heard<br/>they had heard.</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                    |                                                                   |                                                          |                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-ivēro,<br>Aud-ivērīs,<br>Aud-ivērīt, | <i>I shall<br/>thou wilt<br/>he will</i> { <i>have<br/>heard.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-ivērīmūs,<br>Aud-ivērītis,<br>Aud-ivērint, | <i>We shall<br/>ye will<br/>they will</i> { <i>have<br/>heard.</i> |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

|                  |                   |                    |                |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-i, | <i>Hear thou.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-ītē, | <i>Hear ye</i> |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------|

## FUTURE TENSE.

|                                |                                                                |                                    |                                                                 |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Aud-ito,<br>Aud-ito, | <i>Thou shalt hear<br/>he shall hear, or<br/>let him hear.</i> | <i>P.</i> Aud-ītōtē,<br>Aud-iunto, | <i>Ye shall hear<br/>they shall hear, or<br/>let them hear.</i> |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                    |                        |                      |                       |
|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Aud-iam, | <i>I may hear</i>      | <b>P.</b> Aud-iāmūs, | <i>We may hear</i>    |
| Aud-iās,           | <i>thou mayst hear</i> | Aud-iātis,           | <i>ye may hear</i>    |
| Aud-iāt,           | <i>he may hear.</i>    | Aud-iant,            | <i>they may hear.</i> |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                     |                          |                      |                         |
|---------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Aud-irem, | <i>I might hear</i>      | <b>P.</b> Aud-iēmūs, | <i>We might hear</i>    |
| Aud-irēs,           | <i>thou mightst hear</i> | Aud-irētis,          | <i>ye might hear</i>    |
| Aud-irēt,           | <i>he might hear.</i>    | Aud-irent,           | <i>they might hear.</i> |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                    |                         |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Aud-ivērim, | <i>I may</i>       | <b>P.</b> Aud-ivērimūs, | <i>We may</i>      |
| Aud-ivēris,           | <i>thou mayst</i>  | Aud-ivēritis,           | <i>ye may</i>      |
| Aud-ivērit,           | <i>he may</i>      | Aud-ivērint,            | <i>they may</i>    |
|                       | <i>have heard.</i> |                         | <i>have heard.</i> |

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                        |                     |                          |                    |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Aud-ivissem, | <i>I might</i>      | <b>P.</b> Aud-ivissēmūs, | <i>We might</i>    |
| Aud-ivissēs,           | <i>thou mightst</i> | Aud-ivissētis,           | <i>ye might</i>    |
| Aud-ivissēt,           | <i>he might</i>     | Aud-ivissent,            | <i>they might</i>  |
|                        | <i>have heard.</i>  |                          | <i>have heard.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>IMPERF.</b> Aud-irē,     | <i>to hear.</i>         |
| <b>PERFECT.</b> Aud-ivissē, | <i>{ to have heard.</i> |
| <b>FUTURE.</b> Aud-itūrus   | <i>{ to be about</i>    |
| (a, um) essē,               | <i>{ to hear.</i>       |

## GERUND.

|                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Gen.</b> Aud-iendi,  | <i>of hearing</i>  |
| <b>Dat.</b> Aud-iendo,  | <i>for hearing</i> |
| <b>Acc.</b> Aud-iendum, | <i>the hearing</i> |
| <b>Abl.</b> Aud-iendo,  | <i>by hearing.</i> |

## SUPINES.

|                  |                 |                 |                     |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| <b>Aud-itum,</b> | <i>to hear.</i> | <b>Aud-itū,</b> | <i>to be heard.</i> |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|

## PARTICIPLES.

|                                    |                       |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>IMPERF.</b> Aud-iens (ntis),    | <i>hearing.</i>       |
| <b>FUTURE.</b> Aud-itūrus (a, um), | <i>about to hear.</i> |

**Obs.** In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *f*'s are often contracted into *i*: as,

|                                      |                            |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| audivisti becomes audistī or audistī | audivērim becomes audierim |
| audivistis " audistis or audistis    | audivissem " audissem or   |
| audivit " audist                     | audivisset " audisset or   |
| audivērunt " audierunt               |                            |
| audivēram " audieram                 |                            |
| audivēro " audiero                   |                            |



## § 95. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Amör, amätüs sam or fui, amäri,—to be loved. Stem: äma-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|            |                |             |                 |
|------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| S. Am-ör,  | I am loved     | P. Am-amür, | We are loved    |
| Am-äris or | thou art loved | Am-amini,   | ye are loved    |
| Am-äre,    |                | Am-antür,   | they are loved. |
| Am-ätür,   | he is loved.   |             |                 |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|              |                       |               |                        |
|--------------|-----------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| S. Am-äbär,  | I was being loved     | P. Am-äbämür, | We were being loved    |
| Am-äbäris or | thou wast being loved | Am-äbämini,   | ye were being loved    |
| Am-äbäre,    |                       | Am-äbantür,   | they were being loved. |
| Am-äbätür,   | he was being loved.   |               |                        |

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|              |                    |               |                     |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| S. Am-äbör,  | I shall be loved   | P. Am-äbimür, | We shall be loved   |
| Am-äbäris or | thou wilt be loved | Am-äbimini,   | ye will be loved    |
| Am-äbäre,    |                    | Am-äbuntür,   | they will be loved. |
| Am-äbitür,   | he will be loved.  |               |                     |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                |                                     |                 |                                      |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. Am-ätüs sam | I have been loved,                  | P. Am-äti sümüs | We have been loved, or were loved    |
| or fui         | or was loved                        | or fuimüs,      |                                      |
| Am-ätüs es     | thou hast been loved, or wast loved | Am-äti estis    | ye have been loved, or were loved    |
| or fuisti,     |                                     | or fuistis,     |                                      |
| Am-ätüs est    | he has been loved, or was loved.    | Am-äti sunt,    | they have been loved, or were loved. |
| or fuit,       |                                     | fuérunt, or     |                                      |
|                |                                     | fuérö,          |                                      |

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                 |                       |                  |                      |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| S. Am-ätüs eram | I had been loved      | P. Am-äti eramüs | We had been loved    |
| or fuëram,      |                       | or fuëramüs,     |                      |
| Am-ätüs eräs    | thou hadst been loved | Am-äti erätis    | ye had been loved    |
| or fuëräs,      |                       | or fuërätis,     |                      |
| Am-ätüs erät    | he had been loved.    | Am-äti érant     | they had been loved. |
| or fuërät,      |                       | or fuërant,      |                      |

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                |                           |                  |                            |
|----------------|---------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| S. Am-ätüs éro | I shall have been loved   | P. Am-äti érimüs | We shall have been loved   |
| or fuëro,      |                           | or fuërimüs,     |                            |
| Am-ätüs éris   | thou wilt have been loved | Am-äti éritis    | ye will have been loved    |
| or fuëris,     |                           | or fuëritis,     |                            |
| Am-ätüs érit   | he will have been loved.  | Am-äti érant     | they will have been loved. |
| or fuërit,     |                           | or fuërant,      |                            |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

|                   |                       |                     |                     |
|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Am-ärē. | <i>Be thou loved.</i> | <b>P.</b> Am-āminī, | <i>Be ye loved.</i> |
|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|

## FUTURE TENSE.

|                    |                              |                     |                       |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Am-ätör, | <i>Thou shalt be loved</i>   | <b>P.</b> Am-antor, | <i>They shall be</i>  |
| Am-ätör,           | <i>he shall be loved, or</i> |                     | <i>loved, or let</i>  |
|                    | <i>let him be loved.</i>     |                     | <i>them be loved.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                  |                         |                    |                           |
|------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Am-ēr, | <i>I may be loved</i>   | <b>P.</b> Am-ēmūr, | <i>We may be loved</i>    |
| Am-ērīs or       | <i>thou mayst be</i>    | Am-ēmīnī,          | <i>ye may be loved</i>    |
| Am-ērē,          | <i>loved</i>            | Am-entūr,          | <i>they may be loved.</i> |
| Am-ētūr,         | <i>he may be loved.</i> |                    |                           |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                    |                           |                      |                             |
|--------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Am-ärēr, | <i>I might be loved</i>   | <b>P.</b> Am-ärēmūr, | <i>We might be loved</i>    |
| Am-ärērīs or       | <i>thou mightst be</i>    | Am-ärēmīnī,          | <i>ye might be loved</i>    |
| Am-ärērē,          | <i>loved</i>              | Am-ärentūr,          | <i>they might be loved.</i> |
| Am-ärētūr,         | <i>he might be loved.</i> |                      |                             |

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

|                       |                         |                        |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Am-ätīs aīm | <i>I may have been</i>  | <b>P.</b> Am-āti aīmūs | <i>We may have</i>      |
| or fuērīm,            | <i>loved</i>            | or fuērīmūs,           | <i>been loved</i>       |
| Am-ätīs ais           | <i>thou mayst have</i>  | Am-āti sitīs           | <i>ye may have been</i> |
| or fuērīs,            | <i>been loved</i>       | or fuērītīs,           | <i>loved</i>            |
| Am-ätīs aīt           | <i>he may have been</i> | Am-āti sint            | <i>they may have</i>    |
| or fuērīt,            | <i>loved.</i>           | or fuērīnt,            | <i>been loved</i>       |

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                         |                          |                          |                        |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> Am-ätīs essem | <i>I might have been</i> | <b>P.</b> Am-āti essēmūs | <i>We might have</i>   |
| or fuissēm,             | <i>loved</i>             | or fuissēmūs,            | <i>been loved</i>      |
| Am-ätīs essēs           | <i>thou mightst have</i> | Am-āti essētīs,          | <i>ye might have</i>   |
| or fuissēs,             | <i>been loved</i>        | or fuissētīs,            | <i>been loved</i>      |
| Am-ätīs essēt           | <i>he might have</i>     | Am-āti essent            | <i>they might have</i> |
| or fuissēt,             | <i>been loved.</i>       | or fuissent,             | <i>been loved.</i>     |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                                                 |                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>IMPERFECT.</b> Am-ārī,                       | <i>to be loved.</i>             |
| <b>PERFECT.</b> Am-ätus (a, um) essē or fuissē, | <i>to have been loved.</i>      |
| <b>FUTURE.</b> Am-ätum irī,                     | <i>to be about to be loved.</i> |

*Obs.* The form *ämätum* in the Future-Infinitive is the Supine; and consequently the same for all genders. The word *irī* is the Imperfect Infinitive Passive of the Verb *eo*, *I go*.

## PARTICIPLES.

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>PERFECT.</b> Am-ätīs (a, um),    | <i>loved or having been loved.</i> |
| <b>GERUNDIVE.</b> Am-andūs (a, um), | <i>fit to be loved.</i>            |

AM. L. G.

E

## § 96. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mönëör, mönitüs sam or fuī, mönëri,—to be advised. Stem: möne-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|             |                         |              |                          |
|-------------|-------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| S. Mön-eör, | <i>I am advised</i>     | P. Mön-ëmür, | <i>We are advised</i>    |
| Mön-ëris or | <i>thou art advised</i> | Mön-ëmīni,   | <i>ye are advised</i>    |
| mön-ërë,    |                         | Mön-ëntür,   | <i>they are advised.</i> |
| Mön-ëtür,   | <i>he is advised.</i>   |              |                          |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|               |                                |                |                                 |
|---------------|--------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| S. Mön-ëbär,  | <i>I was being advised</i>     | P. Mön-ëbämür, | <i>We were being advised</i>    |
| Mön-ëbäris or | <i>thou wast being advised</i> | Mön-ëbämīni,   | <i>ye were being advised</i>    |
| mön-ëbärë,    |                                | Mön-ëbantür,   | <i>they were being advised.</i> |
| Mön-ëbätür,   | <i>he was being advised.</i>   |                |                                 |

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|               |                             |                |                              |
|---------------|-----------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| S. Mön-ëbör,  | <i>I shall be advised</i>   | P. Mön-ëbīmür, | <i>We shall be advised</i>   |
| Mön-ëbäris or | <i>thou wilt be advised</i> | Mön-ëbīmīni,   | <i>ye will be advised</i>    |
| Mön-ëbërë,    |                             | Mön-ëbuntür,   | <i>they will be advised.</i> |
| Mön-ëbütür,   | <i>he will be advised.</i>  |                |                              |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                         |                                                |                                  |                                                 |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| S. Mön-ītüs sam or fuī, | <i>I have been advised, or was advised</i>     | P. Mön-īti sümüs or fuīmüs,      | <i>We have been advised, or were advised</i>    |
| Mön-ītüs ës or fuistī,  | <i>thou hast been advised, or wast advised</i> | Mön-īti estüs or fuistīs,        | <i>ye have been advised, or were advised</i>    |
| Mön-ītüs est or fuīt,   | <i>he has been advised, or was advised.</i>    | Mön-īti sunt, fuërunt, or fuërë, | <i>they have been advised, or were advised.</i> |

## 5. PAST-1'PERFECT TENSE.

|                             |                                |                              |                               |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S. Mön-ītüs eram or fuëram, | <i>I had been advised</i>      | P. Mön-īti ëräms or fuëräms, | <i>We had been advised</i>    |
| Mön-ītüs ërás or fuëräs,    | <i>thou hadst been advised</i> | Mön-īti ërätis or fuërätis,  | <i>ye had been advised</i>    |
| Mön-ītüs ërät or fuërät,    | <i>he had been advised.</i>    | Mön-īti ërant, or fuërant,   | <i>they had been advised.</i> |

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                           |                                    |                                |                                     |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S. Mön-ītüs ëre or fuëre, | <i>I shall have been advised</i>   | P. Mön-īti ërimüs or fuërimüs, | <i>We shall have been advised</i>   |
| Mön-ītüs ëris or fuëris,  | <i>thou wilt have been advised</i> | Mön-īti ëritis or fuëritis,    | <i>ye will have been advised</i>    |
| Mön-ītüs ërit or fuërit,  | <i>he will have been advised.</i>  | Mön-īti ërint, or fuërint,     | <i>they will have been advised.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ärë, Be thou advised. | P. Mön-ämīnī, Be ye advised.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Mön-ëtör, Thou shalt be advised | P. Mön-entör, They shall be advised, or let them be advised.*  
*Mön-ëtör, he shall be advised, or let him be advised.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Mön-äär, { I may be advised  
 Mön-äärīs or { thou mayst be advised  
 mön-äärē, {  
 Mön-äätür, { he may be advised.* | *P. Mön-eämür, { We may be advised  
 Mön-eämīnī, { ye may be advised  
 Mön-eantür, { they may be advised.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ärër, { I might be advised  
 Mön-ärërīs or { thou mightst be advised  
 mön-ärërē, {  
 Mön-ärëtür, { he might be advised.* | *P. Mön-ärëmür, { We might be advised  
 Mön-ärēmīnī, { ye might be advised  
 Mön-ärentür, { they might be advised.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-itäts sim { I may have been advised  
 or fuërim, {  
 Mön-itäts sīs { thou mayst have been advised  
 or fuëris, {  
 Mön-itäts sīt { he may have been advised.* | *P. Mön-iti simūs { We may have been advised  
 or fuërimūs, {  
 Mön-iti sitīs { ye may have been advised  
 or fuëritīs, {  
 Mön-iti sint { they may have been advised.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-itäts essem { I might have been advised  
 or fuissēm, {  
 Mön-itäts essēs { thou mightst have been advised  
 or fuissēs, {  
 Mön-itäts essēt { he might have been advised.* | *P. Mön-iti essēmūs { We might have been advised  
 or fuissēmūs, {  
 Mön-iti essētīs { ye might have been advised  
 or fuissētīs, {  
 Mön-iti essent { they might have been advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*IMPERFECT. Mön-ērī, to be advised.*  
*PERFECT. Mön-itäts (a, um), essē or fuissē, to have been advised.*  
*FUTURE. Mön-itum irī, to be about to be advised*

## PARTICIPLES.

*PERFECT. Mön-itäts (a, um), advised or having been advised.*  
*GERUNDIVE. Mön-entūs (a, um), fit to be advised.*

## \* 97. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgūr, rectus sum or fui, rēgi,—to be ruled. Stem: rēg-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|                                                 |    |                                              |                                          |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| S. Rēg-ūr,<br>Rēg-ēris<br>rēg-ērē,<br>Rēg-ītūr, | or | I am ruled<br>thou art ruled<br>he is ruled. | P. Rēg-īmūr,<br>Rēg-īmīni,<br>Rēg-untūr, | We are ruled<br>ye are ruled<br>they are ruled. |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                                                         |    |                                                                   |                                                |                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Rēg-ēbār,<br>Rēg-ēbāris<br>rēg-ēbārē,<br>Rēg-ēbātūr, | or | I was being ruled<br>thou wast being ruled<br>he was being ruled. | P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,<br>Rēg-ēbāmīni,<br>Rēg-ēbantūr, | We were being ruled<br>ye were being ruled<br>they were being ruled. |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|                                                 |    |                                                             |                                          |                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Rēg-ār,<br>Rēg-ēris<br>rēg-ērē,<br>Rēg-ētūr, | or | I shall be ruled<br>thou wilt be ruled<br>he will be ruled. | P. Rēg-ēmūr,<br>Rēg-ēmīni,<br>Rēg-entūr, | We shall be ruled<br>ye will be ruled<br>they will be ruled. |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                                           |    |                                                                                                            |                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Rec-tūs sum<br>or fui,<br>Rec-tūs ēs<br>fuisti,<br>Rectūs est<br>fuit, | or | I have been ruled, or was ruled<br>thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled<br>he has been ruled, or was ruled. | P. Rec-ti sūmūs<br>or fuimūs,<br>Rec-ti estis<br>or fuistis,<br>Rec-ti sunt,<br>fuērunt, or<br>fuērē, | We have been ruled, or were ruled<br>ye have been ruled, or were ruled<br>they have been ruled, or were ruled. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                                                           |    |                                                                 |                                                                                                  |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Rec-tūs ēram<br>or fuēram,<br>Rec-tūs ērās<br>or fuērās,<br>Rec-tūs ērāt<br>or fuērāt, | or | I had been ruled<br>thou hadst been ruled<br>he had been ruled. | P. Rec-ti ērāmūs<br>or fuērāmūs,<br>Rec-ti ērātis<br>or fuērātis,<br>Rec-ti ērant<br>or fuērant, | We had been ruled<br>ye had been ruled<br>they had been ruled. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                                                                                         |    |                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Rec-tūs ēro<br>or fuēro,<br>Rec-tūs ēris<br>or fuēris,<br>Rec-tūs ērit<br>or fuērīt, | or | I shall have been ruled<br>thou wilt have been ruled<br>he will have been ruled. | P. Rec-ti ērimūs<br>or fuērimūs,<br>Rec-ti ēritis<br>or fuēritis,<br>Rec-ti ērint<br>or fuērīnt, | We shall have been ruled<br>ye will have been ruled<br>they will have been ruled. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



## § 98. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audīr, audītus sum or fui, audiri,—to be heard. Stem: audi-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

|             |                  |              |                 |
|-------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| S. Aud-īr,  | I am heard       | P. Aud-īmūr, | We are heard    |
| Aud-īris or | } thou art heard | Aud-īmīni,   | ye are heard    |
| aud-irē,    |                  | Aud-iuntūr,  | they are heard. |
| Aud-itūr,   | he is heard.     |              |                 |

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

|                |                         |                 |                       |
|----------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| S. Aud-iēbār,  | { I was being heard     | P. Aud-iēbāmūr, | { We were being heard |
| Aud-iēbāris or | } thou wast being heard | Aud-iēbāmīni,   | } ye were being heard |
| aud-iēbārē,    |                         | Aud-iēbantūr,   |                       |
| Aud-iēbātūr,   | { he was being heard.   |                 |                       |

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

|              |                      |               |                     |
|--------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| S. Aud-iār,  | I shall be heard     | P. Aud-iēmūr, | We shall be heard   |
| Aud-iēris or | } thou wilt be heard | Aud-iēmīni,   | ye will be heard    |
| aud-iārē,    |                      | Aud-ientūr,   | they will be heard. |
| Aud-iētūr,   | he will be heard.    |               |                     |

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

|                 |                                       |                    |                                        |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
| S. Aud-itūs sum | { I have been heard, or was heard     | P. Aud-iti sūmūs   | { We have been heard, or were heard    |
| or fui,         |                                       | or fuimūs,         |                                        |
| Aud-itūs es     | { thou hast been heard, or wast heard | Aud-iti estis      | { ye have been heard, or were heard    |
| or fuisti,      |                                       | or fuistis,        |                                        |
| Aud-itūs est    | { he has been heard, or was heard.    | Aud-iti sunt,      | { they have been heard, or were heard. |
| or fuit,        |                                       | fuērunt, or fuērē, |                                        |

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

|                  |                         |                   |                        |
|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| S. Aud-itūs eram | { I had been heard      | P. Aud-iti ērāmūs | { We had been heard    |
| or fuēram,       |                         | or fuērāmūs,      |                        |
| Aud-itūs erās    | { thou hadst been heard | Aud-iti ērātis    | { ye had been heard    |
| or fuērās,       |                         | or fuērātis,      |                        |
| Aud-itūs erāt    | { he had been heard.    | Aud-iti ērant     | { they had been heard. |
| or fuērāt,       |                         | or fuērant,       |                        |

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

|                 |                             |                   |                              |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| S. Aud-itūs ero | { I shall have been heard   | P. Aud-iti ērimūs | { We shall have been heard   |
| or fuēro,       |                             | or fuērimūs,      |                              |
| Aud-itūs eris   | { thou wilt have been heard | Aud-iti ēritis    | { ye will have been heard    |
| or fuēris,      |                             | or fuēritis,      |                              |
| Aud-itūs erit   | { he will have been heard.  | Aud-iti erunt     | { they will have been heard. |
| or fuērit,      |                             | or fuērint,       |                              |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Aud-irē,* *Be thou heard.* | *P. Aud-imīni,* *Be ye heard.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Aud-itōr,* *Thou shalt be heard* | *P. Aud-iuntōr,* *They shall be heard,*  
*Aud-itōr,* *he shall be heard, or* *or let them be*  
*let him be heard.* *heard.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Aud-iā,* *I may be heard* | *P. Aud-iāmūr,* *We may be heard*  
*Aud-iāris* or *thou mayst be* *Aud-iāminī,* *ye may be heard*  
*aud-iārē,* *heard* *Aud-iantūr,* *they may be heard.*  
*Aud-iātūr,* *he may be heard.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Aud-irēr,* *I might be heard* | *P. Aud-irēmūr,* *We might be heard*  
*Aud-irēris* or *thou mightst be* *Aud-irēmīni,* *ye might be heard*  
*aud-irērē,* *heard* *Aud-irentūr,* *they might be heard.*  
*Aud-irētūr,* *he might be heard.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Aud-itūs sim* } *I may have been* | *P. Aud-iti simūs* } *We may have*  
*or fuērīm,* } *heard* *or fuērīmūs,* } *been heard*  
*Aud-itūs sis* } *thou mayst have* *Aud-iti sitīs* } *ye may have been*  
*or fuēris,* } *been heard* *or fuēritīs,* } *heard*  
*Aud-itūs sit* } *he may have been* *Aud-iti sint* } *they may have*  
*or fuērit,* } *heard.* *or fuērint,* } *been heard.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Aud-itūs essem* } *I might have been* | *P. Aud-iti essēmūs* } *We might have*  
*or fuissem,* } *heard* *or fuissēmūs,* } *been heard*  
*Aud-itūs essēs* } *thou mightst have* *Aud-iti essētīs* } *ye might have*  
*or fuissēs,* } *been heard* *or fuissētīs,* } *been heard*  
*Aud-itūs essēt* } *he might have* *Aud-iti essent* } *they might have*  
*or fuissēt,* } *been heard.* *or fuissent,* } *been heard.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

**IMPERFECT.** *Aud-iri,* *to be heard.*  
**PERFECT.** *Aud-itus (a, um) essē* or *fuissē,* *to have been heard.*  
**FUTURE.** *Aud-itum iri,* *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

**PERFECT.** *Aud-itūs (a, um),* *heard or having been heard*  
**GERUNDIVE.** *Aud-iendūs (a, um),* *fit to be heard.*



## § 99. EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Examples for Conjugation like *amo*. (See also § 149.)

|                                  |                                    |                                 |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>accūso</i> , <i>I accuse.</i> | <i>hōnōro</i> , <i>I honour.</i>   | <i>opto</i> , <i>I wish.</i>    |
| <i>āro</i> , <i>I plough.</i>    | <i>laudo</i> , <i>I praise.</i>    | <i>orno</i> , <i>I adorn.</i>   |
| <i>clāno</i> , <i>I cry out.</i> | <i>libēro</i> , <i>I set free.</i> | <i>pāro</i> , <i>I prepare.</i> |
| <i>hābīto</i> , <i>I dwell.</i>  | <i>nōmīno</i> , <i>I name.</i>     | <i>rōgo</i> , <i>I ask.</i>     |

Examples for Conjugation like *moneo*. (See also § 150.)

|                                     |                                  |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>adhībeo</i> , <i>I apply.</i>    | <i>hābeo</i> , <i>I have.</i>    | <i>plāceo</i> , <i>I please.</i>    |
| <i>cōhībeo</i> , <i>I restrain.</i> | <i>mōreo</i> , <i>I deserve.</i> | <i>praebeo</i> , <i>I present.</i>  |
| <i>dēbeo</i> , <i>I owe.</i>        | <i>nūceo</i> , <i>I injure.</i>  | <i>prōhībeo</i> , <i>I prevent.</i> |
| <i>exerceo</i> , <i>I exercise.</i> | <i>pāreo</i> , <i>I obey.</i>    | <i>terreo</i> , <i>I frighten.</i>  |

Examples for Conjugation like *rego*. (See also §§ 157, seq.)

|                               |                               |                                |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>cingo</i> , <i>I gird.</i> | <i>dūco</i> , <i>I lead.</i>  | <i>plango</i> , <i>I beat.</i> | <i>tēgo</i> , <i>I cover.</i> |
| <i>dico</i> , <i>I say.</i>   | <i>jungo</i> , <i>I join.</i> | <i>sūgo</i> , <i>I suck.</i>   | <i>tingo</i> , <i>I dye.</i>  |

*Obs.* *Dico*, *speak*, *dūco*, *lead*, *have dīc, dūc*, in the Singular Imperative Present Active. See § 106, *Obs.* (p. 62).

Examples for Conjugation like *audio*. (See also § 168.)

|                                   |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>custōdio</i> , <i>I guard.</i> | <i>finio</i> , <i>I end.</i>      | <i>mūnio</i> , <i>I fortify.</i>  |
| <i>dormio</i> , <i>I sleep.</i>   | <i>impēdio</i> , <i>I hinder.</i> | <i>nūtrio</i> , <i>I nourish.</i> |
| <i>trūdio</i> , <i>I train.</i>   | <i>mollio</i> , <i>I soften.</i>  | <i>pūnio</i> , <i>I punish.</i>   |

## § 100. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I (in the Imperfect Tense)

*Cāpio, cēpi, captum, cāpēre*, —to take. Stem: *cāpi-*, *cāp-*

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                     |                                         |                                     |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>     | <i>Cāp-io</i> , <i>I take</i>           | <i>Cāp-imūs</i> , <i>We take</i>    |
|                     | <i>Cāp-is</i> , <i>thou takest</i>      | <i>Cāp-itis</i> , <i>ye take</i>    |
|                     | <i>Cāp-it</i> , <i>he takes.</i>        | <i>Cāp-iunt</i> , <i>they take.</i> |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i> | <i>Cāp-iēbam</i> , <i>I was taking,</i> | like <i>aud-iēbam.</i>              |
| <i>Future.</i>      | <i>Cāp-iam</i> , <i>I shall take,</i>   | „ <i>aud-iam.</i>                   |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|                     |                                        |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>     | <i>Cāp-iam</i> , <i>I may take,</i>    | like <i>aud-iam.</i> |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i> | <i>Cāp-ērem</i> , <i>I might take,</i> | „ <i>rēg-ērem.</i>   |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                 |                                            |                     |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Cāp-ē</i> , <i>take thou,</i>           | like <i>rēg-ē.</i>  |
| <i>Future.</i>  | <i>Cāp-ito</i> , <i>thou shalt take,</i>   | „ <i>rēg-ito.</i>   |
|                 | <i>Cāp-iunto</i> , <i>they shall take,</i> | „ <i>aud-iunto.</i> |

| INFINITIVE MOOD.  |                   |                   |             |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Căp-ěřě,</i>   | <i>to take,</i>   | <i>like</i> | <i>rěg-ěřě.</i>   |
| PARTICIPLE.       |                   |                   |             |                   |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Căp-iens,</i>  | <i>taking,</i>    | <i>like</i> | <i>aud-iens.</i>  |
| GERUND.           |                   |                   |             |                   |
|                   | <i>Căp-iendi,</i> | <i>of taking,</i> | <i>like</i> | <i>aud-iendi.</i> |

## H. PASSIVE VOICE.

| INDICATIVE MOOD.    |                    |                             |                    |                        |
|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>     | <i>Căp-ĭōr,</i>    | <i>I am taken</i>           | <i>Căp-ĭmūr,</i>   | <i>We are taken</i>    |
|                     | <i>Căp-ěřis</i>    | <i>thou art</i>             | <i>Căp-ĭmīnī,</i>  | <i>ye are taken</i>    |
|                     | or <i>-ěřě,</i>    | <i>taken</i>                |                    |                        |
|                     | <i>Căpītūr,</i>    | <i>he is taken.</i>         | <i>Căp-iuntūr,</i> | <i>they are taken.</i> |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i> | <i>Căp iēbār,</i>  | <i>I was being taken,</i>   | <i>like</i>        | <i>aud-iēbār.</i>      |
| <i>Future.</i>      | <i>Căp-iār,</i>    | <i>I shall be taken,</i>    | <i>„</i>           | <i>aud-iār.</i>        |
| SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.   |                    |                             |                    |                        |
| <i>Present.</i>     | <i>Căp-iār,</i>    | <i>I may be taken,</i>      | <i>like</i>        | <i>aud-iār</i>         |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i> | <i>Căp-ěřēr,</i>   | <i>I might be taken,</i>    | <i>„</i>           | <i>rěg-ěřēr.</i>       |
| IMPERATIVE MOOD.    |                    |                             |                    |                        |
| <i>Present.</i>     | <i>Căp-ěřě,</i>    | <i>be thou taken</i>        | <i>like</i>        | <i>rěg-ěřě.</i>        |
| <i>Future.</i>      | <i>Căp-ĭtōr,</i>   | <i>thou shalt be taken,</i> | <i>„</i>           | <i>rěg-ĭtōr.</i>       |
|                     | <i>Căp-iuntōr,</i> | <i>they shall be taken,</i> | <i>„</i>           | <i>aud-iuntōr.</i>     |
| INFINITIVE MOOD.    |                    |                             |                    |                        |
| <i>Imperfect.</i>   | <i>Căp-I,</i>      | <i>to be taken,</i>         | <i>„</i>           | <i>rěg-I.</i>          |

*Obs. 1.* The Tenses derived from the Perfect and Supine are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: *cēp-I, cēp-eram, cēp-ero, &c.; capturus sim, captus sum, &c.*

*Obs. 2.* The *ĭ* in the Imperf. Tenses is dropped before *ĭ* and *er*. In the Imperative the final *ĭ* is changed into *e*.

*Obs. 3.* The Verbs conjugated like *căpio* are :

|                |                |                 |                 |                                             |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>făcio,</i>  | <i>fēcī,</i>   | <i>factum,</i>  | <i>ficcěřě,</i> | <i>make.</i>                                |
| <i>jăcio,</i>  | <i>jēcī,</i>   | <i>jactum,</i>  | <i>jăccěřě,</i> | <i>throw.</i>                               |
| <i>fŭgio,</i>  | <i>fŭgī,</i>   | <i>fŭgĭtum,</i> | <i>fŭgěřě,</i>  | <i>flee.</i>                                |
| <i>fōdio,</i>  | <i>fōdī,</i>   | <i>fossum,</i>  | <i>fōděřě,</i>  | <i>dig.</i>                                 |
| <i>răpio,</i>  | <i>răpŭl,</i>  | <i>raptum,</i>  | <i>răpěřě,</i>  | <i>seize.</i>                               |
| <i>părio,</i>  | <i>păpěrī,</i> | <i>partum,</i>  | <i>părcěřě,</i> | <i>bring forth.</i>                         |
| <i>quătio,</i> | (no perfect),  | <i>quassum,</i> | <i>quătěřě,</i> | <i>shake.</i>                               |
| <i>cŭpio,</i>  | <i>cŭpivī,</i> | <i>cŭptum,</i>  | <i>cŭpěřě,</i>  | <i>desire.</i>                              |
| <i>săpio,</i>  | <i>săpivī,</i> |                 | <i>săpěřě,</i>  | <i>taste.</i>                               |
| <i>lăcio,</i>  |                |                 | <i>lăccěřě,</i> | <i>draw</i>                                 |
| <i>spēcio,</i> |                |                 | <i>spēcěřě</i>  | <i>look. }</i> rare, except in composition. |

Also the Deponent Verbs :

|                 |                     |               |                |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>grădiōr,</i> | <i>gressus sum,</i> | <i>grădī,</i> | <i>walk.</i>   |
| <i>mōriōr,</i>  | <i>mortuus sum,</i> | <i>mōrī,</i>  | <i>die.</i>    |
| <i>pătīōr,</i>  | <i>passus sum,</i>  | <i>pătī,</i>  | <i>suffer.</i> |

*Obs. 4.* *Orior, ortus sum, ōriri, to rise,* follows the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive Mood, *ōriri*, Imperf. Subj. *ōrīrer*, less frequently *ōrērer*, Future Part. *ōritūrus*. So also, *mōritūrus*, from *mōriōr*.

- § 101. I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, to exhort, like ämör  
 II. Vêreör, vëritüs sum, vëräri, to fear, „ moneör.

| INDICATIVE MOOD.  | I.                   |                                       |                                       | II.                                   |                                   |                           |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
|                   | Present.             | Hortör,<br>Hort-ärüs<br>(ärë),<br>&c. | I exhort.<br>} thou exhortest,<br>&c. | Vër-eör,<br>Vër-erüs<br>(erë),<br>&c. | I fear.<br>} thou fearest,<br>&c. |                           |
| Past-Imp.         | Hort-äbär,           | I was exhorting.                      |                                       | Vër-ëbär,                             | I was fearing.                    |                           |
| Future.           | Hort-äbör,           | I shall exhort.                       |                                       | Vër-ëbör,                             | I shall fear.                     |                           |
| Perfect.          | Hort-ätüs<br>sum,    | I have exhorted,<br>or I exhorted.    |                                       | Vër-itüs<br>sum,                      | I have feared,<br>or I feared.    |                           |
| Past-Perf.        | Hort-ätüs<br>ëram,   | I had exhorted.                       |                                       | Vër-itüs<br>ëram,                     | I had feared.                     |                           |
| Fut.-Perf.        | Hort-ätüs<br>ëro,    | I shall have exhorted.                |                                       | Vër-itüs<br>ëro,                      | I shall have feared.              |                           |
| SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. | I.                   |                                       |                                       | II.                                   |                                   |                           |
|                   | Present.             | Hort-ër,                              | I may exhort.                         | Vër-ëär,                              | I may fear.                       |                           |
| Past-Imp.         | Hort-ärër,           | I might exhort.                       |                                       | Vër-ërër,                             | I might fear.                     |                           |
| Perfect.          | Hort-ätüs<br>sim,    | I may have exhorted.                  |                                       | Vër-itüs<br>sim,                      | I may have feared.                |                           |
| Past-Perf.        | Hort-ätüs<br>ëessem, | I might have exhorted.                |                                       | Vër-itüs<br>ëessem,                   | I might have feared.              |                           |
| IMPERATIVE.       | I.                   |                                       |                                       | II.                                   |                                   |                           |
|                   | Present.             | Hort-ärë,                             | Exhort thou.                          | Vër-ërë,                              | Fear thou.                        |                           |
| Future.           | Hort-ätör,           | { thou shalt exhort.                  |                                       | Vër-ëtör,                             | thou shalt fear.                  |                           |
| INFINITIVE.       | I.                   |                                       |                                       | II.                                   |                                   |                           |
|                   | Imperf.              | Hort-äri,                             | to exhort.                            | Vër-ëri,                              | to fear.                          |                           |
| Perfect.          | Hort-ätüs<br>essë,   | { to have exhorted.                   |                                       | Vër-itüs<br>essë,                     | { to have feared.                 |                           |
| Future.           | Hort-ätürüs<br>essë, | { to be about to exhort.              |                                       | Vër-itürüs<br>essë,                   | { to be about to fear.            |                           |
| PARTICIPLES.      | I.                   |                                       |                                       | II.                                   |                                   |                           |
|                   | Imperf.              | Hort-ans,                             | exhorting.                            | Vër-ëns,                              | fearing.                          |                           |
| Future.           | Hort-ätürüs,         | about to exhort.                      |                                       | Vër-itürüs,                           | about to fear.                    |                           |
| Perfect.          | Hort-ätüs,           | having exhorted.                      |                                       | Vër-itüs,                             | having feared.                    |                           |
| Gerundive.        | Hort-andüs,          | { fit to be exhorted.                 |                                       | Vër-endüs,                            | fit to be feared.                 |                           |
| SUPINES.          |                      |                                       | Hort-ätüm,<br>Hort-ätü,               | to exhort.<br>to be exhorted.         | Vër-itüm,<br>Vër-itü,             | to fear.<br>to be feared. |
| GERUND.           |                      |                                       | Hort-andi,                            | of exhorting.                         | Vër-endi,                         | of fearing.               |

## Examples for Conjugation.

I. Cönör, I endeavour.  
 Consölör, I console.  
 Mirör, I wonder.

II. Intueör, I behold.  
 Mëreör, I deserve.  
 Polliceör, I promise.

Ots. 1. Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle with an active meaning: as, hortätüs, having exhorted.

The Gerundive and Perfect Participle (the latter only in certain verbs), are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning: as, hortandüs, fit to be exhorted; adeptus, having obtained, or having been obtained. The following are the principal Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs used in a Passive sense: abominätüs, adeptus auspiciätüs, amplexus, complexus, com-

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, to speak, like rēgōr.

IV. Partīōr, partītūs sum, partīri, to divide, „ audīōr.

| III.       |                                        |                                      | IV.                                    |                                          |  | INDICATIVE MOOD.   |
|------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--|--------------------|
| Present.   | Lōquōr,<br>Lōqu-ēris,<br>(ērē),<br>&c. | I speak.<br>} thou speakest,<br>&c.  | Partīōr,<br>Part-īris<br>(irē),<br>&c. | I divide.<br>} thou dividest,<br>&c.     |  |                    |
| Past-Imp.  | Lōqu-ēbār,                             | I was speaking.                      | Part-īēbār,                            | I was dividing.                          |  | SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.  |
| Future.    | Lōqu-ār,                               | I shall speak.                       | Part-īār,                              | I shall divide.                          |  |                    |
| Perfect.   | Lōcū-tūs<br>sum,                       | I have spoken,<br>or I spoke.        | Part-ītūs<br>sum,                      | I have divided,<br>or I divided.         |  |                    |
| Past-Perf. | Lōcū-tūs<br>ēram,                      | I had spoken.                        | Part-ītūs<br>ēram,                     | I had divided.                           |  |                    |
| Fut.-Perf. | Lōcū-tūs<br>ēro,                       | I shall have<br>spoken.              | Part-ītūs<br>ēro,                      | I shall have di-<br>vided.               |  |                    |
| Present.   | Lōqu-ār,                               | I may speak.                         | Part-īār,                              | I may divide.                            |  | IMPERFECTIVE MOOD. |
| Past-Imp.  | Lōqu-ērēr,                             | I might speak.                       | Part-īrēr,                             | I might divide.                          |  |                    |
| Perfect.   | Lōcū-tūs<br>sim,                       | I may have<br>spoken.                | Part-ītūs<br>sim,                      | I may have di-<br>vided.                 |  |                    |
| Past-Perf. | Lōcū-tūs<br>essem,                     | I might have<br>spoken.              | Part-ītūs<br>essem,                    | I might have<br>divided.                 |  |                    |
| Present.   | Lōqu-ērē,                              | Speak thou.<br>(thou shalt<br>speak. | Part-irē,                              | Divide thou.<br>(thou shalt di-<br>vide. |  | IMPERFECTIVE MOOD. |
| Future.    | Lōqu-ītōr,                             |                                      | Part-ītōr,                             |                                          |  |                    |
| Imperf.    | Lōqu-i,                                | to speak.                            | Part-iri,                              | to divide.                               |  | IMPERFECTIVE MOOD. |
| Perfect.   | Lōcū-tus<br>essē,                      | to have spoken.                      | Part-itus<br>essē,                     | to have divided.                         |  |                    |
| Future.    | Lōcū-tūrus<br>essē,                    | to be about to<br>speak.             | Part-ītūrus<br>essē,                   | to be about to<br>divide.                |  | IMPERFECTIVE MOOD. |
| Imperf.    | Lōqu-ens,                              | speaking.                            | Part-iens,                             | dividing.                                |  |                    |
| Future.    | Lōcū-tūrus                             | about to speak.                      | Part-ītūrus,                           | about to divide.                         |  | IMPERFECTIVE MOOD. |
| Perfect.   | Lōcū-tūs,                              | having spoken.                       | Part-ītūs,                             | having divided.                          |  |                    |
| Gerundive. | Lōqu-endūs,                            | fit to be spoken.                    | Part-iendūs,                           | fit to be divided.                       |  | IMPERFECTIVE MOOD. |
| SUPINES.   | Lōcū-tum,                              | to speak.                            | Part-itum,                             | to divide.                               |  |                    |
|            | Lōcū-tū,                               | to be spoken.                        | Part-ītū,                              | to be divided.                           |  | IMPERFECTIVE MOOD. |
| GERUND.    | Lōqu-endi,                             | of speaking.                         | Part-iendi,                            | of dividing.                             |  |                    |

Examples for Conjugation.

|                          |            |               |               |
|--------------------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
| III. Fruōr, frūitūs sum, | I enjoy.   | IV. Blandīōr, | I flatter.    |
| Fungōr, functūs sum,     | I perform. | Largīōr,      | I give money. |
| Lābōr, lapsūs sum,       | I slip.    | Mentīōr,      | I lie.        |

mentus, confessus, dētestātus, ēmentitus, expertus, exsecrātus, mēditātus, mensus, mōdērātus, opinātus, pactus, partītus, testātus, ultus. See §§ 169-172.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

Obs. 3. The four following Verbs have a Passive form with an Active meaning in the Perfect Tenses only, and are therefore called *Semi-Deponents*, or *Neuter-Passives*:

|                          |                   |                             |             |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| Scīō, scītūs sum, scīrē, | to be accustomed. | Gaudeo, gāvītus sum, gaudē, | to rejoice. |
| Audeo, ausūs sum, audē,  | to dare.          | Fido, fidūs sum, fidē,      | to trust.   |

## CHAPTER XVII.—PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 102. I. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Future Participle in *urus* with the Verb *sum*, and expresses intention or futurity.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                      |                         |                                          |
|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>      | <i>Amātūrus sum,</i>    | <i>I am about to love.</i>               |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i>  | <i>Amātūrus eram,</i>   | <i>I was about to love.</i>              |
| <i>Future.</i>       | <i>Amātūrus ero,</i>    | <i>I shall be about to love.</i>         |
| <i>Perfect.</i>      | <i>Amātūrus fui,</i>    | <i>I have been or was about to love.</i> |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i> | <i>Amātūrus fuëram,</i> | <i>I had been about to love.</i>         |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|                      |                          |                                         |
|----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>      | <i>Amātūrus sim,</i>     | <i>I may be about to love.</i>          |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i>  | <i>Amātūrus essem,</i>   | <i>I might be about to love.</i>        |
| <i>Perfect.</i>      | <i>Amātūrus fuërim,</i>  | <i>I may have been about to love.</i>   |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i> | <i>Amātūrus fuïssem,</i> | <i>I might have been about to love.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                   |                         |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Amātūrus essë,</i>   | <i>to be about to love.</i>        |
| <i>Perfect.</i>   | <i>Amātūrus fuissë,</i> | <i>to have been about to love.</i> |

II. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Gerundive with the Verb *sum*, and expresses that which is to be, should be, or ought to be done.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

|                      |                        |                                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>      | <i>Amandus sum,</i>    | <i>I am to be loved.</i>               |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i>  | <i>Amandus eram,</i>   | <i>I was to be loved.</i>              |
| <i>Future.</i>       | <i>Amandus ero,</i>    | <i>I shall be to be loved.</i>         |
| <i>Perfect.</i>      | <i>Amandus fui,</i>    | <i>I have been or was to be loved.</i> |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i> | <i>Amandus fuëram,</i> | <i>I had been to be loved.</i>         |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|                      |                         |                                       |
|----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>      | <i>Amandus sim,</i>     | <i>I may be to be loved.</i>          |
| <i>Past-Imperf.</i>  | <i>Amandus essem,</i>   | <i>I might be to be loved.</i>        |
| <i>Perfect.</i>      | <i>Amandus fuërim,</i>  | <i>I may have been to be loved.</i>   |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i> | <i>Amandus fuïssem,</i> | <i>I might have been to be loved.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                   |                        |                                      |
|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Amandus essë,</i>   | <i>to be fit to be loved.</i>        |
| <i>Perfect.</i>   | <i>Amandus fuissë,</i> | <i>to have been fit to be loved.</i> |

Obs. 1. This passive conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. In other verbs the impersonal form is used, and the agent is represented by the Dative: *as, mihi eundem est, I must go; oblitiscendum tibi injuriarum essë censeo, I am of opinion that you ought to forget your wrongs.*

Obs. 2. The translations above given are intended rather to represent the meaning of the separate words than the ordinary signification of the combinations, which will be fully explained in the Syntax.

### CHAPTER XVIII.—STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS.

§ 103. **STEMS.**—The *Stems* of Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *a*: as, *āma*, *love*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *e*: as, *mōne*, *advise*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in a consonant or *u*: as, *rēg*, *rule*; *mīnu*, *lessen*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *i*: as, *audi*, *hear*.

§ 104. **UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS.**—In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

#### III CONJUGATION.

|              |                    |                  |
|--------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | 1. <i>rēg-o</i>    | <i>mīnu-o</i>    |
|              | 2. <i>rēg-īs</i>   | <i>mīnu-īs</i>   |
|              | 3. <i>rēg-īt</i>   | <i>mīnu-īt</i>   |
| <i>Plur.</i> | 1. <i>rēg-īmūs</i> | <i>mīnu-īmūs</i> |
|              | 2. <i>rēg-ītīs</i> | <i>mīnu-ītīs</i> |
|              | 3. <i>rēg-unt</i>  | <i>mīnu-unt</i>  |

| I CONJUGATION. |                                    | II CONJUGATION.                   |  | IV CONJUGATION.                   |  |
|----------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>Sing.</i>   | 1. <i>āma-o</i> = <i>āmo</i>       | <i>mōne-o</i>                     |  | <i>audi-o</i>                     |  |
|                | 2. <i>āma-is</i> = <i>āmās</i>     | <i>mōne-is</i> = <i>mōnēs</i>     |  | <i>audi-īs</i> = <i>audīs</i>     |  |
|                | 3. <i>āma-īt</i> = <i>āmāt</i>     | <i>mōne-īt</i> = <i>mōnēt</i>     |  | <i>audi-īt</i> = <i>audīt</i>     |  |
| <i>Plur.</i>   | 1. <i>āma-īmūs</i> = <i>āmāmūs</i> | <i>mōne-īmūs</i> = <i>mōnēmūs</i> |  | <i>audi-īmūs</i> = <i>audīmūs</i> |  |
|                | 2. <i>āma-ītīs</i> = <i>āmātīs</i> | <i>mōne-ītīs</i> = <i>mōnētīs</i> |  | <i>audi-ītīs</i> = <i>audītīs</i> |  |
|                | 3. <i>āma-unt</i> = <i>āmant</i>   | <i>mōne-unt</i> = <i>mōnent</i>   |  | <i>audi-unt</i>                   |  |

§ 105. **PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.**—The Personal Terminations are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. The regular terminations in the Active Voice are in their simplest form:

|    | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |       | <i>Sing.</i>    | <i>Plur.</i>      |
|----|--------------|--------------|-------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. | -m           | -mus         | as in | <i>rēgēba-m</i> | <i>rēgēbā-mūs</i> |
| 2. | -s           | -tis         | "     | <i>rēgēba-s</i> | <i>rēgēbā-tīs</i> |
| 3. | -t           | -nt          | "     | <i>rēgēbā-t</i> | <i>rēgēbā-nt</i>  |

Or with a vowel prefixed :

|    | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |       | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
|----|--------------|--------------|-------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. | o-(m)        | ī-mūs        | as in | rēg-o        | rēg-ī-mūs    |
| 2. | ī-s          | ī-tīs        | „     | rēg-ī-s      | rēg-ī-tīs    |
| 3. | ī-t          | u-nt         | „     | rēg-ī-t      | rēg-u-nt.    |

§ 106. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSES.—1. *Present Tenses*.—The *Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the *Imperative* the *s*, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and *e* alone remains: as, rēg-ē, rēg-itē: in the contracted conjugations, āmā = āma-ē; mōnē = mōne-ē; audi = audi-ē.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *-a*: as, rēg-a-m, mōne-a-m, audi-a-m. In the 1st conjugation the *a* of the stem is contracted with the *a* of the tense suffix into *e*: as, āma-a-m = āme-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *ērē*: as, rēg-ērē: in the contracted conjugations, āmā-rē = āma-ērē; mōnē-re = mōne-ērē; audi-rē = audi-ērē. The *Participle* has the suffix *-ens* (stem *-ent*): as, rēg-ens, audi-ens: in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āma-ns = āma-ens; mōne-ns = mōne-ens.

*Obs.* The *e* of the *Imperative* is dropped in *dīe*, *speak*, from *dīeo*; *dūe*, *lead*, from *dūeo*; *fāe*, *make*, from *fācio*; *fēr*, *bring*, from *fēro*.

2. *Past-Imperfect Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *ēba*: as, rēg-ēba-m, audi-ēba-m; in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āmā-ba-m = āma-ēba-m; mōnē-ba-m = mōne-ēba-m. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *ēre*: as, rēg-ēre-m; in the contracted conjugations āmā-re-m = āma-ēre-m; mōnē-re-m = mōne-ēre-m; audi-re-m = audi-ēre-m.

3. *Future Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *b* in the 1st and 2nd conjugations: as, āmā-b-o; mōnē-b-o: and the tense suffix *a* or *e* in the 3rd and 4th conjugations, *a* being used in the first person, and *e* in all the other persons: as, rēg-a-m, rēg-ē-s, rēg-ē-t, &c.; audi-a-m, audi-ē-s, audi-ē-t, &c.

§ 107. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES. The Perfect Tenses are formed :

1. By adding *v* to the Stem; as, āma (āmo), āmā-v-ī; audi (audio), audi-v-ī. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding *u* to the Stem: as, mōnē (mōneo), mōn-u-ī. The

final vowel of the Stem is dropped. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the Second Conjugation.

*Obs.* 1. The terminations *y* and *u* are the same, and are derived from *fu-i*, the Perfect of the verb *to be*.

2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v*: *as*, *mīnu-o*, *mīnu-i*, *lessen*; *volv-o*, *volv-i*, *roll*; *vert-o*, *vert-i*, *turn*.

3. By adding *s* to the Stem: *as*, *rēg* (*rēgō*), *rexī* = *reg-s-i*.

*Obs.* The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

- (i) *cs*, *gs*, *qs*, *hs* are contracted into *x*: *as*, *dūco*, *duxi*, *lead*; *cōquo*, *cōxi*, *cook*; *trāho*, *traxi*, *drag*.
- (ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s*: *as*, *scribo*, *scripsi*, *write*; *nūbo*, *nupsi*, *marry* (of women).
- (iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s*: *as*, *mitto*, *misi*, *send*; *laedo*, *laesi*, *injure*.

4. By reduplication: *as*,

*tend* (*tendo*), *tē-tendī*, *stretch*.  
*cād* (*cādo*), *cē-cīdī*, *fall*.  
*morde* (*mordeo*), *mō-mordī*, *bite*.

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem: *as*,

*jāc* or *jāci* (*jācio*), *jēcī*, *throw*.  
*vēni* (*vēnio*), *vēnī*, *come*.  
*mōve* (*mōveo*), *mōvī*, *move*.

*Obs.* In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted: *as*, *tundo*, *tūtūdī*, *beat*, but *contundo*, *contūdī*, *beat small*, *bruise*; *pello*, *pēpūdī*, *drive*, but *compello*, *compūdī*, *drive together*.

1. *Present-Perfect* or *Aorist Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *is*; 2nd pers. *āmāv-is-tī*, *āmāv-is-tis*; 3rd pers. *āmāv-ēr-unt*; the *s* disappears in the other persons. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *eri*: *as*, *āmāv-ēri-m*. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *issē*: *as*, *āmāv-issē*.

2. *Past-Perfect Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *ēra*: *as*, *āmāv-ēra-m*. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *isse*: *as*, *āmāv-isse-m*.

3. The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix *ēr*: *as*, *āmāv-ēr-o*.

§ 108. The *Supine* is formed by adding *tum* and *tu* to the Stem: *as*,

- |                                        |                                        |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| I. <i>Āmā-tum</i> , <i>āmā-tū</i> .    | III. <i>Rec-tum</i> , <i>rec-tū</i> .  |
| II. <i>Mōnī-tum</i> , <i>mōnī-tu</i> . | IV. <i>Audī-tum</i> , <i>audī-tū</i> . |

*Obs.* 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

*Obs.* 2. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted:

- (i) *g*, *q*, *h* become *c* before *t*: *as*, *rēgo*, *rectum*; *cōquo*, *coctum*; *trāho*, *tractum*.
- (ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t*: *as*, *scribo*, *scriptum*; *nūbo*, *nuptum*.
- (iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s*: *as*, *laedo*, *laesum*, *injure*; *claudio*, *clausum*, *shut*. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s*: *as*, *cōdo*, *ces-sum*, *yield*; *mitto*, *mis-sum*, *send*.



§ 109. The *Future Participle* is formed by adding *tūrus* to the Stem : as,

āmā-tūrus; mōnī-tūrus; rec-tūrus; audi-tūrus.

Obs. 1. The same euphonic changes of letters occur in the Future Participle as in the Supine : as,

tractūrus, scriptūrus, laesūrus.

Obs. 2. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles do not adopt these variations : as,

|        | Stem.          | Supine.         | Fut. Part. |        |
|--------|----------------|-----------------|------------|--------|
| jūvo   | (jūva)         | jūtum           | jūvātūrus, | help.  |
| seco   | (seca)         | sectum          | secātūrus, | cut.   |
| sono   | (sona)         | sonitum         | sonātūrus, | sound. |
| mōriōr | (mōr and mōri) | mortuus (part.) | mōritūrus, | die.   |

### § 110. REMARKS UPON CERTAIN FORMS.

1. *Perfect Active*.—On the omission of *v*, *vi*, and *ve*, in the First and Fourth Conjugations see § 91 Obs., § 94 Obs.

The suffix *erunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is frequently shortened by the poets : as, *dedēerunt*, *they gave*. The suffix *ere* instead of *erunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers.

2. The Gerund and Gerundive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations sometimes end in *undum* and *undus* instead of *endum* and *endus* : as, *faciundum* from *facio*, *make* or *do*; *pōtiundum* from *pōtiōr*, *obtain possession of*.

3. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus*, with an intensive signification : as, *laetābundus*, *rejoicing greatly, full of joy*; *lacrimābundus*, *weeping profusely*; *fūribundus*, *full of rage*; *mōribundus*, *in the very article of death*.

### § 111. ANCIENT FORMS.

1. The ancient termination of the *Imperfect Infinitive Passive* was *ier* : as, *āmārīer* instead of *āmāri*; *rēgiēr*, instead of *rēgi*.

2. In the *Present Subjunctive Active* the old terminations were *im*, *is*, *it* : as, *sim*, *sis*, *sit* from *sum*; *vēlim* from *vōlo*, *be willing*; *nōlim* from *nōlo*, *be unwilling*; *mālim* from *mālo*, *be more willing*. Also *ēdim* instead of *ēdam* from *ēdo*, *eat*; and *duim* from *do*, *give*, and its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations : as, *dī duint*, *may the gods grant*; *dī tē perduint*, *may the gods destroy thee*.

3. The *Future-Perfect Indicative* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* had ancient terminations in *so* and *sim*, the terminations being originally *eso* and *esim*, instead of *ero* and *erim* : hence the forms *levasso*, *faxo*, *faxim*, are contractions of *lēvāveso*, *fācēso*, *fācēsīm*. In like manner *ausim* is formed from the old Perfect *ausi* (from *audeo*), which has become obsolete

## CHAPTER XIX.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 112. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already given (§ 90). The rest are here given :

## I. Possum, pōtūi, possē,—to be able.

| INDICATIVE.               |            | SUBJUNCTIVE. |  | INDICATIVE.               |                  | SUBJUNCTIVE. |  |
|---------------------------|------------|--------------|--|---------------------------|------------------|--------------|--|
| 1. <i>Present.</i>        |            |              |  | 4. <i>Perfect.</i>        |                  |              |  |
| S.                        | Pos-sum    | Pos-sim      |  | S.                        | Pöt-ui           | Pöt-nërim    |  |
|                           | Pöt-ës     | Pos-sis      |  |                           | Pöt-uistî        | Pöt-nëris    |  |
|                           | Pöt-est    | Pos-sit      |  |                           | Pöt-ult          | Pöt-nërit    |  |
| P.                        | Pos-sümûs  | Pos-simûs    |  | P.                        | Pöt-uimûs        | Pöt-nërimûs  |  |
|                           | Pöt-estis  | Pos-sitis    |  |                           | Pöt-uistis       | Pöt-nëritis  |  |
|                           | Pos-sunt   | Pos-sint     |  |                           | Pöt-nërant (ërë) | Pöt-nërin*   |  |
| 2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i> |            |              |  | 5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>   |                  |              |  |
| S.                        | Pöt-ëram   | Pos-sem      |  | S.                        | Pöt-nëram        | Pöt-nissem   |  |
|                           | Pöt-ëräs   | Pos-sës      |  |                           | Pöt-nëräs        | Pöt-nissës   |  |
|                           | Pöt-ërät   | Pos-sët      |  |                           | Pöt-nërät        | Pöt-nissët   |  |
| P.                        | Pöt-ërämûs | Pos-sëmûs    |  | P.                        | Pöt-nërämûs      | Pöt-nissëmûs |  |
|                           | Pöt-ërätis | Pos-sëtis    |  |                           | Pöt-nërätis      | Pöt-nissëtis |  |
|                           | Pöt-ërant  | Pos-sent     |  |                           | Pöt-nërant       | Pöt-nissent  |  |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>         |            |              |  | 6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i> |                  |              |  |
| S.                        | Pöt-ëro    |              |  | S.                        | Pöt-nëro         |              |  |
|                           | Pöt-ërïs   |              |  |                           | Pöt-nëris        |              |  |
|                           | Pöt-ërit   |              |  |                           | Pöt-nërit        |              |  |
| P.                        | Pöt-ërimûs |              |  | P.                        | Pöt-nërimûs      |              |  |
|                           | Pöt-ëritis |              |  |                           | Pöt-nëritis      |              |  |
|                           | Pöt-ërant  |              |  |                           | Pöt-nërint       |              |  |

## INFINITIVE.

*Imperfect*—Possē.    *Perfect*—Pōtuisse.    *Future*—wanting

The *Imperative*, *Gerund*, and *Supine* are wanting  
The *Imperfect Participle* pōtens is used only as an Adjective, *powerful*.

*Possum* is compounded of 'pot' (pōtis, *able*) and *sum*; hence *pos-sum* is a contraction of pōt-sum; *pos-sim* of pōt-sim; *pos-sem* of pōt-essem; pōt-ui of pot-ful; and *pos-sē* of pōt-esē.

- § 113. II. Völo, völuī, vellē, — *to be willing.*  
 III. Nölo, nöluī, nollē, — *to be unwilling.*  
 IV. Mälo, mäluī, mallē, — *to be more willing.*

## INDICATIVE.

1. *Present.*

|           |         |            |          |
|-----------|---------|------------|----------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völo    | Nölo       | Mälo     |
|           | Vīs     | Non vīs    | Māvīs    |
|           | Vult    | Non vult   | Māvult   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völümūs | Nölümūs    | Mälümūs  |
|           | Vultīs  | Non vultīs | Māvultīs |
|           | Völunt  | Nölunt     | Mälunt   |

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

|           |            |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völ-ēbam   | Nöl-ēbam   | Mäl-ēbam   |
|           | Völ-ēbās   | Nöl-ēbās   | Mäl-ēbās   |
|           | Völ-ēbāt   | Nöl-ēbāt   | Mäl-ēbāt   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-ēbāmūs | Nöl-ēbāmūs | Mäl-ēbāmūs |
|           | Völ-ēbātīs | Nöl-ēbātīs | Mäl-ēbātīs |
|           | Völ-ēbant  | Nöl-ēbant  | Mäl-ēbant  |

3. *Future.*

|           |          |          |          |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völ-am   | Nöl-am   | Mäl-am   |
|           | Völ-ēs   | Nöl-ēs   | Mäl-ēs   |
|           | Völ-ēt   | Nöl-ēt   | Mäl-ēt   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-ēmūs | Nöl-ēmūs | Mäl-ēmūs |
|           | Völ-ētīs | Nöl-ētīs | Mäl-ētīs |
|           | Völ-ent  | Nöl-ent  | Mäl-ent  |

4. *Perfect.*

|           |                     |                     |                     |
|-----------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völ-ūī              | Nöl-ūī              | Mäl-ūī              |
|           | Völ-ūistī           | Nöl-ūistī           | Mäl-ūistī           |
|           | Völ-ūit             | Nöl-ūit             | Mäl-ūit             |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-ūīmūs           | Nöl-ūīmūs           | Mäl-ūīmūs           |
|           | Völ-ūistīs          | Nöl-ūistīs          | Mäl-ūistīs          |
|           | Völ-ūerunt or -uērē | Nöl-ūerunt or -uērē | Mäl-ūerunt or -uērē |

5. *Past-Perfect.*

|           |             |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völ-ūeram   | Nöl-ūeram   | Mäl-ūeram   |
|           | Völ-ūerās   | Nöl-ūerās   | Mäl-ūerās   |
|           | Völ-ūerāt   | Nöl-ūerāt   | Mäl-ūerāt   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-ūerāmūs | Nöl-ūerāmūs | Mäl-ūerāmūs |
|           | Völ-ūerātīs | Nöl-ūerātīs | Mäl-ūerātīs |
|           | Völ-ūerant  | Nöl-ūerant  | Mäl-ūerant  |

6. *Future-Perfect.*

|           |             |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völ-ūēro    | Nöl-ūēro    | Mäl-ūēro    |
|           | Völ-ūērīs   | Nöl-ūērīs   | Mäl-ūērīs   |
|           | Völ-ūērīt   | Nöl-ūērīt   | Mäl-ūērīt   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-ūērīmūs | Nöl-ūērīmūs | Mäl-ūērīmūs |
|           | Völ-ūērītīs | Nöl-ūērītīs | Mäl-ūērītīs |
|           | Völ-ūērint  | Nöl-ūērint  | Mäl-ūērint  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

|           |          |          |          |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| <i>S.</i> | Väl-im   | Nöl-im   | Mäl-im   |
|           | Väl-is   | Nöl-is   | Mäl-is   |
|           | Väl-it   | Nöl-it   | Mäl-it   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-imūs | Nöl-imūs | Mäl-imūs |
|           | Völ-itīs | Nöl-itīs | Mäl-itīs |
|           | Völ-int  | Nöl-int  | Mäl-int  |

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

|           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>S.</i> | Vel-lem   | Nol-lem   | Mäl-lem   |
|           | Vel-lēs   | Nol-lēs   | Mäl-lēs   |
|           | Vel-lēt   | Nol-lēt   | Mäl-lēt   |
| <i>P.</i> | Vel-lēmūs | Nol-lēmūs | Mäl-lēmūs |
|           | Vel-lētīs | Nol-lētīs | Mäl-lētīs |
|           | Vel-lent  | Nol-lent  | Mäl-lent  |

3. *Perfect.*

|           |             |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völ-uërim   | Nöl-uërim   | Mäl-uërim   |
|           | Völ-uëris   | Nöl-uëris   | Mäl-uëris   |
|           | Völ-uërit   | Nöl-uërit   | Mäl-uërit   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-uërimūs | Nöl-uërimūs | Mäl-uërimūs |
|           | Völ-uëritīs | Nöl-uëritīs | Mäl-uëritīs |
|           | Völ-uërint  | Nöl-uërint  | Mäl-uërint  |

4. *Past-Perfect.*

|           |              |              |              |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>S.</i> | Völ-uissēm   | Nöl-uissēm   | Mäl-uissēm   |
|           | Völ-uissēs   | Nöl-uissēs   | Mäl-uissēs   |
|           | Völ-uissēt   | Nöl-uissēt   | Mäl-uissēt   |
| <i>P.</i> | Völ-uissēmūs | Nöl-uissēmūs | Mäl-uissēmūs |
|           | Völ-uissētīs | Nöl-uissētīs | Mäl-uissētīs |
|           | Völ-uissent  | Nöl-uissent  | Mäl-uissent  |

## IMPERATIVE.

*Present.*

(wanting.)

Nöl-i  
Nöl-itē

(wanting.)

*Future.*Nöl-ito  
Nöl-ito  
Nöl-itōtē  
Nöl-unto

## INFINITIVE.

*Imperfect.*

Vel-lē

Nol-lē

Mäl-lē

*Perfect.*

Völ-uissē

Nöl-uissē

Mäl-uissē

## IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE

Völens

Nölens

(wanting.)

*Obs. 1.* Nölo is a contraction of ne, *not*, and völo; mälo of mäg (*magic*), *more*, and völo.

*Obs. 2.* In consequence of the tendency of liquids to assimilate, the *r* of the terminations is changed into *l*: thus, vel-lem, nol-lem, mal-lem, are contractions of vél-ërem, nöl-ërem, mäl-ërem; and vel-lë, nol-lë, mal-lë, of vél-ërë, nöl-ërë, mäl-ërë.

*Obs. 3.* Si vis, *if you will, if you please*, is sometimes contracted into *sis*.

## § 114. V. Fëro, tälli, ferrë, lätum,—to bear.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

| INDICATIVE.        |            | SUBJUNCTIVE. |  | INDICATIVE.       |                  | SUBJUNCTIVE. |  |
|--------------------|------------|--------------|--|-------------------|------------------|--------------|--|
| 1. Present.        |            |              |  | 4. Perfect.       |                  |              |  |
| S.                 | Fër-o      | Fër-am       |  | S.                | Tül-i            | Tül-ërim     |  |
|                    | Fër-s      | Fër-as       |  |                   | Tül-isti         | Tül-ërís     |  |
|                    | Fër-t      | Fër-ät       |  |                   | Tül-it           | Tül-ërit     |  |
| P.                 | Fër-imüs   | Fër-amüs     |  | P.                | Tül-imüs         | Tül-ërimüs   |  |
|                    | Fër-t's    | Fër-ätis     |  |                   | Tül-istis        | Tül-ëritis   |  |
|                    | Fër-unt    | Fër-ant      |  |                   | Tül-ërant or ërë | Tül-ërint    |  |
| 2. Past-Imperfect. |            |              |  | 5. Past-Perfect.  |                  |              |  |
| S.                 | Fër-ëbam   | Fër-rem      |  | S.                | Tül-ëram         | Tül-issem    |  |
|                    | Fër-ëbäs   | Fër-rës      |  |                   | Tül-ëräs         | Tül-isrës    |  |
|                    | Fër-ëbät   | Fër-rët      |  |                   | Tül-ërät         | Tül-issët    |  |
| P.                 | Fër-ëbamüs | Fër-rëmüs    |  | P.                | Tül-ëramüs       | Tül-issëmüs  |  |
|                    | Fër-ëbätis | Fër-rëtis    |  |                   | Tül-ërätis       | Tül-issëtis  |  |
|                    | Fër-ëbant  | Fër-rent     |  |                   | Tül-ërant        | Tül-issent   |  |
| 3. Future.         |            |              |  | 6. Future-P'fect. |                  |              |  |
| S.                 | Fër-am     |              |  | S.                | Tül-ëro          |              |  |
|                    | Fër-äs     |              |  |                   | Tül-ërís         |              |  |
|                    | Fër-ët     |              |  |                   | Tül-ërit         |              |  |
| P.                 | Fër-ëmüs   |              |  | F.                | Tül-ërimüs       |              |  |
|                    | Fër-ëtis   |              |  |                   | Tül-ëritis       |              |  |
|                    | Fër-ent    |              |  |                   | Tül-ërint        |              |  |

| IMPERATIVE. |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| Present.    | Fër          |
|             | Fër-të       |
| Future.     | Fër-to       |
|             | Fër-to       |
|             | Fër-tötë     |
|             | Fër-unto     |
| INFINITIVE. |              |
| Imperfect.  | Fër-rë       |
| Perfect.    | Tül-issë     |
| Future.     | Läturus essë |

| PARTICIPLES. |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| Imperfect.   | Fërens          |
| Future.      | Läturus (ä, um) |
| SUPINES.     |                 |
|              | Lätum           |
|              | Lätä            |
| GERUND.      |                 |
| Gen.         | Fër-andi        |
|              | &c.             |

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

| INDICATIVE.               |                    | SUBJUNCTIVE.      | INDICATIVE.               |                    | SUBJUNCTIVE.        |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i>        |                    |                   | 4. <i>Perfect.</i>        |                    |                     |
| <i>S.</i>                 | <i>Fēr-ār</i>      | <i>Fēr-ār</i>     | <i>S.</i>                 | <i>Lātūs sum</i>   | <i>Lātūs sim</i>    |
|                           | <i>Fēr-ris</i>     | <i>Fēr-āris</i>   |                           | <i>Lātūs es</i>    | <i>Lātūs sis</i>    |
|                           | <i>Fēr-tūr</i>     | <i>Fēr-ātūr</i>   |                           | <i>Lātūs est</i>   | <i>Lātūs sit</i>    |
| <i>P.</i>                 | <i>Fēr-imūr</i>    | <i>Fēr-āmūr</i>   | <i>P.</i>                 | <i>Lāti sumūs</i>  | <i>Lāti simūs</i>   |
|                           | <i>Fēr-imini</i>   | <i>Fēr-āmini</i>  |                           | <i>Lāti estis</i>  | <i>Lāti sitis</i>   |
|                           | <i>Fēr-untūr</i>   | <i>Fēr-antūr</i>  |                           | <i>Lāti sunt</i>   | <i>Lāti sint</i>    |
| 2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i> |                    |                   | 5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>   |                    |                     |
| <i>S.</i>                 | <i>Fēr-ēbār</i>    | <i>Fēr-rer</i>    | <i>S.</i>                 | <i>Lātūs eram</i>  | <i>Lātūs essem</i>  |
|                           | <i>Fēr-ēbāris</i>  | <i>Fēr-rēris</i>  |                           | <i>Lātūs ēras</i>  | <i>Lātūs esēs</i>   |
|                           | <i>Fēr-ēbātūr</i>  | <i>Fēr-rētūr</i>  |                           | <i>Lātūs erāt</i>  | <i>Lātūs essēt</i>  |
| <i>P.</i>                 | <i>Fēr-ēmūr</i>    | <i>Fēr-rēmūr</i>  | <i>P.</i>                 | <i>Lāti eramūs</i> | <i>Lāti essemūs</i> |
|                           | <i>Fēr-ēbāmini</i> | <i>Fēr-rēmini</i> |                           | <i>Lāti erātis</i> | <i>Lāti essētis</i> |
|                           | <i>Fēr-ēbantūr</i> | <i>Fēr-rentūr</i> |                           | <i>Lāti erant</i>  | <i>Lāti essent</i>  |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>         |                    |                   | 6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i> |                    |                     |
| <i>S.</i>                 | <i>Fēr-ār</i>      |                   | <i>S.</i>                 | <i>Lātūs ero</i>   |                     |
|                           | <i>Fēr-āris</i>    |                   |                           | <i>Lātūs eris</i>  |                     |
|                           | <i>Fēr-ātūr</i>    |                   |                           | <i>Lātūs erit</i>  |                     |
| <i>P.</i>                 | <i>Fēr-āmūr</i>    |                   | <i>P.</i>                 | <i>Lāti erimūs</i> |                     |
|                           | <i>Fēr-āmini</i>   |                   |                           | <i>Lāti eritis</i> |                     |
|                           | <i>Fēr-antūr</i>   |                   |                           | <i>Lāti erant</i>  |                     |

| IMPERATIVE.     |                  | INFINITIVE.       |                           |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Fēr-rē</i>    | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Fēr-rī</i>             |
|                 | <i>Fēr-imini</i> | <i>Perfect.</i>   | <i>Lātus (a, um) essē</i> |
| <i>Future.</i>  | <i>Fēr-tōr</i>   | <i>Future.</i>    | <i>Lātum iri</i>          |
|                 | <i>Fēr-tōr</i>   | PARTICIPLES.      |                           |
|                 | <i>Fēr-untōr</i> | <i>Perfect.</i>   | <i>Lātūs (ā, um)</i>      |
|                 |                  | <i>Gerundive.</i> | <i>Fēr-endūs (ā, um)</i>  |

*Obs. 1.* In the Imperfect Tenses of *fēro* the only irregularity is the omission of *ē* and *i* in some of the terminations: thus, *fer-s* = *fer-is*; *fer-t* = *fēr-it*; *fer-rom* = *fēr-ērom*; *fer-rē* = *fēr-ērē*, &c.

*Obs. 2.* The compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way:

|                             |                                    |                   |                   |                       |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Affēro</i> (ad, fero),   | <i>attūli</i> ,                    | <i>afferrē</i> ,  | <i>allātum</i> ,  | <i>bring to.</i>      |
| <i>Aufēro</i> (ab, fero),   | <i>abstūli</i> ,                   | <i>auferrē</i> ,  | <i>ablātum</i> ,  | <i>carry away.</i>    |
| <i>Effēro</i> (ex, fero),   | <i>extūli</i> ,                    | <i>efferrē</i> ,  | <i>ēlātum</i> ,   | <i>carry out.</i>     |
| <i>Infēro</i> (in, fero),   | <i>intūli</i> ,                    | <i>inferrē</i> ,  | <i>illātum</i> ,  | <i>carry into.</i>    |
| <i>Offēro</i> (ob, fero),   | <i>obtūli</i> ,                    | <i>offerrē</i> ,  | <i>oblātum</i> ,  | <i>present.</i>       |
| <i>Prōfēro</i> (prō, fero), | <i>prōtūli</i> ,                   | <i>prōferrē</i> , | <i>prōlātum</i> , | <i>carry forward.</i> |
| <i>Rēfēro</i> (re, fero),   | <i>rētūli</i> }<br><i>ietūli</i> } | <i>rēferrē</i> ,  | <i>rēlātum</i> ,  | <i>bring back.</i>    |

## § 115. VI. Ēdo, ēdi, ēdārē or esēš, ēsum,—to eat.

| INDICATIVE.        | SUBJUNCTIVE.        | INDICATIVE.        | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. Present.        |                     | 4. Perfect.        |             |
| Ēd-o               | Ēd-am or ēd-im      | S. Ēd-i            | Ēd-ērim     |
| Ēd-is or ēs        | Ēd-ās or ēd-is      | Ēd-isti            | Ēd-ēris     |
| Ēd-it or est       | Ēd-āt or ēd-it      | Ēd-īt              | Ēd-ērit     |
| Ēd-imūs            | Ēd-amūs or ēd-imūs  | P. Ēd-imūs         | Ēd-ērimūs   |
| Ēd-itīs or estīs   | Ēd-ātīs or ēd-itīs  | Ēd-istīs           | Ēd-ēritīs   |
| Ēd-unt             | Ēd-ant or ēd-int    | Ēd-ērunt or -ērē   | Ēd-ērint    |
| 2. Past-Imperfect. |                     | 5. Past-Perfect.   |             |
| Ēd-ēbam            | Ēd-ērem or essem    | S. Ēd-ēram         | Ēd-issem    |
| Ēd-ēbās            | Ēd-ērēs or esēs     | Ēd-ērās            | Ēd-isēs     |
| Ēd-ēbāt            | Ēd-ērēt or esēt     | Ēd-ērāt            | Ēd-isēt     |
| Ēd-ēbāmūs          | Ēd-ērēmūs or esēmūs | P. Ēd-ērāmūs       | Ēd-isēmūs   |
| Ēd-ēbātīs          | Ēd-ērētīs or esētīs | Ēd-ērātīs          | Ēd-isētīs   |
| Ēd-ēbant           | Ēd-ērēt or essent   | Ēd-ērāt            | Ēd-issent   |
| 3. Future.         |                     | 6. Future-Perfect. |             |
| Ēd-am              |                     | S. Ēd-ēro          |             |
| Ēd-ēs              |                     | Ēd-ēris            |             |
| Ēd-ēt              |                     | Ēd-ērit            |             |
| Ēd-amūs            |                     | P. Ēd-ērimūs       |             |
| Ēd-ētīs            |                     | Ēd-ēritīs          |             |
| Ēd-ent             |                     | Ēd-ērint           |             |

|            | IMPERATIVE.        |            | PARTICIPLES.  |
|------------|--------------------|------------|---------------|
| Present.   | Ēd-ē or es         | Imperfect. | Ēd-ens        |
|            | Ēd-itē or estē     | Future.    | Ēsūrs (a, um) |
| Future.    | Ēd-ito or esto     |            |               |
|            | Ēd-ito or esto     |            | SUPINES.      |
|            | Ēd-itētē or estētē |            | Ēsum          |
|            | Ēd-unto            |            | Ēsū           |
|            | INFINITIVE.        |            |               |
| Imperfect. | Ēd-ārē or esēš     |            | GERUND.       |
| Perfect.   | Ēd-isēš            | Gen.       | Ēd-endi, &c.  |
| Future.    | Ēsūrs (a, um) esēš |            |               |

*Obs. 1.* The Passive Voice is regular : only *estār* is used instead of *ēdītār*, and *esēdār* instead of *ēdārētār*. The Perfect Participle is *ēsus*.

*Obs. 2.* The compound *cōmēdo*, eat up, is conjugated in the same way : as; *cōmēdis* or *cōmēs*; *cōmēdīt* or *cōmest*, &c.

## § 116. VII. Ēo, īvi, īrē, ģtām,—to go.

| INDICATIVE.        |         | SUBJUNCTIVE. |  | INDICATIVE.        |                   | SUBJUNCTIVE.      |  |
|--------------------|---------|--------------|--|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--|
| 1. Present.        |         |              |  | 4. Perfect.        |                   |                   |  |
| S.                 | Ē-o     | E-am         |  | S                  | I-vi or I-i       | I-vēim or I-ēim   |  |
|                    | I-s     | E-ās         |  |                    | I-visti &c.       | I-vēris &c.       |  |
|                    | I-t     | E-āt         |  |                    | I-vīt &c.         | I-vērit &c.       |  |
| P.                 | I-mūs   | E-āmūs       |  | P.                 | I-vīmūs &c.       | I-vērimūs &c.     |  |
|                    | I-tis   | E-ātis       |  |                    | I-vistīs &c.      | I-vēritīs &c.     |  |
|                    | E-unt   | E-ant        |  |                    | I-vērunt &c.      | I-vērint &c.      |  |
| 2. Past-Imperfect. |         |              |  | 5. Past-Perfect.   |                   |                   |  |
| S.                 | I-bam   | I-rem        |  | S.                 | I-vēram or I-eram | I-vissam, I-issam |  |
|                    | I-bās   | I-rās        |  |                    | I-ērām or I-ssam  |                   |  |
|                    | I-bāt   | I-rāt        |  |                    | I-vērās &c.       | I-vissās &c.      |  |
| P.                 | I-bāmūs | I-rāmūs      |  |                    | I-vērāt &c.       | I-vissāt &c.      |  |
|                    | I-bātīs | I-rātīs      |  | P.                 | I-vērāmūs &c.     | I-vissāmūs &c.    |  |
|                    | I-bant  | I-rent       |  |                    | I-vērātīs &c.     | I-vissātīs &c.    |  |
| 3. Futura.         |         |              |  | 6. Future-Perfect. |                   |                   |  |
| S.                 | I-bo    |              |  | S.                 | I-vēro or I-ēro   |                   |  |
|                    | I-bīs   |              |  |                    | I-vēris &c.       |                   |  |
|                    | I-bīt   |              |  |                    | I-vērit &c.       |                   |  |
| P.                 | I-bīmūs |              |  | P.                 | I-vērimūs &c.     |                   |  |
|                    | I-bītīs |              |  |                    | I-vēritīs &c.     |                   |  |
|                    | I-bunt  |              |  |                    | I-vērint &c.      |                   |  |

| IMPERATIVE. |                         | PARTICIPLES. |                       |
|-------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| Present.    | I                       | Imperfect.   | I-ens (Gen. e-untils) |
|             | I-tē                    | Future.      | I-tūris (ā, um)       |
| Futura.     | I-to                    |              |                       |
|             | I-to                    |              |                       |
|             | I-tētē                  |              |                       |
|             | E-unto                  |              |                       |
| INFINITIVE. |                         | GERUND.      |                       |
| Imperfect.  | I-rē                    | Gen.         | E-undi, &c.           |
| Perfect.    | I-vissē, ģissē or ģissē |              |                       |
| Future.     | I-tūris (a, um) essē    |              |                       |

Obs. 1. The Stem of this Verb is *i*, which is changed into *e* before *a*, *e*, and *u*: *as*, *eo*, *eunt*, *eam*, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally. INDIC.: *Itūr*, *Itātūr*, *Itūtūr*, *Itum est*, &c. SUBJ.: *eātūr*, *trētūr*, *Itum sit*, &c.

Obs. 3. The compounds of *eo* usually take *it*, rarely *sei*, in the Perfect Tenses: *as*, *ādeo*, *I approach*, makes *ādi*, *ādiēram*, *ādiissem*, &c.

Obs. 4. The compounds of *eo*, which have a transitive meaning, are conjugated throughout in the Passive: *as*, *ādeo*, *I approach*; PASS.: *ādeor*, *āderis*, *āditūr*, *āditmūr*, *āditmini*, *ādeuntūr*, &c.

Obs. 5. *Ambio*, *I go about*, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find *ambiēbam*, but occasionally *ambiēbam* (Ov. Met. v. 361), the Gerund *ambiendi*, &c. The Perf. Participle is *ambitus* (Ov. Met. l. 87), though the Verbal Substantive is *ambitus*.



§ 117. VIII. *Quæo, quivî, quirê, quîtum, —to be able.*

§ 118. IX. *Nêqueo, nêquivî, nêquirê, nêquîtum, —to be unable.*

These Verbs are conjugated exactly like *êo*, but are defective in some forms. In the Present Indicative non *quîs*, non *quît* are used instead of *nêquîs*, *nêquît*.

### § 119. X.—*Neuter Passives.*

A. Three Neuter Verbs—*Fio, to become, or be made, vâpulo, to be beaten, vêneco, to be sold*, are Passive in their signification and construction, and are hence called *Neuter-Passives*.

#### 1. *Fio, factûs sum, fiêri, —to become or be made.*

| INDICATIVE.               |                                    | SUBJUNCTIVE.                       |  | INDICATIVE.               |                                             | SUBJUNCTIVE.                                    |  |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Present.</i>        |                                    |                                    |  | 4. <i>Perfect.</i>        |                                             |                                                 |  |
| S.                        | Fi-o<br>Fi-s<br>Fi-t or fi-t       | Fi-am<br>Fi-ās<br>Fi-āt            |  | S.                        | Factūs sum<br>Factūs ēs<br>Factūs est       | Factūs sim<br>Factūs sis<br>Factūs sit          |  |
| P.                        | [Fi-mūs]<br>[Fi-tis]<br>Fi-unt     | Fi-āmūs<br>Fi-ātis<br>Fi-ant       |  | P.                        | Facti sūmūs<br>Facti estis<br>Facti sunt    | Facti simūs<br>Facti sitis<br>Facti sint        |  |
| 2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i> |                                    |                                    |  | 5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>   |                                             |                                                 |  |
| S.                        | Fi-ēbam<br>Fi-ēbas<br>Fi-ēbāt      | Fi-ērem<br>Fi-ērēs<br>Fi-ērēt      |  | S.                        | Factūs ēram<br>Factūs ērās<br>Factūs ērāt   | Factūs eessem<br>Factūs eesēs<br>Factūs eesēt   |  |
| P.                        | Fi-ēbāmūs<br>Fi-ēbātis<br>Fi-ēbant | Fi-ērēmūs<br>Fi-ērētis<br>Fi-ērent |  | P.                        | Facti ērāmūs<br>Facti ērātis<br>Facti ērant | Facti eesēmūs<br>Facti eesētis<br>Facti eessent |  |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>         |                                    |                                    |  | 6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i> |                                             |                                                 |  |
| S.                        | Fi-am<br>Fi-ēs<br>Fi-ēt            |                                    |  | S.                        | Factūs ēro<br>Factūs ēris<br>Factūs ērit    |                                                 |  |
| P.                        | Fi-ēmūs<br>Fi-ētis<br>Fi-ent       |                                    |  | P.                        | Facti ērimūs<br>Facti ēritis<br>Facti ērant |                                                 |  |

| IMPERATIVE.       |                     | PARTICIPLES.      |                   |
|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>   | Fi, fi-ê            | <i>Perfect.</i>   | Factûs (â, um)    |
| INFINITIVE.       |                     | <i>Gerundive.</i> | Faciendûs (â, um) |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | Fi-êri              |                   |                   |
| <i>Perfect.</i>   | Factus (â, um) essê |                   |                   |
| <i>Future.</i>    | Factum iri          |                   |                   |

Obs. 1. *Fio* is used as the Passive of *fâcio*.

Obs. 2. The *i* in *fio* is always long, except in *fit* and when not followed by *r*.

Obs. 3. The forms *simûs* and *fitis* are doubtful.

2. *Vīpāla, vīpālīvi, to be beaten*, is conjugated regularly, and is used as the Passive of *Verbēro*.

3. *Vēno, venīvi, vēnitum (or vēnum), to be sold*, is a compound of the supine *vēnum* and the verb *eo*, and is used as the passive of *Vendo*.

B. Four other Verbs are also called *Neuter-Passives*, because their Perfect Tenses are Passive in form. They are likewise called *Semi deponents*, because their Perfect Tenses are Deponents.

|                                       |                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>      | <i>to dare, venture.</i> |
| <i>Fido, fidas sum, fidēre,</i>       | <i>to trust.</i>         |
| <i>Gaudeo, gāvissus sum, gaudēre,</i> | <i>to rejoice.</i>       |
| <i>Solco, solitus sum, solēre,</i>    | <i>to be accustomed.</i> |

*Obs.* The four following verbs use also the Perfect Participle Passive in a active sense: *jūro, jūrātus, having sworn*; *coeno, coenātus, having dined*; *prandeo, pransus, having breakfasted*; *pōto, pōtus, having drunk*.

## CHAPTER XX.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 120. Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| I. <i>Coepti,</i>  | <i>I began.</i>    |
| II. <i>Mēmīni,</i> | <i>I remember.</i> |
| III. <i>Ōdi,</i>   | <i>I hate.</i>     |
| IV. <i>Nōvi,</i>   | <i>I know.</i>     |

These three Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses; but the three latter have a present signification.

### INDICATIVE.

|                       |                  |                  |               |                |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i>       | <i>Coepti</i>    | <i>Mēmīni</i>    | <i>Ōdi</i>    | <i>Nōvi</i>    |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i>  | <i>Coepteram</i> | <i>Mēmīneram</i> | <i>Ōderam</i> | <i>Nōveram</i> |
| <i>Future-Perfect</i> | <i>Coeptero</i>  | <i>Mēmīnēro</i>  | <i>Ōdēro</i>  | <i>Nōvēro</i>  |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                      |                   |                   |                |                 |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i>      | <i>Coeptērim</i>  | <i>Mēmīnērim</i>  | <i>Ōdērim</i>  | <i>Nōvērim</i>  |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i> | <i>Coeptissem</i> | <i>Mēmīnissem</i> | <i>Ōdissem</i> | <i>Nōvissem</i> |

### IMPERATIVE.

|                |            |                                    |            |
|----------------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|
| <i>Future.</i> | (wanting.) | <i>Mēmēnto</i><br><i>Mēmēntōtē</i> | (wanting.) |
|----------------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|

### INFINITIVE

|                 |                  |                  |              |                |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Perfect.</i> | <i>Coeptissē</i> | <i>Mēmīnissē</i> | <i>Ōdisē</i> | <i>Nōvisse</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|--------------|----------------|

### PARTICIPLE.

|                |                  |            |               |
|----------------|------------------|------------|---------------|
| <i>Future.</i> | <i>Coeptūrus</i> | (wanting.) | <i>Ōsūrus</i> |
|----------------|------------------|------------|---------------|

*Obs.* 1. Instead of *coepti* and its Tenses, the Passive *coeptus sum, &c.*, is used before an Infinitive Passive: as, *urbs aedificārī coepta est, the city began to be built.*

*Obs.* 2. *Nōvi* is properly the perfect of *Novo*, to learn to know.

§ 121. V. Aio, *I say*, has only the following forms:—

| INDICATIVE. |       | SUBJUNCTIVE.    | INDICATIVE.            |          | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|-------------|-------|-----------------|------------------------|----------|--------------|
|             |       | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past-Imperfect.</i> |          |              |
| <i>S.</i>   | Aio   | —               | <i>S.</i>              | Aiōbam   | —            |
|             | Ais   | Aiās            |                        | Aiōbās   | —            |
|             | Ait   | Aiāt            |                        | Aiōbāt   | —            |
| <i>P.</i>   | —     | —               | <i>P.</i>              | Aiōbāmūs | —            |
|             | —     | —               |                        | Aiōbātis | —            |
|             | Aiunt | Aiant           |                        | Aiōbant  | —            |

## IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Aiens.

*Obs.* The form *aisnē*, *sayest thou?* is often contracted into *sin'*.

§ 122. VI. Inquam, *say I*, has only the following forms:—

| INDICATIVE.     |           |                        |             |
|-----------------|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Inquam    | <i>Past-Imperfect.</i> | Inquīsbam   |
|                 | Inquis    |                        | Inquīsbās   |
|                 | Inquit    |                        | Inquīsbāt   |
|                 | Inquimūs  |                        | Inquīsbāmūs |
|                 | Inquitis  |                        | Inquīsbātis |
|                 | Inquifunt |                        | Inquīsbant  |
| <i>Future.</i>  | —         | <i>Perfect.</i>        | —           |
|                 | Inquīs    |                        | Inquisti    |
|                 | Inquīst   |                        | Inquilt     |

## IMPERATIVE.

*Present.* Inquē | *Future. 2 Pers.* Inquīto

*Obs.* Inquam, like the English *say I*, *says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

§ 123. VII. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent, is used only in the following forms:—

| INDICATIVE.          | SUBJUNCTIVE.  | IMPERATIVE.                      | INFINITIVE.              |
|----------------------|---------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>      |               | <i>Present. S.</i> Fārē          | Fārī                     |
| Fātūr                | —             |                                  |                          |
| <i>Future.</i>       |               | PARTICIPLES.                     |                          |
| Fābōr, fābitūr       | —             | <i>Imperfect.</i> Fantūs &c.     | (without a <i>Nom.</i> ) |
| <i>Perfect.</i>      |               | <i>Perfect.</i> Fātūs (&, um)    |                          |
| Fātus sum &c.        | Fātus sim &c. | <i>Gerundive.</i> Fandūs (&, um) |                          |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i> |               |                                  |                          |
| Fātūs eram           | Fātūs essem   | SUPINE — Fātā.                   |                          |
|                      |               | GERUND—Fandi &c.                 |                          |

§ 124. VIII. *Salvë, hail!* is found in the *Imperat. salvë, salvëtë, salvëto*; in the *Infin. salvërë*; and in the *Future. salvëbis*.

IX. *Ävē (hävē), hail!* is found in the *Imperat. ävē ävētë, ävēto*; and in the *Infin. ävērë*.

X. *Äpägë, begone!* (the only form).

XI. *Cëdo, pl. (cëditë) cettë, give me, tell me*, are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb.

XII. *Quaeso, I entreat, quacsümüs, we entreat*, are the only forms used in this sense.

## CHAPTER XXI.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 125. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 126. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:—

### I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES, ETC.

|                                                        |                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Dëcët, dëcëit, dëcërë,</i>                          | <i>it is seemly.</i>     |
| <i>Dëdëcët, dëdëcëit, dëdëcërë,</i>                    | <i>it is unseemly.</i>   |
| <i>Lībët, lībëit &amp; lībëitum est, lībërë,</i>       | <i>it pleases.</i>       |
| <i>Līcët, līcëit &amp; līcëitum est, līcërë,</i>       | <i>it is lawful.</i>     |
| <i>Līquët, līquërë,</i>                                | <i>it is clear.</i>      |
| <i>Mīsërët or mīsërëtär, mīsërëitum est, mīsërërë.</i> | <i>it excites pity.</i>  |
| <i>Öportët, öportëit, öportërë,</i>                    | <i>it behoves.</i>       |
| <i>Pīgët, pīgëit &amp; pīgëitum est, pīgërë,</i>       | <i>it vexes.</i>         |
| <i>Pläcët, pläcëit or pläcëitum est, pläcërë,</i>      | <i>it pleases.</i>       |
| <i>Poenītët, poenītëit, poenītërë,</i>                 | <i>it causes sorrow.</i> |
| <i>Pūdët, pūdëit or pūdëitum est, pūdërë,</i>          | <i>it shames.</i>        |
| <i>Tædët, (pertaesum est,) tædërë,</i>                 | <i>it disgusts.</i>      |

*Obs.* All these Verbs belong to the Second Conjugation.

### II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

|                                        |                  |
|----------------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Grandīnët, 1,</i>                   | <i>it hails.</i> |
| <i>Nīngët, nīngëit, nīngërë,</i>       | <i>it snows.</i> |
| <i>Plūët, plūët or plūvët, plūërë,</i> | <i>it rains.</i> |

|                                               |                            |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Tōnāt, tōnūt, tōnārē,</b>                  | <i>it thunders.</i>        |
| <b>Lūcescīt, (illuxīt,) lūcescērē,</b>        | <i>it becomes light.</i>   |
| <b>Vespérascīt, vespérāvīt, vespérascērē,</b> | <i>evening approaches.</i> |

*Obs.* Many verbs which are conjugated regularly with their proper significations are in certain senses used impersonally : as, *accidīt, it happens; expēdīt, it is advantageous, &c.*

§ 127. Most Impersonal Verbs have no Imperatives, Participles, Supines, or Gerunds. Consequently *pūdet*, for example, has only the following forms :

|                        | INDICATIVE.     | SUBJUNCTIVE.     | INFINITIVE.       |
|------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>        | <b>Pūdet</b>    | <b>Pūdeāt</b>    | } <b>Pūdērē</b>   |
| <i>Past-Imperfect.</i> | <b>Pūdēbāt</b>  | <b>Pūderēt</b>   |                   |
| <i>Future.</i>         | <b>Pūdēbīt</b>  | —                | —                 |
| <i>Perfect.</i>        | <b>Pūduīt</b>   | <b>Pūduērīt</b>  | } <b>Pūduissē</b> |
| <i>Past-Perfect.</i>   | <b>Pūduērāt</b> | <b>Pūduissēt</b> |                   |
| <i>Future-Perfect.</i> | <b>Pūduērīt</b> | —                | —                 |

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses :

|                   |                                             |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>Pūdet mē,</b>  | <i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>       |
| <b>Pūdet tē,</b>  | <i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i> |
| <b>Pūdet eum,</b> | <i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>     |
| <b>Pūdet nōs,</b> | <i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>     |
| <b>Pūdet vōs,</b> | <i>it shames you, or you are ashamed.</i>   |
| <b>Pūdet eōs,</b> | <i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i> |

§ 128. Intransitive Verbs are used in the Passive Voice impersonally : as,

**Curritūr, Itūr, ventum est &c.** (*They*) run, (*they*) go, (*they*) came, &c.

## CHAPTER XXII.—ADVERBS.

§ 129. Adverbs derived from Adjectives, Participles, and Substantives, end in *ē, ō, tēr, Itūs, tīm.* Their formation is explained in § 196, sqq.

Adverbs in *ē, ō, tēr,* have Comparatives and Superlatives.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *ius.*

*The Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Super

lative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

## ADJECTIVES.

|                          | <i>Positive.</i>                 |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| doctus, <i>learned,</i>  | doctē                            |
| aeger, <i>sick,</i>      | aegrē ( <i>with difficulty</i> ) |
| fortis, <i>brave,</i>    | fortiter                         |
| similis, <i>like,</i>    | similiter                        |
| acer, <i>keen,</i>       | acriter                          |
| felix, <i>lucky,</i>     | felicitate                       |
| prudens, <i>prudent,</i> | prudenter                        |

## ADVERBS.

| <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| doctius             | doctissimē          |
| aegrus              | aegrissimē          |
| fortius             | fortissimē          |
| similius            | simillimē           |
| acrius              | acerrimē            |
| felicius            | feliciissimē        |
| prudens             | prudensissimē       |

§ 130. If the Adjectives are irregular in their Comparison, the Adverbs also are irregular.

## ADJECTIVES.

|                             | <i>Positive.</i> |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| bonus, <i>good,</i>         | bonē             |
| malus, <i>bad,</i>          | malē             |
| multus, <i>much,</i>        | multum           |
| magnus, <i>great,</i>       | —                |
| propinquus, <i>near,</i>    | propē            |
| (prō) prior, <i>before,</i> | —                |

## ADVERBS.

| <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| melius              | optimē              |
| pejus               | possimē             |
| pius                | plurimum            |
| magis               | maximē              |
| propius             | proximē             |
| prius               | primum & primē      |

§ 131. Only the following Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are compared :—

| Positive.          |                  | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|--------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|
| diu,               | for a long time, | diutius      | diutissimē   |
| nūper,             | lately,          | —            | nūperrimē    |
| saepē,             | often,           | saepius      | saepissimē   |
| sēcus,             | otherwise,       | sciūs        | —            |
| tempēri (tempōri), | timely,          | tempērius    | —            |

§ 132. Many Adverbs were originally particular Cases of Substantives, Adjectives, or Pronouns : as,

|                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| tempori, tempēri, from tempus,       | seasonably (see § 131).        |
| grātis (grātis), „ grātia,           | for thanks, i. e. for nothing. |
| ingrātis (ingrātis), „ ingrātia,     | without thanks, against any    |
| fōras, fōris, fōra (obs.) = fōris,   | abroad. [one's will.           |
| noctū, „ noctus (obs.) = nox,        | by night.                      |
| diū, old abl. of diēs,               | by day.*                       |
| perperam, acc. sing. f. of perperus, | wrongly.                       |

\* In this sense only in the phrase noctu diuque (rare).

## CHAPTER XXIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 134. Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or the Ablative. Their construction is explained in the Syntax.

§ 135. I. *With the Accusative alone.*

|                         |                             |                  |                                              |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>Ad,</b>              | <i>to.</i>                  | <b>Ob,</b>       | <i>on account of.</i>                        |
| <b>Adversus,</b>        | } <i>opposite, towards.</i> | <b>Penes,</b>    | <i>in the power of.</i>                      |
| <b>Adversum,</b>        |                             | <b>Për,</b>      | <i>through.</i>                              |
| <b>Antë,</b>            | <i>before.</i>              | <b>Pönë,</b>     | <i>behind.</i>                               |
| <b>Apüd,</b>            | <i>near.</i>                | <b>Post,</b>     | <i>after.</i>                                |
| <b>Circä, circum,</b>   | <i>around.</i>              | <b>Praetër,</b>  | <i>beside.</i>                               |
| <b>Circitër,</b>        | <i>about.</i>               | <b>Pröpë,</b>    | <i>near.</i>                                 |
| <b>Cis &amp; citrä,</b> | <i>on this side of.</i>     | <b>Proptër,</b>  | <i>on account of.</i>                        |
| <b>Conträ,</b>          | <i>against.</i>             | <b>Sëcundum,</b> | <i>following, along, in accordance with.</i> |
| <b>Ergä,</b>            | <i>towards (of the</i>      | <b>Suprä,</b>    | <i>above.</i>                                |
| <b>Exträ,</b>           | <i>outside of. [mind].</i>  | <b>Trans,</b>    | <i>across.</i>                               |
| <b>Infrä,</b>           | <i>below.</i>               | <b>Ulträ,</b>    | <i>on the farther side of.</i>               |
| <b>Intër,</b>           | <i>between, among.</i>      | <b>Versüs,</b>   | } <i>towards.</i>                            |
| <b>Inträ,</b>           | <i>inside of, within.</i>   | <b>Versum,</b>   |                                              |
| <b>Juxtä,</b>           | <i>hard by, beside.</i>     |                  |                                              |

*Obs. Versis is always placed after the Accusative: as, Römam versüs, towards Rome.*

§ 136. II. *With the Ablative alone.*

|                       |                            |                 |                                |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>A, äb, or abs,</b> | <i>by or from.</i>         | <b>Ex or ë,</b> | <i>out of.</i>                 |
| <b>Absquë (rare),</b> | <i>without.</i>            | <b>Praë,</b>    | <i>before.</i>                 |
| <b>Cöram,</b>         | <i>in the presence of.</i> | <b>Frö,</b>     | <i>in front of, before.</i>    |
| <b>Cum,</b>           | <i>with.</i>               | <b>Synë,</b>    | <i>without.</i>                |
| <b>Dë,</b>            | <i>down from, from.</i>    | <b>Tënis,</b>   | <i>reaching to, as far as.</i> |

*Obs. 1. Ab is used before vowels and h; both ä and äb before consonants; abs very seldom except in the phrase abs te.*

*Obs. 2. Ex is used before vowels and h; both ex and ë before consonants.*

*Obs. 3. Tënis is always placed after the Ablative: as, pectörë tënis, as far as the breast.*

§ 137. III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

|             |                      |                |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>In,</b>  | <i>in, into.</i>     | <b>Süpër,</b>  | <i>over.</i>                     |
| <b>Süb,</b> | <i>up to, under.</i> | <b>Subtër,</b> | <i>under.</i>                    |
|             | <b>Clam,</b>         |                | <i>without the knowledge of.</i> |

*In and Sub with the Acc. answer the question Whither? with the Abl., the question Where?*

§ 138. *Obs. 1. Some Prepositions are used as Adverbs: as, antë, clam, cöram, conträ, post, praeter, propter.*

**Obs. 2.** Prepositions, in composition with other words, frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common change is the assimilation of the final consonant of the preposition to the initial consonants of the words with which it is combined: as, *alldquor* from *ad* and *lôquor*.

**Ab, abs.** *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants. Before *m* and *v* it becomes *a*: as, *â-moveo*, *â-vêho*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fêro*, *au-fûgio*. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only: as, *abs-ôdo*, *abs-tineo*.

**Ad** remains unchanged before *d*, *j*, *m*, *v*: as, *ad-do*, *ad-jêco*, *ad-mîror*, *ad-vêho*. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, *ac-ôdo*, *af-fêro*, *ag-gêro*, *ap-pôno*, *ac-quîro*, *as-sisto*, *as-sûmo*. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and *gn*: as, *a-spicio*, *a-gnosco*.

**Com** (instead of *cum*) remains unchanged before the labials *p*, *b*, *m*: as, *com-pôno*, *com-bibo*, *com-mitto*. The *m* is assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: as, *col-ligo*, *con-necto*, *cor-rîpio*. The *m* is changed into *n* before the other consonants: as, *con-fêro*, *con-gêro*, *con-trâho*. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h*: as, *co-âlesco*, *co-eo*, *co-hæreo*.

**Ex** remains unchanged before vowels and the consonants *c*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*: as, *ex-eo*, *ex-ôpio*, *ex-pôno*, *ex-quîro*, *ex-solvo*, *ex-trâho*. The *x* is assimilated before *f*: as, *ef-fêro*. The *x* is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, *ê-ligo*, *ê-jleio*.

**In** becomes *im* before the labials *p*, *b*, *m*: as, *im-pôno*, *im-buo*, *im-mitto*. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r*: as, *il-lûdo*, *ir-rumpo*. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged.

**Inter** undergoes assimilation only in the verb *intel-ligo* and its derivatives.

**Ob** undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*: as, *oc-curro*, *of-fêro*, *og-gêro*, *op-pôno*.

**Per** undergoes assimilation only in *pel-lleio* and its derivatives.

**Sub** undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, and often before *r*: as, *suc-curro*, *suf-fleio*, *sug-gêro*, *sum-mitto*, *sup-pôno*, *sur-rîpio*.

**Trans** is frequently shortened into *trâ*: as, *trâ-dûco*, *trâ-jleio*.

**Obs. 3.** *Inseparable Prepositions* occur only in composition.

**Amb, around**: as, *amb-io*, *to go around*; *amb-igo*, *to wander around*. The *b* is dropped before *p*: as, *am-pûto*, *to cut around or away*; *am-plector*, *to twine around or embrace*. *Amô* becomes *an* before gutturals and *f*: as, *an-ceps*, *two-headed*; *an-quîro*, *to seek around*; *an-fractus*, *a bending*.

**Dis or di, in different directions**: as, *dis-pôno*, *to set in different parts*; *di-rîpio*, *to tear in pieces*. Before *f*, *dis* becomes *dif*: as, *dif-fundo*, *to pour in different directions*.

**Rê or rêd, back**: as, *rê-mitto*, *to send back*; *rêd-eo*, *to go back*.

**Sê, aside**: as, *sê-dûco*, *to lead aside*; *sû-cûrus*, *free from care*.



## CHAPTER XXIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 139. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes :

## I. CONNECTIVE.

|            |   |                    |            |   |                      |
|------------|---|--------------------|------------|---|----------------------|
| Et,        | } | <i>and.</i>        | Nēquē, nē, | } | <i>neither, nor.</i> |
| Atquē, &c, |   |                    | Nēvē, neu, |   |                      |
| Quē,       | } | <i>either, or.</i> | Sivē, sen, | } | <i>or if.</i>        |
| Aut,       |   |                    | Necnōn,    |   |                      |
| Vēl, vē,   |   |                    | Etiam,     |   |                      |
|            |   |                    | Quōque,    |   | <i>also.</i>         |

Obs. 1. Quē and vē are always added to the end of the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrā mārīquē, *by land and by sea*; plūs mīnusvē, *more or less*. Such words are called enclitics.

Obs. 2. Ac, vē, nēc, neu, sen are contractions respectively of atquē, vēl, nēquē, nēvē, sē.

Obs. 3. Ac is never used before vowels or h: atruē occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mōdo (solum) . . . sed (vērum) etiam, *not only . . . but also*; quum (tum) . . . tum, *both . . . and*.

## II. ADVERSATIVE.

|          |   |                 |              |   |                           |
|----------|---|-----------------|--------------|---|---------------------------|
| Sēd,     | } | <i>but.</i>     | Tāmēn,       | } | <i>yet, nevertheless.</i> |
| Autem,   |   |                 | Vērum, vēro, |   |                           |
| Ast, at, |   |                 | Enimvēro.    |   |                           |
| Atque,   |   | <i>and yet.</i> | Attāmēn,     |   | <i>but yet.</i>           |

## III. CONDITIONAL.

|           |            |                        |          |   |                       |
|-----------|------------|------------------------|----------|---|-----------------------|
| Si,       | <i>if.</i> | <i>if not.</i>         | Dum,     | } | <i>provided that.</i> |
| Nisi, nī, |            |                        | Mōdō,    |   |                       |
| Sin,      |            | <i>if not; but if.</i> | Dummōdō, |   |                       |

## IV. CONCESSIVE.

|          |   |                  |          |   |                           |
|----------|---|------------------|----------|---|---------------------------|
| Etai,    | } | <i>although.</i> | Quamvis, | } | <i>however much, al-</i>  |
| Etiamai, |   |                  | Quum,    |   |                           |
| Tāmetsi, |   |                  | Quidem,  |   |                           |
| Licēt,   |   |                  | Ūt,      |   |                           |
| Quamquam |   |                  |          |   | <i>granting that, al-</i> |
|          |   |                  |          |   | <i>though.</i>            |

## V. CAUSAL.

|               |                        |                     |         |   |                     |
|---------------|------------------------|---------------------|---------|---|---------------------|
| Quum,         | <i>whereas, since.</i> | <i>because.</i>     | Nam,    | } | <i>for.</i>         |
| Quā, quōd,    |                        |                     | Enim,   |   |                     |
| Quōniam,      |                        | <i>since.</i>       | Etēnim, |   |                     |
| Quandōquidam, |                        | <i>seeing that.</i> |         |   | <i>and in fact.</i> |

## VI. CONCLUSIVE.

|                                       |                     |                                               |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Ergo,<br>Idcirco,<br>Ideo,<br>Igîtâr, | } <i>therefore.</i> | Itâquë,<br>Quocircâ,<br>Quârë,<br>Quâproptâr, | } <i>and so, accordingly.</i><br><i>wherefore.</i> |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|

## VII. FINAL.

|                                   |                                                   |                   |                                                        |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Ut,<br>Quô,<br>Quin,<br>Quôminûs, | } <i>that, in order that.</i><br><i>that not.</i> | Në,<br>Nëvë, neu, | } <i>that not, lest.</i><br><i>and that . . . not.</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|

## VIII. TEMPORAL.

|                                      |                                             |                                              |                                                   |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Antëquam,<br>Priusquam,<br>Postquam, | } <i>before that.</i><br><i>after that.</i> | Donec,<br>Quoad,<br>Dum,<br>Simulatque (ac), | } <i>so long as, until.</i><br><i>as soon as.</i> |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|

NOTE.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntax*.

## CHAPTER XXV.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes :—

1. Of surprise : ô ! eu ! eooë ! pâpae ! âtat ! etc.
2. Of grief : ah ! âheu (heu) ! hei ! vae ! etc.
3. Of joy : ie ! ha ! êvœ ! eu (eugë) ! etc.
4. Of disgust : phu ! âpägë ! etc.
5. Of adjuration : prô (proh) ! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths mehercûle (mehercûle, hercûle, etc.), pol, âdëpol, mëdiûsfidiûs and the like.

## APPENDIX A.

## CHAPTER XXVI.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

## GENERAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. 1. *Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers* are *Masculine*.

2. *Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees* are *Feminine*.

*Obs.* In the case of some animals sex is disregarded : thus, *āquīla*, *eagle*, and *vulpes*, *fox*, are always *feminine* ; while *lēpus*, *hare*, *mus*, *mouse*, and *passer*, *sparrow*, are always *masculine*. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπὶ κοινός).

3. *Indeclinable Substantives, as,*  
Fās, nēfās, nīhīl, instār,  
are *Neuter*.

|        |                          |  |         |              |
|--------|--------------------------|--|---------|--------------|
| fās,   | permitted by heaven.     |  | nīhīl,  | nothing.     |
| nēfās, | not permitted by heaven. |  | instār, | resemblance. |

4. *Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as,*  
Cīvis, conjux, sācerdōs, testis  
are *Common*.

|         |                             |  |           |                             |
|---------|-----------------------------|--|-----------|-----------------------------|
| cīvis,  | a citizen (male or female). |  | sācerdōs, | a priest or priestess.      |
| conjux, | a husband or wife.          |  | testis,   | a witness (male or female). |

## SPECIAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

## § 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION

*Principal Rule.*

A and ē are *Feminine*,  
As and ēs are *Masculine*.

*Exceptions.*

1. Names of Males in *a* are Masculine: *as*,

*scriba*, a clerk.

*nauta*, a sailor.

*incola*, an inhabitant.

2. Most Rivers in *a* are Masculine (§ 141, 1): *as*,

*Adda*, the *Adda*.

*Garumna*, the *Garonne*.

*Séquana*, the *Seine*.

Also *Hædria*, the Adriatic Sea.

But the following are Feminine:

*Albula*, ancient name of *Tiber*.

*Allia*, in *Latium*.

*Matræna*, the *Marne*.

## § 143. II. SECOND DECLENSION.

*Principal Rule.*

*Us* and *er* are Masculine,

*Um* is Neuter.

*Exceptions.*

1. Trees and Towns in *us* follow the general rule, and are Feminine 'see § 141, 2): *as*,

*ulmus*, an elm-tree.

*Cōrinthus*, *Corinth*.

2. The following are also Feminine:

*alvus*, the belly.

*cōlus*, a distaff.

*hūmus*, the ground.

*vannus*, a winnowing fan.

And some Greek words: *as*,

*mēthōdus*, method.

*arctos*, the constellation

*Bear*.

*carbāsus*, fine flax.

3. The following are Neuter

*virus*, poison.

*pēlūgus*, the sea.

*vulgus*, the common people.

Obs. *Vulgus* is sometimes Masculine.

## § 144. III. THIRD DECLENSION.

*Preliminary Rules.*

1. The rules for determining the Gender of Substantives from their meaning (given in § 141) are of course applicable in this as in the other Declensions: thus, *pāter*, a father; *Tībēris*, the *Tiber*; *Libs*, a S. W. wind, are Masculine: while *mūlier*, a woman; *sōror*, a sister; *Vēnus*, the goddess of beauty and grace, are Feminine.

2. All Abstract Substantives derived from Adjectives

(sometimes also from Substantives), and denoting *qualities*, are Feminine : as,

|            |                    |      |          |
|------------|--------------------|------|----------|
| humilitas, | lowness, humility, | from | hūmīlis. |
| suāvitas,  | sweetness,         | "    | suāvis.  |
| altitudo,  | height,            | "    | altus.   |
| fortitudo, | bravery,           | "    | fortis.  |
| virtus,    | manliness, virtue, | "    | vir.     |

3. Substantives in *io* (*tio*, *sio*), derived from Verbs, and expressing the action abstractly, are Feminine : as,

|             |                        |      |                      |
|-------------|------------------------|------|----------------------|
| expugnatio, | taking by storm,       | from | expugno.             |
| mūnīlio,    | the act of fortifying, | "    | mūnio.               |
| dēcessio,   | departure,             | "    | dēcedo.              |
| largitio,   | bribery,               | "    | largior.             |
| ōpinio,     | thinking, opinion,     | "    | ōpinor.              |
| contagio,   | touching, contagion,   | "    | contaugo (root TAG). |

*Obs.* 1. In some of the above the active signification is lost, as *rēgio*, a *district* (from *rēgo*) ; *lēgio*, a *legion* (from *lēgo*).

2. To the above may be added those which denote a *permanent* action or condition, in *go* and *do* : as,

|          |                    |      |         |
|----------|--------------------|------|---------|
| prūrigo, | itching,           | from | prūrio. |
| cūpido,  | a desire, passion, | "    | cūpio.  |
| vertigo, | giddiness,         | "    | verto.  |

With the exception of the above, all Genders of this Declension must be decided by the termination.

### First Principal Rule (Masculine).

O, or (ōris), os, and er,

Es, increasing *short* in Genitive,

are *Masculine*.—EXAMPLES: *Leo*, ōnis, a *lion* ; *dōlōr*, ōris, *pain* ; *flōs*, flōris, a *flower* ; *ansēr*, ēris, a *goose* ; *pēs*, pēdis, a *foot*.

### Exceptions

1. In o.

Feminine are *do*, *go*, *io*,

To these add *cāro*, *ēcho*.

But Masculine are *harpāgo*,

*Ordo*, *cardo*, *scīpio*,

*Stellio*, *septentrio*,  
*Margo*, *ligo*, *pūgio*,  
*Titio*, *pāpilio*,  
*Unio*, *curcūlio*,  
Lastly *vespertilio*.

|             |         |                   |
|-------------|---------|-------------------|
| cāro,       | carnis, | flesh.            |
| ēcho,       | ēchūs,  | an echo.          |
| harpāgo,    | ōnis,   | a grappling-hook. |
| ordo,       | īnis,   | a row.            |
| cardo,      | īnis,   | a hinge.          |
| scīpio,     | ōnis,   | a staff.          |
| stellio,    | ōnis,   | a lizard.         |
| septentrio, | ōnis,   | the north.        |

|              |       |                   |
|--------------|-------|-------------------|
| margo,       | īnis, | a border or edge. |
| ligo,        | ōnis, | a spade.          |
| pūgio,       | ōnis, | a dagger.         |
| titio,       | ōnis, | a fire-brand.     |
| pāpilio,     | ōnis, | a butterfly.      |
| ūnio,        | ōnis, | a pearl.          |
| curcūlio,    | ōnis, | a weevil.         |
| vespertilio, | ōnis, | a bat.            |

2. In *er*.  
Neuter Nouns which end in *er* | *Marmor, aequor, odor, cor.*  
Are only four: | *Fēminini gēnēris*  
 | *Is only arbor (arbōris).*

|                                                    |                                |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| marmor, ōris, <i>marble.</i>                       | odor, ōris, <i>spelt.</i>      |
| aequor, ōris, <i>the level surface of the sea.</i> | cor, cordis, <i>the heart.</i> |
|                                                    | arbor, ōris, <i>a tree.</i>    |

3. In *es*.  
Feminine are *cōs* and *dōs*. | Neuter Nouns are *ōs* and *ōs*.

|                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| cōs, cōtis, <i>a whetstone.</i> | ōs, ossis, <i>a bone.</i>   |
| dōs, dōtis, <i>a dowry.</i>     | ōs, ōris, <i>the mouth.</i> |

4. In *er*.  
Many Neuters end in *er*: | *Zingiber, pāpāver, sūber,*  
*Vēr, cādāver, ūer, tūber,* | *Acer, sīler, verber, spinther.*  
*Cīcer, pīper, sīcer, ūber,* | *Feminine is only linter.*

|                                        |                                            |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| vēr, vēris, <i>the spring.</i>         | zingiber, ōris, <i>ginger.</i>             |
| cādāver, ōris, <i>a corpse.</i>        | pāpāver, ōris, <i>the poppy.</i>           |
| ūer, ūēris, <i>a journey.</i>          | sūber, ōris, <i>the cork-tree.</i>         |
| tūber, ōris, <i>a swelling.</i>        | ācer, ōris, <i>the maple.</i>              |
| cīcer, ōris, <i>the chick-pea.</i>     | sīler, ōris, <i>a withy.</i>               |
| pīper, ōris, <i>pepper.</i>            | verber, ōris, <i>a whip, scourge.</i>      |
| sīcer, ōris, <i>a plant (skirret).</i> | spinther, ōris, <i>a kind of bracelet.</i> |
| ūber, ōris, <i>an udder.</i>           | linter, tris (f.), <i>a wherry.</i>        |

5. In *es*, increasing in the Genitive. | *Quiēs, mercēs, mergēs, tēgēs,*  
Feminine are *rēquiēs*, | *Compēs, inquiēs, and sēgēs.*

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| quiēs, ōtis, } <i>rest.</i>         | mergēs, ūtis, <i>a sheaf of corn.</i> |
| rēquiēs, ōtis, }                    | tēgēs, ōtis, <i>a mat.</i>            |
| inquiēs, ōtis, <i>restlessness.</i> | compēs, ōdis, <i>a fetter.</i>        |
| mercēs, ōdis, <i>wages.</i>         | sēgēs, ōtis, <i>standing corn.</i>    |

### § 145. Second Principal Rule (Feminine).

X, as, aus, and is,

S preceded by a consonant,

Es not increasing in Genitive,

are *Feminine*.—EXAMPLES: Pax, pācis, *peace*; libertās, ātis, *liberty*; laus, laudis, *praise*; nāvis, is, *a ship*; urbs, urbis, *a city*; nūbēs, is, *a cloud*.



## 4. In s preceded by a consonant :

Masculine are *pons* and *fons*,  
*Hydrops*, *torrens*, *gryps*, & *mons*,

*Adeps*, *rūdens*, *ōriens*,  
*Dens* and *trīdens*, *occīdens*

*pons*,      *tis*,      *a bridge*.  
*fons*,      *tis*,      *a fountain*.  
*hydrops*,      *ōpis*,      *dropsy*.  
*torrens*,      *tis*,      *a torrent*.  
*gryps*,      *grýphis*,      *a griffin*.  
*mons*,      *tis*,      *a mountain*.

*ādeps*,      *īpis*,      *fat*.  
*rūdens*,      *entis*,      *a cable*.  
*ōriens*,      *tis*,      *the east*.  
*dens*,      *tis*,      *a tooth*.  
*trīdens*,      *tis*,      *a trident*.  
*occīdens*,      *tis*,      *the west*.

## 5. In ōs.

Masculines which end in *ōs*  
 Are *verrēs* and *ācinācēs*.

*verrēs*,      *is*,      *a boar-pig*.  
*ācinācēs*,      *is*,      *a scimitar*.

## § 146. Third Principal Rule (Neuter).

A, e, and c,

L, n, and t,

Ar, ur, and us,

are *Neuter*.—EXAMPLES : *Poēmā*, *ātis*, *a poem* ; *mārē*, *is*, *the sea* ; *lac*, *lactis*, *milk* ; *ānimāl*, *ālis*, *an animal* ; *nōmēn*, *īnis*, *a name* ; *cāpūt*, *cāpītis*, *a head* ; *fulgūr*, *ūris*, *lightning* ; *corpūs*, *ōris*, *a body*

*Exceptions.*

## 1. In l.

Masculines in l are *mūgil*,  
*Sōl* and *consul*, *sāl* and *pūgil*.

*mūgil*, *lis*, *a mullet*.      *sāl*, *sālis*, *salt*.  
*sōl*, *sōlis*, *the sun*.      *pūgil*, *lis*, *a*  
*consul*, *lis*, *a consul*.      *boxer*

## 2. In n.

Masculines in n are *rēn*,  
*splēn*,  
*Pectēn*, *liēn*, *attāgēn*.

*rēn*,      *rēnis* (usu. in pl.), *the kidney*  
*splēn*,      *ēnis*,      *the spleen*.  
*pectēn*,      *īnis*,      *a comb*.  
*liēn*,      *ēnis*,      *the spleen*.  
*attāgēn*,      *ēnis*,      *a heathcock*.

## 3. In ur.

Masculines in ur are *furfur*,  
*Astur vultur*, *fūr*, and *turtur*.

*furfur*, *ūris*, *bran*.  
*astur*, *ūris*, *a hawk*.  
*vultur*, *ūris*, *a vulture*.

*fūr*, *ūris*, *a thief*.  
*turtur*, *ūris*, *a*  
*turtle-dove*.

## 4. In us.

The Masculines which end in *us*  
 Are *lēpus* (*lēpōris*) and *mūs*.

*lēpus*,      *ōris*,      *a hare*.  
*mūs*,      *mūris*,      *a mouse*.



5. In *us*.

The Feminines which end in *us*  
Are *Juventūs, virtūs, servitūs,*

*Sēnectūs, tellūs, incūs, sālūs,*  
Add *pecūs (pecūlis)* and *pālūs*.

*juventūs, ūtis, youth.*  
*virtūs, ūtis, virtue.*  
*servitūs, ūtis, slavery.*  
*sēnectūs, ūtis, old-age.*  
*tellūs, ūtis, the earth.*

*incūs, ūdis, an anvil.*  
*sālūs, ūtis, safety.*  
*pecūs, ūdis, cattle.*  
*pālūs, ūdis, a marsh.*

## § 147. IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Principal Rule.*

*Us* is Masculine.

*U* is Neuter.

*Exceptions.*

Feminines which end in *us*:  
*Tribus, ācus, porticus,*

*Dōmus, nūrus, sorus, ānus,*  
*Idūs (idūm) and mānus.*

*tribus, a tribe (a division of the Roman people).*  
*ācus, a needle.*  
*porticus, a portico.*  
*dōmus, a house.*  
*nūrus, a daughter-in-law.*

*sorus, a mother-in-law.*  
*ānus, an old-woman.*  
*idūs (pl.), the Ides (a division of the Roman month).*  
*mānus, a hand.*

## § 148. V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

*Rule.*

ALL are Feminine except *dies (mēridies)*, which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

## APPENDIX B.

CHAPTER XXVII.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES  
OF VERBS.

## I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *avi*, *atum*: as, *amo*, *amavi*, *amatum*, *amāre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

|                                |                      |                                |          |                    |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|----------|--------------------|
| 1. Crēpo,                      | crēpui,              | crēpītum,                      | crēpāre, | <i>to creak.</i>   |
| 2. Cubo,                       | cubui,               | cubītum,                       | cubāre,  | <i>to lie.</i>     |
| 3. Dōmo,                       | dōmui,               | dōmītum,                       | dōmāre,  | <i>to lame.</i>    |
| 4. Sōno,                       | sōnui,               | sōnītum,                       | sōnāre,  | <i>to sound.</i>   |
| 5. Vēto,                       | vētui,               | vētītum,                       | vētāre,  | <i>to forbid.</i>  |
| 6. Tōno,                       | tōnui,               | —                              | tōnāre,  | <i>to thunder.</i> |
| 7. Mico,                       | micui,               | —                              | micāre,  | <i>to glitter.</i> |
| 8. Plico,                      | {plicui,<br>plicavi, | {plicītum,<br>plicātum,        | plicāre, | <i>to fold.</i>    |
| 9. Fricō,                      | fricui,              | {fricātum,<br>frictum,         | fricāre, | <i>to rub.</i>     |
| 10. Sēco,                      | sēcui,               | sectum,                        | sēcāre,  | <i>to cut.</i>     |
| 11. {Nēco (regular).<br>Enēco, | {ēnēcui,<br>ēnēcavi, | {ēnēctum,<br>ēnēcātum,         | ēnēcāre, | <i>to kill.</i>    |
| 12. Juvō,                      | jūvi,                | jūtum,                         | jūvāre,  | <i>to assist.</i>  |
| 13. Lāvō,                      | lāvi,                | {lāvātum,<br>lautum,<br>lōtum, | lāvāre,  | <i>to wash.</i>    |
| 14. Dō,                        | dēdi,                | dātum,                         | dāre,    | <i>to give.</i>    |
| 15. Stō,                       | stēti,               | stātum,                        | stāre,   | <i>to stand.</i>   |

*Obs. 1.* *Do* in composition with prepositions of two syllables is the same: as,

*circumdo*, *circumdēdi*, *circumdātum*, *circumdāre*, *to surround.*

But in composition with prepositions of one syllable it is of the Third Conjugation: as,

*addo*, *addēdi*, *additum*, *addēre*, *to put to* *to add.*

See § 159, No. 18.

*Obs. 2.* *Sto* in composition with prepositions of two syllables is the same: as

*circumsto*, *circumstēti*, *circumstāre*, *to surround.*

But in composition with prepositions of one syllable the perfect is *stēti*:

*adsto*, *adstēti*, *adstāre*, *to stand near.*

## II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 150. The Perfects and the Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *ui* and *itum*: as, *mōneo, mōnui, mōnītum, mōnēre, to advise*. The following are exceptions:

1. Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum*.

|            |                     |                     |          |                   |
|------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------|-------------------|
| 1. Dōceo,  | dōcui,              | doctum,             | dōcēre,  | to teach.         |
| 2. Tēneo,  | tēnui,              | tentum,             | tēnēre,  | to hold.          |
| 3. Misceo, | miscui,             | {mixtum,<br>mistum, | miscēre, | to mix.           |
| 4. Torreo, | torrui,             | tostum,             | torrēre, | to roast.         |
| 5. Sorbeo, | {sorbui,<br>sorsui, | —                   | sorbēre, | to suck up.       |
| 6. Censeo, | censui,             | censum,             | censēre, | to assess, think. |

§ 151.—2. Perfect—*ēvi*. Supine—*ētum*.

|           |                           |           |            |                       |
|-----------|---------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Dēleo, | dēlēvi,                   | dēlētum,  | dēlēre,    | to blot out, destroy. |
| 2. Flēo,  | flēvi,                    | flētum,   | flēre,     | to weep.              |
| 3. Nēo,   | nēvi,                     | nētum,    | nēre,      | to spin.              |
| 4. {      | Pleo only in composition. |           |            |                       |
| {         | Compleo,                  | complēvi, | complētum, | complēre, to fill up. |
| {         | Oleo only in composition. |           |            |                       |
| {         | Abōleo,                   | ābōlēvi,  | ābōlētum,  | ābōlēre, to abolish.  |
| {         | Adōleo,                   | ādōlēvi,  | adultum,   | — to grow up.         |
| {         | (Adolesco,)               |           |            |                       |
| 5. {      | Exōleo,                   | exōlēvi,  | exōlētum,  | — to grow old.        |
| {         | (Exolesco,)               |           |            |                       |
| {         | Obsōleo,                  | obsolēvi, | obsolētum, | — to grow out of use  |
| {         | (Obsolesco,)              |           |            |                       |

To this class may be added:

|          |       |        |        |          |
|----------|-------|--------|--------|----------|
| 6. Cīeo, | cīvi, | cītum, | cīēre, | to stir. |
|----------|-------|--------|--------|----------|

§ 152.—3. Perfect—*i* (di). Supine—*sum*.

|             |         |          |           |               |
|-------------|---------|----------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. Prandeo, | prandi, | pransum, | prandēre, | to breakfast. |
| 2. Sēdeo,   | sēdi,   | sessum,  | sēdēre,   | to sit.       |
| 3. Vīdeo,   | vīdi,   | visum,   | vīdēre,   | to see.       |
| 4. Strīdeo, | strīdi, | —        | strīdēre, | to creak.     |

*With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.*

|             |           |          |           |             |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| 5. Mordeo,  | mōmordi,  | morsum,  | mordēre,  | to bite.    |
| 6. Pendeo,  | pēpendi,  | pensum,  | pendēre,  | to hang.    |
| 7. Spondeo, | spōpondi, | sponsum, | spondēre, | to promise. |
| 8. Tondeo,  | tōtondi,  | tonsum,  | tondēre,  | to shear.   |

§ 153.—4. Perfect—*i* (vi). Supine—*tum*.

|           |       |         |         |                      |
|-----------|-------|---------|---------|----------------------|
| 1. Cāveo, | cāvi, | cantum, | cāvēre, | to guard one's self. |
| 2. Fāveo, | fāvi, | fautum, | fāvēre, | to favour.           |
| 3. Fōveo, | fōvi, | fōtum,  | fōvēre, | to cherish.          |
| 4. Mōveo, | mōvi, | mōtum,  | mōvēre, | to move.             |
| 4. Vōveo, | vōvi, | vōtum,  | vōvēre, | to coax.             |

| <i>Without Supine.</i> |                                      |   |                    |                 |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|--------------------|-----------------|
| 6. <i>Pāveo</i> ,      | <i>pāvi</i> ,                        | — | <i>pāvère</i> ,    | <i>to fear.</i> |
| 7. <i>Ferveo</i> ,     | <i>fervi</i> ,<br><i>ferbui</i> ,    | — | <i>fervère</i> ,   | <i>to boil.</i> |
| 8. <i>Conniveo</i> ,   | <i>counivi</i> ,<br><i>connixi</i> , | — | <i>connivère</i> , | <i>to wink.</i> |

§ 154.—5. *Perfect—si. Supine—tum and sum.*

|                      |                  |                   |                    |                      |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>Angeo</i> ,    | <i>auxi</i> ,    | <i>auctum</i> ,   | <i>augère</i> ,    | <i>to increase.</i>  |
| 2. <i>Indulgeo</i> , | <i>indulsi</i> , | <i>indultum</i> , | <i>indulgère</i> , | <i>to indulge.</i>   |
| 3. <i>Torqueo</i> ,  | <i>torsi</i> ,   | <i>tortum</i> ,   | <i>torquère</i> ,  | <i>to twist.</i>     |
| 4. <i>Ardeo</i> ,    | <i>arsi</i> ,    | <i>arsum</i> ,    | <i>ardère</i> ,    | <i>to blaze.</i>     |
| 5. <i>Haereo</i> ,   | <i>haesi</i> ,   | <i>haesum</i> ,   | <i>haerère</i> ,   | <i>to stick.</i>     |
| 6. <i>Jubeo</i> ,    | <i>jussi</i> ,   | <i>jussum</i> ,   | <i>jubère</i> ,    | <i>to order.</i>     |
| 7. <i>Māneo</i> ,    | <i>mansi</i> ,   | <i>mansum</i> ,   | <i>mānère</i> ,    | <i>to remain.</i>    |
| 8. <i>Mulceo</i> ,   | <i>mulsi</i> ,   | <i>mulsum</i> ,   | <i>mulcère</i> ,   | <i>to stroke.</i>    |
| 9. <i>Mulgeo</i> ,   | <i>mulsi</i> ,   | <i>muletum</i> ,  | <i>mulgère</i> ,   | <i>to milk.</i>      |
| 10. <i>Rideo</i> ,   | <i>risi</i> ,    | <i>risum</i> ,    | <i>ridère</i> ,    | <i>to laugh.</i>     |
| 11. <i>Suādeo</i> ,  | <i>suāsi</i> ,   | <i>suāsum</i> ,   | <i>suādère</i> ,   | <i>to advise.</i>    |
| 12. <i>Tergeo</i> ,  | <i>tersi</i> ,   | <i>tersum</i> ,   | <i>tergère</i> ,   | <i>to wipe.</i>      |
| 13. <i>Algeo</i> ,   | <i>alsi</i> ,    | —                 | <i>algère</i> ,    | } <i>to be cold.</i> |
| 14. <i>Frigeo</i> ,  | <i>frixi</i> ,   | —                 | <i>frigère</i> ,   |                      |
| 15. <i>Fulgeo</i> ,  | <i>fulsi</i> ,   | —                 | <i>fulgère</i> ,   | <i>to shine.</i>     |
| 16. <i>Lūceo</i> ,   | <i>luxi</i> ,    | —                 | <i>lūcère</i> ,    | <i>to be light.</i>  |
| 17. <i>Lūgeo</i> ,   | <i>luxi</i> ,    | —                 | <i>lūgère</i> ,    | <i>to grieve.</i>    |
| 18. <i>Turgeo</i> ,  | <i>(tursi)</i> , | —                 | <i>turgère</i> ,   | <i>to swell.</i>     |
| 19. <i>Urgeo</i> ,   | <i>ursi</i> ,    | —                 | <i>urgère</i> ,    | <i>to press.</i>     |

§ 155. *Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.*

|                    |                      |   |                  |                          |
|--------------------|----------------------|---|------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>Audeo</i> ,  | <i>ausus sum</i> ,   | — | <i>audère</i> ,  | <i>to dare.</i>          |
| 2. <i>Gaudeo</i> , | <i>gāvisus sum</i> , | — | <i>gaudère</i> , | <i>to rejoice.</i>       |
| 3. <i>Sōleo</i> ,  | <i>sōlitus sum</i> , | — | <i>sōlère</i> ,  | <i>to be accustomed.</i> |

*Obs.* Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have regular Perfect Tenses, but no Supines; and others have neither Perfects nor Supines.

## III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

*NOTE.*—B becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

|                   |                 |                  |                  |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>Carpo</i> , | <i>carpsi</i> , | <i>carptum</i> , | <i>carpère</i> , | <i>to pluck.</i> |
| 2. <i>Glābo</i> , | <i>glupsi</i> , | <i>gluptum</i> , | <i>glübère</i> , | <i>to peel.</i>  |
| 3. <i>Nūbo</i> ,  | <i>nupsi</i> ,  | <i>nuptum</i> ,  | <i>nūbère</i> ,  | <i>to marry.</i> |

|            |          |           |           |                    |
|------------|----------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|
| 4. Repo,   | repsi,   | reptum,   | rēpere,   | <i>to creep.</i>   |
| 5. Scalpo, | scalpsi, | scalptum, | scalpēre, | <i>to scratch.</i> |
| 6. Scribo, | scripsi, | scriptum, | scribēre, | <i>to write.</i>   |
| 7. Serpo,  | serpsi,  | serptum,  | serpēre,  | <i>to crawl.</i>   |

(b.) *Perfect—ui. Supine—tum or Itum.*

|                |          |            |            |                         |
|----------------|----------|------------|------------|-------------------------|
| 8. Rāp-io,     | rāpui,   | raptum,    | rāpēre,    | <i>to seize.</i>        |
| 9. { Cumbo,    |          |            |            |                         |
| 10. { Incumbo, | incūbui, | incūbitum, | incumbēre, | <i>to lie upon.</i>     |
| Strēpo,        | strēpui, | strēpītum, | strēpēre,  | <i>to make a noise.</i> |

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—tum, or wanting.*

|             |        |         |          |                    |
|-------------|--------|---------|----------|--------------------|
| 11. Cāp-io, | cēpi,  | captum, | cāpēre,  | <i>to take.</i>    |
| 12. Rumpo,  | rūpi,  | ruptum, | rumpēre, | <i>to burst.</i>   |
| 13. Bībo,   | bībi,  | —       | bībēre,  | <i>to drink.</i>   |
| 14. Lambo,  | lambi, | —       | lambēre, | <i>to lick.</i>    |
| 15. Scābo,  | scābi, | —       | scābēre, | <i>to scratch.</i> |

(d.) *Perfect—ivi. Supine—Itum, or wanting.*

|             |                |          |         |                   |
|-------------|----------------|----------|---------|-------------------|
| 16. Cūp-io, | cūpivi,        | cūpītum, | cūpēre, | <i>to desire.</i> |
| 17. Sāp-io, | { sāpivi, or } | —        | sāpēre, | <i>to taste.</i>  |
|             | sāpi,          |          |         |                   |

§ 158.—2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—*Cs, As, and gs* become *z*. *G* becomes *o* before *t*.

|                                   |           |                         |             |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Dico,                          | dixi,     | dictum,                 | dicēre,     | <i>to say.</i>                  |
| 2. Dūco,                          | duxi,     | ductum,                 | ducēre,     | <i>to lead.</i>                 |
| 3. Cōquo,                         | coxi,     | coctum,                 | cōquēre,    | <i>to cook.</i>                 |
| 4. Cingo,                         | cinxī,    | cinctum,                | cingēre,    | <i>to surround.</i>             |
| 5. { Fligo,                       | not used. | —                       | —           | <i>to strike.</i>               |
| { Affligo,                        | affixi,   | afflictum,              | affligēre,  | <i>to strike to the ground.</i> |
| 6. Frigo,                         | frixī,    | frictum, }<br>frixum, } | frigēre,    | <i>to parch, to fry.</i>        |
| 7. Jungo,                         | junxi,    | junctum,                | jungēre,    | <i>to join.</i>                 |
| 8. Lingo,                         | linxi,    | linctum,                | lingēre,    | <i>to lick.</i>                 |
| 9. { (Mungo, not used.)           |           |                         |             |                                 |
| { Emungo,                         | ēmunxi,   | ēmunctum,               | ēmungēre,   | <i>to blow the nose</i>         |
| 10. Plango,                       | planxi,   | planctum,               | plangēre,   | <i>to beat.</i>                 |
| 11. Rēgo,                         | rexī,     | rectum,                 | rēgēre,     | <i>to direct, rule.</i>         |
| 12. { (Spēcio, very seldom used.) |           |                         |             |                                 |
| { Aspicio,                        | aspexi,   | aspectum,               | aspicēre,   | <i>to behold.</i>               |
| 13. Sūgo,                         | suxī,     | suctum,                 | sūgēre,     | <i>to suck.</i>                 |
| 14. Tēgo,                         | texī,     | tectum,                 | tēgēre,     | <i>to cover.</i>                |
| 15. { Tingo,                      | tinxī,    | tinctum,                | { tingēre,  | <i>to dip.</i>                  |
| { Tinguo,                         |           |                         | { tinguēre, |                                 |
| 16. { Ungo,                       | unxi,     | unctum,                 | { ungēre,   | <i>to anoint.</i>               |
| { Unguo,                          |           |                         | { unguēre,  |                                 |

|     |                                                                                              |          |           |            |                                     |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|------------|-------------------------------------|
| 17. | {(Stinguo, not used.)<br>Exstinguo, exstinxi, extinctum, exstinguere, to <i>extinguish</i> . |          |           |            |                                     |
| 18. | Trāho,                                                                                       | traxi,   | tractum,  | trāhère,   | to <i>drag</i> .                    |
| 19. | Vēho,                                                                                        | vexi,    | vectum,   | vēhère,    | to <i>carry</i> .                   |
| 20. | {(Lāo-io, very seldom used.)<br>Allio-io, allexi, allectum, allīcere, to <i>entice</i> .     |          |           |            |                                     |
| 21. | Ango,                                                                                        | anxi,    | —         | angere,    | to <i> vex</i> .                    |
| 22. | Ningit,                                                                                      | ninxit,  | —         | ningere,   | to <i>snow</i> .                    |
| 23. | Fingo,                                                                                       | finxi,   | fictum,   | figere,    | to <i>form</i> , to <i>invent</i> . |
| 24. | Mingo,                                                                                       | minxi,   | minctum,  | mingere,   | to <i>make water</i> .              |
| 25. | Pingo,                                                                                       | pinxi,   | pictum,   | pingere,   | to <i>paint</i> .                   |
| 26. | Stringo,                                                                                     | strinxi, | strictum, | stringere, | to <i>grasp</i> .                   |

(b.) Perfect—*si*. Supine—*sum* and *xum*.

|     |         |                          |          |           |                     |
|-----|---------|--------------------------|----------|-----------|---------------------|
| 27. | Mergo,  | mersi,                   | mersum,  | mergere,  | to <i>sink</i> .    |
| 28. | Spargo, | sparsi,                  | sparsum, | spargere, | to <i>scatter</i> . |
| 29. | Tergo,  | tersi,                   | tersum,  | tergere,  | to <i>wipe</i> .    |
| 30. | Figo,   | fixi,                    | fixum,   | figere,   | to <i>fix</i> .     |
| 31. | Flecto, | flexi,                   | flexum,  | flectere, | to <i>bend</i> .    |
| 32. | Necto,  | nexi ( <i>and-ui</i> ),  | nexum,   | nectere,  | to <i>bind</i> .    |
| 33. | Pecto,  | pexi,                    | pexum,   | pectere,  | to <i>comb</i> .    |
| 34. | Plecto, | plexi ( <i>and-ui</i> ), | plexum,  | plectere, | to <i>plait</i> .   |

(c.) Perfect—*i* (with Reduplication). Supine—*sum* and *tum*.

|     |        |                      |                        |          |                    |
|-----|--------|----------------------|------------------------|----------|--------------------|
| 35. | Pungo, | pēpigi,              | pactum,                | pangere, | to <i>fix</i> .    |
| 36. | Parco, | {pāperci,<br>{pursi, | {parcitum,<br>{parsum, | parcere, | to <i>spare</i> .  |
| 37. | Pungo, | pūpigi,              | punctum,               | pungere, | to <i>prick</i> .  |
| 38. | Tungo, | tētigi,              | tactum,                | tangere, | to <i>touch</i> .  |
| 39. | Disco, | dīdici,              | —                      | discere, | to <i>learn</i> .  |
| 40. | Posco, | pōposci,             | —                      | poscere, | to <i>demand</i> . |

(d.) Perfect—*i* (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

|     |         |        |           |           |                                  |
|-----|---------|--------|-----------|-----------|----------------------------------|
| 41. | Ago,    | ēgi,   | actum,    | agere,    | to <i>do</i> .                   |
| 42. | Fāc-io, | fēci,  | factum,   | fācere,   | to <i>make</i> , to <i>do</i> .  |
| 43. | Frango, | frēgi, | fractum,  | frangere, | to <i>break</i> .                |
| 44. | Fūg-io, | fūgi,  | fugitum,  | fūgere,   | to <i>flee</i> , to <i>fly</i> . |
| 45. | Īco,    | īci,   | ictum,    | icere,    | to <i>strike</i> (a treaty).     |
| 46. | Jāc-io, | jēci,  | jactum,   | jācere,   | to <i>throw</i> .                |
| 47. | Lēgo,   | lēgi,  | lectum,   | lēgere,   | to <i>read</i> .                 |
| 48. | Linquo, | liqui, | (lictum,) | linquere, | to <i>leave</i> .                |
| 49. | Vīcco,  | vīci,  | victum,   | vincere,  | to <i>conquer</i> .              |

(e.) Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum*.

|     |       |        |         |         |                   |
|-----|-------|--------|---------|---------|-------------------|
| 50. | Texo, | texui, | textum, | texere, | to <i>weave</i> . |
|-----|-------|--------|---------|---------|-------------------|

## (f.) Guttural Stem disguised.

|     |        |         |           |          |                     |
|-----|--------|---------|-----------|----------|---------------------|
| 51. | Fluo,  | fluxi,  | fluctum,  | fluere,  | to <i>flow</i> .    |
| 52. | Struo, | struxi, | structum, | struere, | to <i>pile up</i> . |
| 53. | Vivo,  | vixi,   | victum,   | vivere,  | to <i>live</i> .    |

§ 159.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

*NOTE*—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *a*.

|     |           |         |          |           |                      |
|-----|-----------|---------|----------|-----------|----------------------|
| 1.  | Claudo,   | clausi, | clausum, | claudere, | to shut.             |
| 2.  | Divido,   | divisi, | divisum, | dividere, | to divide.           |
| 3.  | Laedo,    | laesi,  | laesum,  | laedere,  | to strike, to injure |
| 4.  | Ludo,     | lusi,   | lusum,   | ludere,   | to play.             |
| 5.  | Plaudo,   | plausi, | plausum, | plaudere, | to clap the hands.   |
| 6.  | Rado,     | rasi,   | rasum,   | radere,   | to scrape.           |
| 7.  | Rodo,     | rosi,   | rosum,   | rodere,   | to gnaw.             |
| 8.  | Trudo,    | trusi,  | trusum,  | trudere,  | to thrust.           |
| 9.  | { Vado,   | —       | —        | vadere,   | to go.               |
|     | { Invado, | invasi, | invasum, | invadere, | to go against.       |
| 10. | Cedo,     | cessi,  | cessum,  | cedere,   | to yield.            |
| 11. | Mitto,    | missi,  | missum,  | mittere,  | to send.             |
| 12. | Quatio,   | —       | quassum, | quatere,  | to shake.            |

(b.) *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

|     |                      |          |           |          |                                  |
|-----|----------------------|----------|-----------|----------|----------------------------------|
| 13. | Cado,                | cecidi,  | casum,    | cadere,  | to fall.                         |
| 14. | Caedo,               | cecidi,  | caesum,   | caedere, | to strike.                       |
| 15. | Pendo,               | pependi, | pensum,   | pendere, | to hang, to weigh.               |
| 16. | Tendo,               | tetendi, | { tensum, | tendere, | to stretch.                      |
|     |                      |          | { tentum, |          |                                  |
| 17. | Tundo,               | tutudi,  | { tunsum, | tundere, | to beat.                         |
|     |                      |          | { tusum,  |          |                                  |
| 18. | { Do in composition, |          |           |          | to put.                          |
|     | Abdo,                | abdidi,  | abdutum,  | abdere,  | to put away, to hide.            |
|     | Addo,                | addidi,  | additum,  | addere,  | to put to, to add.               |
|     | Condo,               | condidi, | conditum, | condere, | to put together, to build, hide. |
|     | Dedo,                | dedidi,  | deditum,  | dedere,  | to put down, to surrender.       |
|     | Edo,                 | edidi,   | editum,   | edere,   | to put forth, to publish.        |
|     | Indo,                | indidi,  | inditum,  | indere,  | to put on.                       |
|     | Perdo,               | perdidi, | perditum, | perdere, | to ruin, to lose.                |
|     | Prodo,               | prodidi, | proditum, | prodere, | to betray.                       |
|     | Reddo,               | reddidi, | redditum, | reddere, | to put back, to restore.         |
|     | Subdo,               | subdidi, | subditum, | subdere, | to put under, to substitute.     |
|     | Trado,               | tradidi, | traditum, | tradere, | to put across, to deliver up.    |
|     | Credo,               | credidi, | creditum, | credere, | to believe, trust.               |
|     | Vendo,               | vendidi, | venditum, | vendere, | to sell.                         |
| 19. | Sisto,               | steti,   | statum,   | sistere, | to cause to stand.               |

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—sum.*

|     |            |          |           |            |                 |
|-----|------------|----------|-----------|------------|-----------------|
| 20. | { (Cando)  |          |           |            |                 |
|     | { Accendo, | accendi, | accensum, | accendere, | to set on fire. |
| 21. | Cudo,      | cudi,    | cusum,    | cudere,    | to hammer.      |
| 22. | Edo,       | edi,     | esum,     | edere,     | to eat.         |

|     |                  |           |            |             |                                       |
|-----|------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|
|     | (Fendo not used, |           |            |             | <i>to strike.)</i>                    |
| 23. | Défendo,         | défendi.  | défensum,  | défendère,  | <i>to ward off, to defend.</i>        |
|     | Offendo,         | offendi,  | offensum,  | offendère,  | <i>to strike against, to assault.</i> |
| 24. | Fodio,           | fodi,     | fossam,    | fodère,     | <i>to dig.</i>                        |
| 25. | Fundo,           | fudi,     | fusum,     | fundère,    | <i>to pour.</i>                       |
| 26. | Mando,           | mandi,    | mansum,    | mandère,    | <i>to chew.</i>                       |
|     |                  | (rare,)   |            |             |                                       |
| 27. | Pando,           | pandi,    | { pansum,  | pandère,    | <i>to spread.</i>                     |
|     |                  |           | { passum,  |             |                                       |
| 28. | Préhendo,        | préhendi, | préhensum, | préhendère, | <i>to grasp.</i>                      |
| 29. | Scando,          | scandi,   | scansum,   | scandère,   | <i>to climb.</i>                      |
| 30. | { Strido,        | stridi,   | —          | stridère,   | <i>to creak.</i>                      |
|     | { Strideo,       |           |            |             |                                       |
| 31. | Verto,           | verti,    | versum,    | vertère,    | <i>to turn.</i>                       |
| 32. | Findo,           | fidi,     | fissum,    | findère,    | <i>to cleave.</i>                     |
| 33. | Scindo,          | scidi,    | scissum,   | scindère,   | <i>to tear.</i>                       |
| 34. | { Frondo,        | —         | { fressum, | frendère,   | <i>to gnash the teeth.</i>            |
|     | { Frondeo,       | —         | { frësum,  | —           |                                       |

## (d.) Other Forms.

|     |         |                     |          |           |                        |
|-----|---------|---------------------|----------|-----------|------------------------|
| 35. | Mëto,   | messui,             | messum,  | mëtère,   | <i>to move.</i>        |
| 36. | Pëto,   | pëtivi or pëtii,    | pëtitum, | pëtère,   | <i>to seek.</i>        |
| 37. | Sido,   | sëdi (rarely sidi), | —        | sidère,   | <i>to settle down.</i> |
| 38. | Sterto, | stertui,            | —        | stertère, | <i>to snore.</i>       |
| 39. | Fido,   | fïsus sum;          | —        | fidère,   | <i>to trust.</i>       |

## § 160.— Verbs the Stems of which end in L, M, N.

## (a.) Perfect—ui. Supine—ïtum or tum.

|     |          |           |                  |            |                    |
|-----|----------|-----------|------------------|------------|--------------------|
| 1.  | Alë,     | älui,     | älïtum or altum, | älère,     | <i>to nourish.</i> |
| 2.  | Cölo,    | cölui,    | cultum,          | cölère,    | <i>to till.</i>    |
| 3.  | Consülo, | consülui, | consultum,       | consülère, | <i>to consult.</i> |
| 4.  | Mölo,    | mölui,    | mölïtum,         | mölère,    | <i>to grind.</i>   |
| 5.  | Ocëülo,  | ocëülui,  | ocëültum,        | ocëülère,  | <i>to conceal.</i> |
| 6.  | Völo,    | völui,    | —                | velle,     | <i>to wish.</i>    |
| 7.  | Frëmo,   | frëmui,   | frëmitum,        | frëmère,   | <i>to roar.</i>    |
| 8.  | Gëmo,    | gëmui,    | gëmitum,         | gëmère,    | <i>to groan.</i>   |
| 9.  | Trëmo,   | trëmui,   | —                | trëmère,   | <i>to tremble.</i> |
| 10. | Vömo,    | vömui,    | vömitum,         | vömère,    | <i>to vomit.</i>   |
| 11. | Gigno,   | gënuui,   | gignëre,         | gënitum,   | <i>to produce.</i> |

## (b.) Perfect with Reduplication.

|     |        |          |           |          |                    |
|-----|--------|----------|-----------|----------|--------------------|
| 12. | Fallo, | fëfelli, | fëlsam,   | fallère, | <i>to deceive.</i> |
| 13. | Pello, | pëpëlli, | pëllam,   | pellère, | <i>to drive.</i>   |
| 14. | Cano,  | cëcëni,  | cëcantum, | cänère,  | <i>to sing.</i>    |



(c.) *Perfect - si. Supine—tum.*

|            |          |           |          |                      |
|------------|----------|-----------|----------|----------------------|
| 15. Cōmo,  | compsi,  | comptum,  | cōmēre,  | <i>to adorn.</i>     |
| 16. Dēmo,  | dempsi,  | demptum,  | dēmēre,  | <i>to take away.</i> |
| 17. Prōmo, | prompsi, | promptum, | prēmēre, | <i>to take out.</i>  |
| 18. Sūmo,  | sumpsi,  | sumptum,  | sūmēre,  | <i>to take up.</i>   |
| 19. Temno, | tempsi,  | temptum,  | temnēre, | <i>to despise.</i>   |

(d.) *Other forms.*

|               |           |            |             |                                          |
|---------------|-----------|------------|-------------|------------------------------------------|
| 20. Percello, | perctili, | perculsum, | percellēre, | <i>to strike down.</i>                   |
| 21. Psallo,   | psalli,   | —          | psallēre,   | <i>to play on a stringed instrument.</i> |
| 22. Vello,    | velli,    | vulsum,    | vellēre,    | <i>to pluck.</i>                         |
| 23. Tollo,    | sustūli,  | sublātum,  | tollēre,    | <i>to raise up.</i>                      |
| ✓ 24. Ēmo,    | ēmi,      | emptum,    | ēmēre,      | <i>to buy or take.</i>                   |
| 25. Prēmo,    | pressi,   | pressum,   | prēmēre,    | <i>to press.</i>                         |
| 26. Līno,     | lēvi,     | litum,     | linēre,     | <i>to smear.</i>                         |
| 27. Sīno,     | sivi,     | situm,     | sīnēre,     | <i>to permit.</i>                        |

*Obs.* Cōmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo are compounds of con, dē, prō, sūb, and ēmo.

§ 161.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in R.*

|              |           |            |           |                                  |
|--------------|-----------|------------|-----------|----------------------------------|
| — 1. Cerno,  | crēvi,    | crētum,    | cernēre,  | <i>to sift, to divide.</i>       |
| 2. Serno,    | sprēvi,   | sprētum,   | spernēre, | <i>to despise.</i>               |
| 3. Sterno,   | strāvi,   | strātum,   | sternēre, | <i>to strew.</i>                 |
| — 4. Gēro,   | gessi,    | gestum,    | gērēre,   | <i>to carry.</i>                 |
| 5. Ūro,      | ussi,     | ustum,     | ūrēre,    | <i>to burn.</i>                  |
| 6. Curro,    | cūcurri,  | cursum,    | currēre,  | <i>to run.</i>                   |
| 7. Fēro,     | tūli,     | lātum,     | ferre,    | <i>to bear, carry.</i>           |
| — 8. Fār-io, | pēpēri,   | partum,    | pārēre,   | <i>to produce.</i>               |
| 9. Quaero,   | quaesivi, | quaesitum, | quaerēre, | <i>to seek.</i>                  |
| — 10. Sēro,  | sēvi,     | sētum,     | sērēre,   | <i>to put in rows, to plant.</i> |
| — 11. Sēro,  | sēvi,     | sātum,     | sērēre,   | <i>to sow.</i>                   |
| 12. Tēro,    | trivi,    | tritum,    | tērēre,   | <i>to rub.</i>                   |
| 13. Verro,   | verri,    | versum,    | verrēre,  | <i>to sweep.</i>                 |

§ 162.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.*

|             |                     |                        |            |                           |
|-------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Depso,   | depsi,              | depstum,               | depsēre,   | <i>to knead.</i>          |
| 2. Pino,    | { pinsui,<br>pinsi, | { pinsitum,<br>pinsum, | pinsēre,   | <i>to pound.</i>          |
| 3. Piso,    | —                   | pistum,                | pisēre,    | <i>to pound.</i>          |
| 4. Viso,    | visi,               | —                      | visēre,    | <i>to visit.</i>          |
| 5. Pōno,    | pōsi,               | pōsitum,               | pōnēre,    | <i>to place.</i>          |
| 6. Arcesso, | arcessivi,          | arcessitum,            | arcessēre, | <i>to send for.</i>       |
| 7. Cāpeso,  | cāpessivi,          | cāpessitum,            | cāpessēre, | <i>to take in hand.</i>   |
| 8. Fācesso, | fācēsi,             | fācessitum,            | fācessēre, | <i>to make, to cause.</i> |
| 9. Lācesso, | lācessivi,          | lācessitum,            | lācessēre, | <i>to provoke.</i>        |

*Obs.* In pōno the root is pōs, the s being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses.

§ 163.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in U, Y.**Perfect—i. Supine—tam.*

|              |                     |                     |            |                |
|--------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. Acuo,     | âcui,               | âcûtum,             | âcuère,    | to sharpen.    |
| 2. Arguo,    | argui,              | argûtum,            | arguère,   | to prove.      |
| 3. Imbuo,    | imbui,              | imbûtum,            | imbuère,   | to soak.       |
| 4. Induo,    | indui,              | indûtum,            | induère,   | to put on.     |
| 5. Exuo,     | exui,               | exûtum,             | exuère,    | to put off.    |
| 6. Minuo,    | minui,              | minûtum,            | minuère,   | to lessen.     |
| 7. Râo,      | ruî,                | rûtum,              | ruère,     | to rush.       |
| 8. Spuo,     | spui,               | spûtum,             | spuère,    | to spit.       |
| 9. Stâtuo,   | stâtui,             | stâtûtum,           | stâtuère,  | to set up.     |
| 10. Suo,     | sui,                | sûtum,              | suère,     | to sew.        |
| 11. Tribuo,  | tribui,             | tribûtum,           | tribuère,  | to distribute. |
| 12. Lâvo,    | lâvi,               | { lautum,<br>lôtum, | lâvère,    | to wash.       |
| 13. Solvo,   | solvi,              | sôlûtum,            | solvère,   | to loosen.     |
| 14. Volvo,   | volvi,              | vôlûtum,            | volvère,   | to roll.       |
| 15. Congruo, | congrui,            | —                   | congruère, | to agree.      |
| 16. Luo,     | lui,                | —                   | luère,     | to alone.      |
| 17. { Nuo,   |                     |                     |            | to nod.)       |
| Abnuo,       | abnui,              | —                   | abnuère,   | to refuse.     |
| Annuo,       | annui,              | —                   | annuère,   | to assent.     |
| 18. Mêtuo,   | mêtui,              | —                   | mêtuère,   | to fear.       |
| 19. Pluit,   | pluit or<br>plûvit, | —                   | pluère,    | to rain.       |
| 20. Sternuo, | sternui,            | —                   | sternuère, | to sneeze.     |

*Obs.* In *fluo, struo, vivo*, the Stem ends in *c* or *g*. See § 158, Nos. 51, 52, 53.

§ 164.—*Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in sco.*

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives. See § 194, 2.

§ 165. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incălesco, incălui, incălescère, to grow warm*, from *căleo, călui, călère, to be warm*. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

|                |            |             |               |                     |
|----------------|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1. Abôlesco,   | abôlêvi,   | abôlîtum,   | abôlescère,   | to grow out of use. |
| 2. Adôlesco,   | adôlêvi,   | adultum,    | adôlescère,   | to grow up.         |
| 3. Exôlesco,   | exôlêvi,   | exôlîtum,   | exôlescère,   | to grow old.        |
| 4. Călesco,    | călui,     | călîtum,    | călescère,    | to grow together.   |
| (ăleo)         |            |             |               |                     |
| 5. Concûpisco, | concûpîvi, | concûpîtum, | concûpiscère, | to desire.          |
| (cûpio)        |            |             |               |                     |
| 6. Convălesco, | convălui,  | convălîtum, | convălescère, | to grow strong.     |
| (văleo)        |            |             |               |                     |
| 7. Exardesco,  | exarsi,    | exarsum,    | exardescère,  | to take fire.       |
| (ardeo)        |            |             |               |                     |

8. Invēterasco, invēterāvi, invēterātum, invēterascēre, *to grow old.*  
(invētero)
9. Obdormisco, obdormīvi, obdormitum, obdormiscēre, *to fall asleep.*  
(dormio)
10. Rēvivisco, rēvixi, rēvictum, rēviviscēre, *to come to life again.*  
(vivo)
11. Scisco, scivi, scitum, sciscēre, *to seek to know, to enact.*  
(scio)

*Obs.* Abōlesco, edōlesco, exōlesco are formed from an obsolete verb *ōleo*, *to grow*.

§ 166. Inceptives formed from Substantives and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

1. Consēnesco, consēnui, — consēnescēre, *to grow old.*  
(sēnex)
2. Ingrāvesco, — — ingrāvescēre, *to grow heavy.*  
(grāvis)
3. Jūvenesco, — — jūvenescēre, *to grow young.*  
(jūvēnis)
4. Mātūresco, mātūrui, — mātūrescēre, *to grow ripe.*  
(mātūrus)
5. Obmūtesco, obmūtui, — obmūtescēre, *to grow dumb.*  
(mūtus)

§ 167. The following Verbs in *scō* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as unde-rived Verbs:

1. Cresco, crēvi, crētum, crescēre, *to grow.*
2. Glisco, — — gliscēre, *to swell.*
3. Hisco, (hio), — — hiscēre, *to gape.*
4. Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, noscēre, *to learn, to know.*
5. Pasco, pāvi, pastum, pascēre, *to feed.*
6. Quiesco, quīēvi, quīētum, quiescēre, *to become quiet.*
7. Susco, suēvi, suētum, suescēre, *to grow accus-tomed.*

*Obs.* In *Nosco* the Perfect signifies *I know*; the Past-Perfect, *I knew*. The Stem is *gno*: hence in composition we have

Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum, agnoscēre, *to recognise.*  
Cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum, cognoscēre, *to learn, to know.*

#### IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 168. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum*: as, *audio, audivi, auditum, audire, to hear*. The following are exceptions:

1. Farcio, farsī, {fartum, farcire, *to cram.*  
{(fartum,)
2. Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, fulcire, *to prop.*

|              |                     |                         |           |                    |
|--------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| 8. Haudio,   | hausi,              | haustum,                | haurire,  | to draw (water).   |
| 4. Sancto,   | sanxi,              | { sancitum,<br>sanctum, | sancire,  | to ratify.         |
| 5. Sarcio,   | sarsi,              | sartum,                 | sarcire,  | to patch.          |
| 6. Sentio,   | sensi,              | sensum,                 | sentire,  | to feel, to think. |
| 7. Saepio,   | saepsi,             | saepum,                 | saepire,  | to fence in.       |
| 8. Vincio,   | vinxi,              | vinctum,                | vincire,  | to bind.           |
| 9. Eo,       | ivi,                | itum,                   | ire,      | to go.             |
| 10. Salio,   | salui or<br>sălii,  | saltum,                 | sălire,   | to leap.           |
| 11. Sēpēlio, | sēpēliui,           | sēpultum,               | sēpēlire, | to bury.           |
| 12. Vēnio,   | vēni,               | ventum,                 | vēnire,   | to come.           |
| 13. Amīcio,  | { amīcui,<br>amixi, | āmictum,                | amīcire,  | to clothe.         |
| 14. Apērio,  | āpēriui,            | āpertum,                | āpērire,  | to open.           |
| 15. Opērio,  | ōpēriui,            | ōpertum,                | ōpērire,  | to cover.          |

## V. DEPONENTS.

§ 169. In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

## § 170. Second Conjugation.

|                           |                                  |                       |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. { Fāteor,<br>Confiteor | fessus sum,<br>confessus sum,    | fātēri,<br>confitēri, | to confess.<br>to confess. |
| 2. Līceor,                | licitus sum,                     | licēri,               | to bid (at a sale).        |
| 3. Mēdeor,                | —                                | mēdēri,               | to heal.                   |
| 4. Mēreor,                | mēritus sum,                     | mērēri,               | to earn, to deserve.       |
| 5. Mīsēreor,              | mīsēritus sum or<br>miserus sum, | mīsērēri,             | to take pity on.           |
| 6. Pollicēor,             | pollicitus sum,                  | pollicēri,            | to promise.                |
| 7. Reor,                  | rātus sum,                       | rēri,                 | to think.                  |
| 8. Tueor,                 | tultus sum,                      | tuēri,                | to look upon, pro-         |
| 9. Vēreor,                | vērītus sum,                     | vērēri,               | to fear. (locl.            |

## § 171. Third Conjugation.

|             |                                  |        |                                 |
|-------------|----------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Fruor,   | { (fructus sum),<br>fructus sum, | frui,  | to enjoy.                       |
| 2. Fungor,  | functus sum,                     | fungi, | to perform.                     |
| 3. Grādior, | gressus sum,                     | grādi, | to step.                        |
| 4. Lābor,   | lapsus sum,                      | lābi,  | to slip.                        |
| 5. Līquor,  | (liquefactus sum),               | liqui, | to melt.                        |
| 6. Lōquor,  | locūtus sum,                     | lōqui, | to speak.                       |
| 7. Mōrior,  | mortuus sum,                     | mōri,  | to die.                         |
| 8. Nitor,   | { nixus sum,<br>nisus,           | niti,  | to strain.                      |
| 9. Pātor,   | passus sum,                      | pāti,  | to suffer.                      |
| 10. Quēror, | questus sum,                     | quēri, | to complain.                    |
| 11. Ringor, | —                                | ringi, | to show the teeth,<br>to snarl. |
| 12. Sēquor, | sēcūtus sum,                     | sēqui, | to follow.                      |

|                              |                  |             |                            |
|------------------------------|------------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 18. Utor,                    | ūsus sum,        | ūti,        | to use.                    |
| 19. { (Verto)<br>Rēvertor,   | (rēversus sum),  | rēverti,    | to return.                 |
| 15. { (Plecto)<br>Amplector, | amplexus sum,    | amplecti,   | } to embrace.              |
| Complector,                  | complexus sum,   | complecti,  |                            |
| 16. { Apiscor,               | aptus sum,       | āpisci,     | to obtain.                 |
| Adipiscor,                   | ādeptus sum,     | ādīpisci,   | to obtain.                 |
| 17. Commīniscor,             | cominēntus sum,  | commīnisci, | to devise.                 |
| 18. Rēmīniscor,              | —                | rēmīnisci,  | to remember.               |
| 19. Dēfētiscor,              | dēfessus sum,    | dēfētisci,  | to grow weary.             |
| 20. Expergiscor,             | experrectus sum, | expergisci, | to wake up.                |
| 21. Irascor,                 | —                | irasci,     | to be angry.               |
| 22. Nanciscor,               | nactus sum,      | nancisci,   | to obtain by chance.       |
| 23. Nascor,                  | nātus sum,       | nasci,      | to be born.                |
| 24. Obliviscor,              | oblītus sum,     | oblīvisci,  | to forget.                 |
| 25. Pāciscor,                | pactus sum,      | pācisci,    | to make an agree-<br>ment. |
| 26. Prōficiscor,             | prōfectus sum,   | prōficisci, | to set out.                |
| 27. Ulciscor,                | ultus sum,       | ulcisci,    | to avenge.                 |
| 28. Vescor,                  | —                | vesci,      | to eat.                    |

## § 172. Fourth Conjugation.

|               |                               |            |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Assentior, | assensus sum,                 | assentiri, | to agree to.                  |
| 2. Blandior,  | blanditus sum,                | blandiri,  | to flatter.                   |
| 3. Expērior,  | expertus sum,                 | expēiri,   | to try.                       |
| 4. Oppērior,  | { oppertus sum,<br>oppēritus, | oppēiri,   | to wait for.                  |
| 5. Largior,   | largitus sum,                 | largiri,   | to give bountifully.          |
| 6. Mentior,   | mentitus sum,                 | mentiri,   | to lie.                       |
| 7. Mētiōr,    | mensus sum,                   | mētiri,    | to measure.                   |
| 8. Mōlior,    | mōlitus sum,                  | mōliri,    | to labour.                    |
| 9. Ordior,    | orsus sum,                    | ordiri,    | to begin.                     |
| 10. Orior,    | ortus sum,                    | ōriri,     | to rise.                      |
| 11. Partior,  | partitus sum,                 | partiri,   | to divide.                    |
| 12. Pōtior,   | pōtitus sum,                  | pōtiri,    | to obtain posses-<br>sion of. |
| 13. Pūnior,   | pūnitus sum,                  | pūniri,    | to punish.                    |
| 14. Sortior,  | sortitus sum,                 | sortiri,   | to take by lot.               |

In *Orior* the *Pres. Ind.* follows the 3rd Conjugation : ōrēris, ōrītur, ōrīmur.

In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ōrērer and ōrīrer are found. The com-  
pounds cōōrior and exōrior, to arise, are conjugated like *ōrior* ;  
but ādōrior, to attack, has ādōrīris, ādōrītur.

## COMPOUND VERB,

1. The vowel of the simple verb is frequently changed in composition. The rules for these changes are given in § 206.

2. In compound verbs the Reduplication of the Perfect is usually omitted. See § 107, 4. *Ōbe.*

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

## DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 173. Words are either Simple or Compound.

§ 174. A *Simple Word* may be either,

(1.) A *Pure Root*, without any addition whatever: as, *ad*, *lib*, *sub*; *nō* or *nōn*; with other indeclinable words.

*Obs.* Some words have become identical with pure roots by the loss of a *Suffix* properly belonging to them: as, *fēr*, *bear thou*; *dīc*, *say thou*; *fūr*, *a thief*; and the like.

Or (2.) A word derived from a *Single Root* by the addition of a *Suffix*: as, *dīc-o*, *dīc-tio*, *dīc-ax*, from *dīc*.

§ 175. A *Compound Word* is formed from two or more roots: as, *hōmīcīda*, *a manslayer*, from *hōm-o*, *a man*, and *caed-o*, *to kill*.

§ 176. A *Root* is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

§ 177. A *Suffix* is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as, the *s* of the Nominative Case Singular in all Declensions except the First; the Adjectival terminations *-ōsus*, *-īnus*, *-ilis*, etc.

*Obs.* For the sake of convenience the term *Suffix* will hereafter be applied to the terminations used in the *derivation* of words, without regard to their inflexion.

§ 178. A *Prefix* is a syllable placed before the root to modify its meaning: as, *amb-io*, *to go around*. In inflexion a *prefix* is found only in certain Tenses of Verbs: as, *te tīg-i* (Root, *-tag*), *mo-mord-i* (Root, *mord*), etc.

§ 179. The *Stem* of a word is that part which remains after taking away the inflexions: as, *āgilis* (Stem, *āgīli*) *active*; *vōlens* (Stem, *vōlent*), *willing*; from the Roots *ag* (*act*), *vol* (*will*).

§ 180. Some words are formed at once from the Root simply by adding the inflexional terminations. These are called *Primary Words*; and in them the Root and the Stem are the same: as,

|                     | Stem and Root | AG,  | <i>set in motion, act.</i> |
|---------------------|---------------|------|----------------------------|
| āg-o,               |               | DUC, | <i>lead.</i>               |
| duc-o, dux (duc-s), | "             | REG, | <i>rule.</i>               |
| rēg-o, rex (reg-s), | "             | LEG, | <i>read.</i>               |
| lāg-o, lex (leg-s), | "             | PED, | <i>the foot.</i>           |
| pēs, pēd-is,        | "             | SOL, | <i>the sun.</i>            |
| sōl, sōlis,         | "             | SAL, | <i>salt.</i>               |
| sāl, salis,         | "             |      |                            |

## § 181. I. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. *or* (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive : as,

|          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| ām-or,   | love,    | from āmo |
| clām-or, | a shout, | „ clāmo  |
| cāl-or,  | warmth,  | „ cāleo  |
| tīm-or,  | fear,    | „ tīmeo  |
| fāv-or,  | favour,  | „ fāveo  |
| fūr-or,  | madness, | „ fūro.  |

*Obs.* When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. *tor* (*m.*) denotes the doer : as,

|           |              |                            |
|-----------|--------------|----------------------------|
| āmā-tor,  | a lover,     | from āmo                   |
| audi-tor, | a hearer,    | „ audio                    |
| mōnī-tor, | an adviser,  | „ mōneo                    |
| vic-tor,  | a conqueror, | „ vinco (root <i>vio</i> ) |
| vēnā-tor, | a hunter,    | „ vēnor                    |
| lec-tor,  | a reader,    | „ lego.                    |

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix* : as,

|          |           |             |
|----------|-----------|-------------|
| victor,  | victrix,  | conqueress. |
| vēnātor, | vēnātrix, | huntress.   |

*Obs.* The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine : as, *cursor*, a runner, from *curro* (*oursum*).

3. *io* and *tio* (*Gen. ōnis, f.*) denote the action : as,

|            |                        |                           |
|------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| obsid-io,  | a siege,               | from obside               |
| oblīv-io,  | forgetfulness,         | „ obliviscor              |
| contāg-io, | a touching, contagion, | „ contingo, root (con)TAG |
| ac-tio,    | doing,                 | „ āgo                     |
| lec-tio,   | reading,               | „ lēgo                    |
| scrip-tio, | writing,               | „ scribo.                 |

4. *tus* (*Gen. tūs, m.*) also denotes the action : as,

|           |              |          |
|-----------|--------------|----------|
| ac-tus,   | doing,       | from āgo |
| audi-tus, | hearing,     | „ audio  |
| auc-tus,  | an increase, | „ augeo  |
| can-tus,  | singing,     | „ cāno.  |

*Obs.* The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine : as, *versio* and *versus* from *verto* ; *visio* and *visus* from *video*.

5. *tūra* also usually denotes the action : as,

|             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| mercā-tūra, | trading,    | from mercor |
| āper-tūra,  | an opening, | „ āpērio    |
| cinc-tūra,  | a girding,  | „ cingo     |
| junc-tūra,  | a joining,  | „ jungo     |

6. *ium* (n.) denotes an act or state : as,

|              |                  |             |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|
| gaud-ium,    | joy,             | from gaudéo |
| od-ium,      | hatred,          | " odi       |
| incend-ium,  | a conflagration, | " incendo   |
| aedific-ium, | a building,      | " aedifico  |

7. *mēn* (Gen. *mīnis* n.) usually denotes an instrument : as,

|           |                |           |
|-----------|----------------|-----------|
| flū-men,  | a river,       | from fluo |
| lū-men,   | a light,       | " luceo   |
| sōlā-men, | a consolation, | " solō    |
| teg-men,  | a covering,    | " tēgo.   |

*Obs.* The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force : as, *agmen*, *that which is led*, an army marching ; *gestāmen*, *that which is carried*, etc.

8. *mentum* (n.) frequently denotes an instrument : as,

|                |                 |            |
|----------------|-----------------|------------|
| dōct-mentum,   | a proof,        | from doceo |
| impēdi-mentum, | a hindrance,    | " impēdio  |
| mō-mentum,     | a moving force, | " mōveo    |
| ornā-mentum,   | an ornament,    | " orno.    |

9. *būlum*, *cūlum*, and *trum* (n.) (*trum* and *trum* after *l*), also denote an instrument : as,

|                |                   |            |
|----------------|-------------------|------------|
| vēnā-būlum,    | a hunting-spear,  | from vēnor |
| pā-būlum,      | fodder,           | " pascor   |
| gūbernā-cūlum, | a rudder          | " gubernā  |
| fer-cūlum,     | a tray,           | " fero     |
| lāvācrum,      | a bath,           | " lāvo     |
| fulcrum,       | a prop,           | " fulcio   |
| ventilābrum,   | a winnowing-fork, | " ventilo  |
| ārātrum,       | a plough,         | " āro.     |

*Obs.* 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is *ūlum* only : as,

|            |           |            |
|------------|-----------|------------|
| jāc-ūlum,  | a dart,   | from jācio |
| cing-ūlum, | a girdle, | " cingo.   |

*Obs.* 2. Sometimes the Suffix *būlum* signifies a place : as, *stā-būlum*, *a standing-place or stall*, from *sto* (*sta-re*).

10. *ies* (f.) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action : as,

|            |         |                                  |
|------------|---------|----------------------------------|
| fācies,    | figure, | from fācio                       |
| effigies,  | image   | " effingo (root <i>ex-fig.</i> ) |
| congēries, | a heap, | " congēro                        |

11. *mnus* (m.), passive or middle participial form (Gr. *-όμενος*) : as,

|            |                                                      |          |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| ālumnus,   | nurseling, foster-son,                               | from ālo |
| Vertumnus, | god of the seasons [ <i>he that turns himself</i> ], | " verto. |

## § 182. II. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. *ārius* (m.) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation ; as,

|               |                |               |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| argent-ārius, | a silversmith, | from argentum |
| statū-ārius,  | a statuary,    | " statua      |
| aer-ārius,    | a coppersmith, | " aes         |
| sic-ārius,    | an assassin,   | " vīca.       |



2. **ārium** (*n.*) denotes the place where anything is kept : as,

|               |              |                 |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
| arm-ārium     | a cupboard,  | from arma, orum |
| avi-ārium,    | an aviary,   | „ avis          |
| columb-ārium, | a dove-cote, | „ columbia      |
| aer-ārium,    | a treasury,  | „ aes.          |

*Obs.* *ārius* and *ārium* are properly the Suffixes of Adjectives. See § 187, 9.

3. **ina** (*f.*) denotes an employment, and also the place where the employment is carried on : as,

|            |                     |              |
|------------|---------------------|--------------|
| mēdic-ina, | the healing art,    | from mēdicus |
| offic-ina, | a workshop,         | „ officium   |
| sutr-ina,  | a shoemaker's shop, | „ sutor.     |

*Obs.* *officina* is a contraction for *ōpificina* (*ōpus*, *fācio*).

Sometimes *ina* denotes simply the female : as,

|           |          |           |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| rēg-ina,  | a queen, | from rex  |
| gall-ina, | a hen,   | „ gallus. |

*Obs.* *ina* is properly a feminine Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 7.

4. **ātus** (*Gen. us, m.*) and **ūra** (*f.*), added to Substantives designating public officers, denote the office : as,

|              |              |             |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| consul-ātus, | consulship,  | from consul |
| tribūn-ātus, | tribuneship, | „ tribūnus  |
| cens-ūra,    | ensorship,   | „ censor    |
| praet-ūra,   | praetorship, | „ praetor.  |

5. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an employment, condition, &c. : as,

|               |              |                        |
|---------------|--------------|------------------------|
| sacerdōt-ium, | priesthood,  | from sacerdōs (-dōtis) |
| ministēr-ium, | service,     | „ ministēr             |
| exsil-ium,    | exile,       | „ exsul                |
| hospit-ium,   | hospitality, | „ hospes (-pitis).     |

6. **āl** (*n.*) and **ār** (*n.*) denote a material object : as,

|          |            |                  |           |
|----------|------------|------------------|-----------|
| ānim-āl, | an animal, | from ānima,      | life.     |
| calcār,  | a spur,    | „ calx (calc-s), | the heel. |

7. **ētum** (*n.*) affixed to names of trees or plants denotes the place where they grow in a quantity, and also the trees themselves collectively : as,

|             |                    |             |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------|
| myrt-ētum,  | a myrtle-grove,    | from myrtus |
| querc-ētum, | an oak-plantation, | „ quercus   |
| ōliv-ētum,  | an olive-yard,     | „ ōliva     |
| vin-ētum,   | a vineyard,        | „ vīnea.    |

8. **ile** (*Gen. is, n.*) affixed to the names of animals denotes a place for them : as,

|          |                      |                 |
|----------|----------------------|-----------------|
| bōv-ile, | an ox-stall,         | from bos, bōvis |
| ēqu-ile, | a stable for horses, | „ equus         |
| ōv-ile,  | a sheep-fold,        | „ ōvis.         |

*Obs.* *ile* is properly a neuter Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 4.

## § 183. DIMINUTIVES.

Diminutives denote not only *smallness*, but also *endearment*, *commiseration*, or *contempt*. They follow the gender of the substantives from which they are derived, and are formed by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. *ulus, ūla, ūlum*, added to substantives of the First and Second

Declensions : as,

|             |                  |            |
|-------------|------------------|------------|
| nid-ulus,   | a little nest,   | from nidus |
| hort-ulus,  | a little garden, | " hortus   |
| riv-ulus,   | a little river,  | " rivus    |
| mens-ŭla,   | a little table,  | " mensa    |
| silv-ŭla,   | a little wood,   | " silva    |
| virg-ŭla,   | a little twig,   | " virga    |
| capit-ŭlum, | a small head,    | " caput    |
| sax-ŭlum,   | a small rock,    | " saxum    |
| scut-ŭlum,  | a small shield,  | " scutum.  |

2 *cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum*, added to substantives of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions : as,

|               |                   |             |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------|
| frater-cŭlus, | a little brother, | from frater |
| flos-cŭlus,   | a little flower,  | " flos      |
| versŭ-cŭlus,  | a little verse,   | " versus    |
| mater-cŭla,   | a poor mother,    | " mater     |
| nāvŭ-cŭla,    | a small ship,     | " nāvis     |
| āvŭ-cŭla,     | a small bird,     | " āvis      |
| rē-cŭla,      | a small matter,   | " rēs       |
| corpus-cŭlum, | a small body,     | " corpus    |
| mŭnus-cŭlum,  | a small present,  | " mŭnus     |
| rētŭ-cŭlum,   | a little net,     | " rēte.     |

Obs. 1. If a vowel precede the Suffixes *ulus, ŭla, ŭlum*, they become *ulus, ŭla, ŭlum* : as,

|              |                    |             |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------|
| fili-ulus,   | a little son,      | from filiŭs |
| malle-ulus,  | a small hammer,    | " malleus   |
| fili-ŭla,    | a little daughter, | " filia     |
| line-ŭla,    | a little line,     | " linea     |
| nēgōti-ŭlum, | a little business, | " nēgōtium  |
| ingēni-ŭlum, | a little talent,   | " ingēnium. |

Obs. 2. If the final vowel of the stem of the primitive is preceded by *i, a, or r*, and in a few other cases, a contraction takes place, and the termination of the diminutive becomes *ellus, ella, ellum*, and sometimes, but rarely, *illŭs, illa, illum* : as,

|           |                  |             |               |
|-----------|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| ocellus,  | a little eye,    | from ocŭlus | (Stem, ocŭlo) |
| libellus, | a little book,   | " liber     | ( " libro)    |
| lapillus, | a little stone,  | " lapis     | ( " lapid)    |
| cātella,  | a little chain,  | " cātēna    | ( " cātēna)   |
| anguilla, | a little snake,  | " anguis    | ( " angui)    |
| sigillum, | a little figure, | " signum    | ( " signo).   |

Obs. 3. If the Stem of the primitive ends in *c* or *g*, *t* or *d*, the diminutives are generally formed by adding *ulus, ŭla, ŭlum* : as,

|            |                |                    |
|------------|----------------|--------------------|
| rēg-ulus,  | a petty king,  | from rex (reg-e)   |
| radic-ŭla, | a little root, | " radic (radic-e). |

## § 184. PATRONYMICS.

Patronymics are Greek words, used by the Latin poets, which designate a person by a name derived from that of his father or ancestor.

Masculine Patronymics end in :

1. *ides* : as, Priām-ides, a son of Priamus.
2. *ides* : as, Atr-ides, a son of Atreus.
3. *ādes* and *iādes* : as, Aene-ādes, a son of Aeneas; Atlant-iades, a son of Atlas.

*Obs.* Patronymics in *ides* (ἰδης) are only formed from Proper Names in *eus* (εὖς).

Feminine Patronymics end in :

1. *is*, *Gen. idis* : as, Tantal-is, a daughter of Tantalus.
2. *ēis*, *Gen. ēidis* : as, Nel-ēis, a daughter of Neleus.
3. *ias*, *Gen. iādis* : as, Laert-ias, a daughter of Laertes.
4. *ine* : as, Neptūn-ine, a daughter of Neptuneus.
5. *ōne* : as, Acrisi-ōne, a daughter of Acrisius.

## § 185. III. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Substantives derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes :—

1. *ia* (*f.*) : as,
 

|             |               |             |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| grāt-ia,    | favour,       | from grātus |
| insān-ia,   | madness,      | " insānus   |
| miser-ia,   | wretchedness, | " miser     |
| prudent-ia, | prudence,     | " prudens   |
2. *tia* (*f.*) : as,
 

|            |           |             |
|------------|-----------|-------------|
| laetī-tia, | joy,      | from laetus |
| justī-tia, | justice,  | " justus    |
| mollī-tia, | softness, | " mollis    |
| pigrī-tia, | sloth,    | " piger     |
3. *tās* (*Gen. tātis, f.*) : as,
 

|              |             |            |
|--------------|-------------|------------|
| bōnī-tas,    | goodness,   | from bōnus |
| vērī-tas,    | truth,      | " vērus    |
| crūdēlī-tas, | cruelty,    | " crūdēlis |
| atrōcī-tas,  | fierceness, | " atrox    |
4. *tūdo* (*Gen. tūdinis, f.*) : as,
 

|              |           |            |
|--------------|-----------|------------|
| altī-tūdo,   | height,   | from altus |
| aegrī-tūdo,  | sickness, | " aeger    |
| fortī-tūdo,  | bravery,  | " fortis   |
| similī-tūdo, | likeness, | " similis  |
5. *mōnia* (*f.*) : as,
 

|               |            |              |
|---------------|------------|--------------|
| sanctī-mōnia, | sanctity,  | from sanctus |
| castī-mōnia,  | purity,    | " castus     |
| ācrī-mōnia    | sharpness, | " ācer       |

## CHAPTER XXIX.—DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

## § 186. I. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. *bundus*, intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle.  
See § 110, 3.

2. *idus* denotes the quality expressed by a verb : as,  

|                    |                  |                    |
|--------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| <i>frig-idus</i> , | <i>cold</i> ,    | from <i>frigeo</i> |
| <i>mād-idus</i> ,  | <i>wet</i> ,     | " <i>mādeo</i>     |
| <i>tīm-idus</i> ,  | <i>fearful</i> , | " <i>timeo</i>     |
| <i>vāl-idus</i> ,  | <i>strong</i> ,  | " <i>vāleo</i> .   |

3. *ilis* and *bilis* denote the possibility of a thing in a passive sense : as,

|                    |                        |                   |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>dōo-ilis</i> ,  | <i>teachable</i> ,     | from <i>dōceo</i> |
| <i>fāc-ilis</i> ,  | <i>doable (easy)</i> , | " <i>fācio</i>    |
| <i>āmā-bilis</i> , | <i>loveable</i> ,      | " <i>āmo</i>      |
| <i>mō-bilis</i> ,  | <i>moveable</i> ,      | " <i>mōveo</i> .  |

(= *inōvī-bilis*)

4. *ax* denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one : as,

|                  |                     |                   |
|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>aud-ax</i> ,  | <i>daring</i> ,     | from <i>audeo</i> |
| <i>ēd-ax</i> ,   | <i>gluttonous</i> , | " <i>ēdo</i>      |
| <i>lōqu-ax</i> , | <i>talkative</i> ,  | " <i>lōquor</i>   |
| <i>vōr-ax</i> ,  | <i>voracious</i> ,  | " <i>vōro</i> .   |

*Obs.* The following Suffixes are less common :

- |                        |                     |                    |                      |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>cundus</i> : as, | <i>irā-cundus</i> , | <i>angry</i> ,     | from <i>ira-scor</i> |
|                        | <i>fā-undus</i> ,   | <i>eloquent</i>    | " <i>fāri</i>        |
| 2. <i>tilus</i> : as,  | <i>quēr-tilus</i> , | <i>querulous</i> , | " <i>quēror</i> .    |

## § 187. II. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. *eus* denotes the material, and sometimes, but rarely, resemblance : as,

|                     |                     |                                  |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>aur-eus</i> ,    | <i>golden</i> ,     | from <i>aurum</i>                |
| <i>virgīn-eus</i> , | <i>maidenlike</i> , | " <i>virgo</i> , - <i>inis</i> . |

Also -*nus*, *made of*; appended to stems of nouns denoting *trees*; as *ācer-nus*, *made of maple*, from *ācer*, *a maple tree*; *quer-nus* [*quero-nus*], *oaken*; from *querens*.

2. *icius* or *itius* denotes the material, or relation to something : as,

|                       |                                |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>lātēr-icius</i> ,  | <i>made of bricks</i> ,        | from <i>lāter</i>  |
| <i>tribūn-icius</i> , | <i>relating to a tribune</i> , | " <i>tribūnus</i>  |
| <i>aedil-icius</i> ,  | <i>relating to an aedile</i> , | " <i>aedilis</i> . |

*Obs.* 1. *āceus* has the same meaning, but is rare : as, *argill-āceus*, *made of clay*, from *argilla*.

*Obs.* 2. Adjectives in *icius* derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its kind : as, *commenticius*, *feign'd*.

3. *Icus* denotes belonging or relating to a thing : as,  
 bell-*icus*, relating to war, from *bellum*  
 civ-*icus*, relating to a citizen, " *civis*  
 class-*icus*, relating to a fleet, " *classis*.

*Obs.* The following Adjectives in *icus* have I :

|                   |                   |      |                          |
|-------------------|-------------------|------|--------------------------|
| <i>āmicus</i> ,   | <i>friendly</i> , | from | <i>āmo</i> , <i>āmor</i> |
| <i>anticus</i> ,  | <i>front</i> ,    | "    | <i>antē</i>              |
| <i>posticus</i> , | <i>hinder</i> ,   | "    | <i>post</i> .            |
| <i>apricus</i> ,  | <i>sunny</i> ,    | "    | <i>āperio</i> (?)        |

4. *ilis* has the same meaning : as,  
 host-*ilis*, *hostile*, from *hostis*  
 serv-*ilis*, *slavish*, " *servus*  
 puēr-*ilis*, *childish*, " *puer*.

5. *alis* has the same meaning : as,  
 fāt-*alis*, *fatal*, from *fātum*  
 rēg-*alis*, *kingly*, " *rex*  
 vit-*alis*, *vital*, " *vita*.

*Obs.* If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *i*, the Suffix of the Adjective is *āris* (comp. § 181, 9) : as,

|                     |                                   |                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>pōpūl-āris</i> , | <i>pertaining to the people</i> , | from <i>pōpūlus</i>               |
| <i>sālūt-āris</i> , | <i>salutary</i> ,                 | " <i>sālūs</i> , <i>sālūtis</i> . |

6. *ius* has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names : as,

|                     |                                  |                   |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>patr-ius</i> ,   | <i>pertaining to a father</i> ,  | from <i>pāter</i> |
| <i>sōrōr-ius</i> ,  | <i>pertaining to a sister</i> ,  | " <i>sōror</i>    |
| <i>ōrātōr-ius</i> , | <i>pertaining to an orator</i> , | " <i>ōrātōr</i> . |

7. *inus* has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals : as,

|                   |                                 |                   |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>cān-inus</i> , | <i>pertaining to a dog</i> ,    | from <i>cānis</i> |
| <i>ēqu-inus</i> , | <i>pertaining to a horse</i> ,  | " <i>ēquus</i>    |
| <i>div-inus</i> , | <i>pertaining to the gods</i> , | " <i>divus</i> .  |

8. *ārus* has the same meaning : as,

|                    |                                   |                                 |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>urb-ārus</i> ,  | <i>pertaining to a city</i> ,     | from <i>urbs</i>                |
| <i>font-ārus</i> , | <i>pertaining to a fountain</i> , | " <i>fons</i> , <i>fontis</i>   |
| <i>mont-ārus</i> , | <i>pertaining to a mountain</i> , | " <i>mons</i> , <i>montis</i> . |

9. *ārius* has the same meaning : as,

|                       |                                |                               |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>agr-ārius</i> ,    | <i>pertaining to land</i> ,    | from <i>āgēr</i>              |
| <i>grēg-ārius</i> ,   | <i>belonging to a flock</i> ,  | " <i>grēx</i> , <i>grēgis</i> |
| <i>lēgiōn-ārius</i> , | <i>belonging to a legion</i> , | " <i>lēgiō</i> .              |

*Obs.* *ārius* and *ārium* are often used as the Suffixes of Substantives.  
 See § 182.

10. *ōsus* denotes fullness : as,

|                       |                          |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>lāpīd-ōsus</i> ,   | <i>full of stones</i> ,  | from <i>lāpis</i>  |
| <i>pēricul-ōsus</i> , | <i>full of dangers</i> , | " <i>pēriculum</i> |
| <i>ānim-ōsus</i> ,    | <i>full of courage</i> , | " <i>ānimus</i> .  |

11. *lentus*, usually preceded by the vowel *u* or *o*, also denotes fullness: as,

|                         |                          |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| fraud- <i>u</i> lentus, | <i>full of deceit,</i>   | from <i>fraus</i> ( <i>fraud-s</i> ) |
| vi- <i>o</i> lentus,    | <i>full of violence,</i> | „ <i>vis</i>                         |

12. *atus*, sometimes *itus* and *utus*, denote having something or provided with something: as,

|                    |                                      |                 |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>ala</i> -tus,   | <i>furnished with wings, winged,</i> | from <i>ala</i> |
| <i>tog</i> -atus,  | „ <i>a toga,</i>                     | „ <i>toga</i>   |
| <i>aur</i> -itus,  | „ <i>ears,</i>                       | „ <i>auris</i>  |
| <i>corn</i> -utus, | „ <i>horns, horned,</i>              | „ <i>cornu</i>  |

### § 188. III. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM PROPER NAMES.

Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix *anus* or *ianus*: as,

|                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Mari</i> -anus,     | from <i>Marius</i> |
| <i>Sull</i> -anus,     | „ <i>Sulla</i>     |
| <i>Gracch</i> -anus,   | „ <i>Gracchus</i>  |
| <i>Cicērōn</i> -ianus, | „ <i>Cicēro</i>    |

The Suffix *inus* is rare: as,

*Verr*-inus (punningly), from *Verres* (or *verres*, a hog)

*Obs.* From Greek names of men we have the Suffixes *eus* or *ius* and *leus*: as,

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Eplēūr</i> -eus,   | from <i>Eplēūrus</i> |
| <i>Aristōtēl</i> -ius | „ <i>Aristōtēles</i> |
| <i>Plātōn</i> -leus,  | „ <i>Plātō</i>       |

The poets form Adjectives in *eus* from Roman names: as,

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Rōmūl</i> -eus, | from <i>Rōmūlus</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------|

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. *ensis*: as,

|                       |                                      |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Cann</i> -ensis,   | from <i>Cannae</i>                   |
| <i>Cōm</i> -ensis,    | „ <i>Cōmum</i>                       |
| <i>Sulmōn</i> -ensis, | „ <i>Sulmo</i> ( <i>Sulmōn-is</i> ). |

2. *inus*, from names of towns in *ia* and *ium*: as,

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Amēr</i> -inus, | from <i>Amēria</i> |
| <i>Caud</i> -inus, | „ <i>Caudium</i>   |

3. *anus*, from names of towns in *a* and *ae*, and from some in *um* and *i*: as,

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Rōm</i> -anus,    | from <i>Rōma</i>  |
| <i>Thēb</i> -anus,   | „ <i>Thēbae</i>   |
| <i>Tuscūl</i> -anus, | „ <i>Tuscūlum</i> |
| <i>Fund</i> -anus,   | „ <i>Fundī</i>    |

- †. *as, Gen. &is*, chiefly from names of towns in *num*, but sometimes from those in *na* and *nae*: *as*,

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Arpinās, | from Arpinum |
| Cāpēnās, | „ Cāpēna     |
| Fidēnās, | „ Fidēnae.   |

*Obs. 1.* These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants.

*Obs. 2.* In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius*: *as*,

|              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| Cōrinth-ius, | from Cōrinthus. |
|--------------|-----------------|

§ 190. Sometimes Adjectives in *icus* are formed from the names of people, especially when the latter are used only as Substantives: *as*,

|                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Gall-icus, <i>Gallia</i> , | from Gallus, <i>a Gaul</i> . |
| Arāb-icus, <i>Arabic</i> , | „ Arabs, <i>an Arab</i> .    |

*Obs.* The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people: *as*, Hispānia, *Spain*, from Hispānus. Adjectives in *ensis* derived from such names denote some relation to the country, not to the people: *as*, exercitus Hispāniensis, *an army stationed in Spain*, not an army consisting of Spaniards; but, on the other hand, spartum Hispānicum is a plant growing in Spain; similarly Gallicānus from Gallicus.

## CHAPTER XXX.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

### § 191. I. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Substantives and Adjectives by the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: *as*,

|                                              |                     |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| mātūro, <i>I make ripe</i> ,                 | from mātūrus        |
| libēro, <i>I make free</i> ,                 | „ liber             |
| rōbōro, <i>I make strong, I strengthen</i> , | „ rōbūr (rōbōr-is). |

*Obs. A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed: as,*

|                           |            |
|---------------------------|------------|
| finio, <i>I finish</i> ,  | from finis |
| mollio, <i>I soften</i> , | „ mollis.  |

§ 192. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be* or *to provide oneself with* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: *as*,

|              |                              |                |
|--------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| ancillor,    | <i>I am a maid-servant</i> , | from ancilla   |
| āquor,       | <i>I fetch water</i> ,       | „ āqua         |
| laetor,      | <i>I am joyful</i> ,         | „ laetus       |
| philōsophor, | <i>I am a philosopher</i> ,  | „ philōsophus. |

§ 193. **Derivative Intransitive Verbs** are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed in a similar manner from Substantives and Adjectives: as,

|         |                    |             |
|---------|--------------------|-------------|
| calveo, | <i>I am bald,</i>  | from calvus |
| albeo,  | <i>I am white,</i> | „ albus.    |

*Obs.* Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 194, 2): as, *dūresco* (*dūreo*), *I grow hard*, from *dūrus*.

## § 194. II. VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

1. **Frequentative Verbs** express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding *ito* to the Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine of the other Conjugations: as,

|             |                          |                    |
|-------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| clam-ito,   | <i>I cry out often,</i>  | from clāmo         |
| rōg-ito,    | <i>I ask often,</i>      | „ rōgo             |
| mīn-itor,   | <i>I threaten often,</i> | „ mīnor            |
| lect-ito,   | <i>I read often,</i>     | „ lēgo, lectum     |
| script-ito, | <i>I write often,</i>    | „ scribo, scriptum |
| vent-ito,   | <i>I come often,</i>     | „ vēnio, ventum.   |

*Obs.* Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the Verb: as,

|        |                                  |                    |
|--------|----------------------------------|--------------------|
| curso, | <i>I run hither and thither,</i> | from curro, cursum |
| salto, | <i>I dance,</i>                  | „ sāllo, saltum.   |

2. **Inceptive Verbs** express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding *sco* (*asco, esco, isco*), 3, to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs: as,

|              |                            |           |
|--------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| lāb-asco,    | <i>I begin to totter,</i>  | from lābo |
| cāl-esco,    | <i>I grow warm,</i>        | „ cāleo   |
| trēm-isco,   | <i>I begin to tremble,</i> | „ trēmo   |
| obdormi-sco, | <i>I fall asleep,</i>      | „ dormio  |
| sēn-esco,    | <i>I grow old,</i>         | „ sēnex.  |

3. **Desiderative Verbs** express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding *ūrio*, and dropping the *um* of the termination: as,

|              |                         |                     |
|--------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| ēs-ūrio,     | <i>I long to eat,</i>   | from ēdo, ēsum      |
| script-ūrio, | <i>I long to write,</i> | „ scribo, scriptum. |

*Obs.* By analogy is formed *Sullatūrio*, *I long to play the part of Sulla*.

4. **Diminutive Verbs** express a diminution of the action and end in *illo* (*illāre, 1*): as.

|                |                    |             |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------|
| cant-illo,     | <i>I warble,</i>   | from canto  |
| sorb-illo,     | <i>I sip,</i>      | „ sorbeo    |
| conscrib-illo, | <i>I scribble,</i> | „ conscribo |



§ 195. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation are sometimes derived from Transitive Verbs of the Third Conjugation, the latter signifying a momentary act and the former a state : as,

|                     |                   |                    |         |          |                |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------|----------|----------------|
| jacio,              | jācere,           | to throw,          | jaceo,  | jācere,  | to lie.        |
| pendo,              | pendere,          | to hang, to weigh, | pendeo, | pendere, | to be hanging. |
| pārio,              | pārere,           | to bring forth,    | pāreo,  | pārere,  | to be visible. |
| (cando, candere),   | } to set on fire, |                    | candeo, | candere, | to be burning. |
| incendo, incendere, |                   |                    |         |          |                |

## CHAPTER XXXI.—DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 196. Adverbs in ē are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, or from Perfect Participles Passive : as,

|          |              |               |
|----------|--------------|---------------|
| mōdestē, | modestly,    | from mōdestus |
| pulchrē, | beautifully, | „ pulcher     |
| doctē,   | learnedly,   | „ doctus.     |

Obs. 1. From bōnus comes bēnē, from mālus comes mālē, both with the final e short. From vāllidus, strong, comes valdē.

Obs. 2. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in tēr as well as in ē : as,

|            |             |              |               |
|------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| dūrē,      | dūrītēr,    | severely,    | from dūrus    |
| fīrmē,     | fīrmītēr,   | firmly,      | „ fīrmus.     |
| gnāvē,     | gnāvītēr,   | actively,    | „ gnāvus      |
| hūmānē,    | hūmānītēr,  | courteously, | „ hūmānus     |
| largē,     | largītēr,   | bounteously, | „ largus      |
| lūcūlentē, | lūcūlentēr, | splendidly,  | „ lūcūlentus. |

From viōlentus, vehement, there is only viōlentēr ; the form viōlens is never used in prose.

§ 197. Adverbs in ō are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and from Perfect Participles Passive, and are properly Ablatives Singular : as,

|         |             |             |
|---------|-------------|-------------|
| falsō,  | falsely,    | from falsus |
| tutō,   | safely,     | „ tutus     |
| crēbrō, | frequently, | „ crēber.   |

Obs. The form in ō is rare. From some Adjectives come Adverbs both in ē and ō, but with a difference of meaning : as, certō, certainly, and certē, at any rate ; vērō, in truth, indeed, and vērē, truly.

§ 198. Adverbs in tēr are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension : as,

|             |              |             |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| grāvī-tēr,  | heavily,     | from grāvis |
| fēlicī-tēr, | fortunately, | „ fēlix.    |

*Obs.* If the Stem of an Adjective or Participle ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted: as,

săpiēter, *wisely*, from sapiens (săpiēnt-s).

§ 199. The Neuters Singular of many Adjectives are used as Adverbs: as,

facilē, *easily*; rēcens, *lately*; multum, *much*.

§ 200. Adverbs in *itūs* are derived from Substantives and Adjectives, and denote *proceeding from something*: as,

coel-itūs, *from heaven*, from coelum  
rādic-itūs, *from the roots*, „ rādx (rādic-s).

§ 201. Adverbs in *tim* are formed from Substantives, Adjectives, and Verbs, and denote the way or manner: as,

|              |                              |               |
|--------------|------------------------------|---------------|
| cātervā-tim, | <i>in troops</i> ,           | from cāterva  |
| privā-tim,   | <i>as a private person</i> , | „ privātus    |
| stā-tim,     | <i>immediately</i>           | „ sto (stare) |
| punc-tim,    | <i>with the points</i> ,     | „ pingo.      |

§ 202. Adverbs derived from Numerals are given in §§ 72, 73.

§ 203. Adverbs derived from Pronouns are given in § 133.

## CHAPTER XXXII.—COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

§ 204. A Compound Word is formed of two or more roots.

*Obs.* Sometimes a Substantive and Adjective, both of which are declined, or a Genitive and the Substantive on which it depends, are put together, but these are not genuine compounds: as,

|                    |                    |                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| respublicæ,        | Gen. rēpublicæ,    | <i>the commonwealth.</i>           |
| jusjūrandum,       | Gen. jūrisjūrandi, | <i>an oath.</i>                    |
| sēnātus-consultum, |                    | <i>a resolution of the senate.</i> |
| līquē-ductus,      |                    | <i>a water-channel.</i>            |

§ 205. The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a verb is only found in the first part, when *fācio* is in the second: as,

|             |                          |
|-------------|--------------------------|
| ārēfācio,   | <i>to make dry.</i>      |
| cālēfācio,  | <i>to make warm.</i>     |
| līquēfācio, | <i>to cause to melt.</i> |
| mōdēfācio,  | <i>to make wet.</i>      |
| pātēfācio,  | <i>to throw open.</i>    |

*Obs.* Such apparent compounds as nidifīco, *I build a nest*, are rather to be referred to an intermediate Adjective: as, nidificus, *nest-building*.

§ 206. A compound verb, as a general rule, consists only of a preposition and a verb; but the vowel of the verb usually undergoes the following changes :—

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e*: as,

|          |            |             |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| cāpio,   | to take,   | accēpio.    |
| rāpio,   | to seize,  | arrīpio     |
| pātor,   | to suffer, | perpētior   |
| grādior, | to walk,   | congrēdior. |

*Obs.* Pērāgo, to complete, perplāceo, to please greatly, and faciō compounded with adverbs, as sātisfaciō, to satisfy, are exceptions.

2. *A* before two consonants is usually changed into *e*: as,

|         |             |            |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| carpo,  | to pluck,   | concerpo   |
| damno,  | to condemn, | condemno   |
| scando, | to climb,   | conscendo  |
| spargo, | to scatter  | conspergo. |

3. *A* is sometimes changed into *u*: as,

|         |           |           |
|---------|-----------|-----------|
| salto,  | to dance, | insulto   |
| calco,  | to tread, | conculco  |
| quātio, | to shake, | concutio. |

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

|        |          |           |
|--------|----------|-----------|
| ēgeo,  | to want, | indīgeo   |
| sēdeo, | to sit,  | insīdeo   |
| tēneo, | to hold, | abstīneo. |

*Obs.* Perlēgo, to read through, praelēgo, to read to others, rēlego, to read again, are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

|         |            |          |
|---------|------------|----------|
| caedo,  | to cut,    | occīdo   |
| quaero, | to seek,   | inquīro  |
| laedo,  | to strike, | collīdo. |

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *u*, but in one instance *i*: as,

|         |                    |          |
|---------|--------------------|----------|
| plaudo, | to clap the hands, | explōdo  |
| claudo, | to shut,           | conclūdo |
| audio,  | to hear,           | ōbēdio.  |

*Obs.* The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 188.

§ 207. Substantives and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel *i*, or the last syllable of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

|             |                     |                           |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| pēdisēquus, | a follower on foot, | from pēs (pēd) and sēquor |
| mūnificus,  | bountiful,          | „ mūnus and faciō         |
| causidicus, | an advocate,        | „ causa and dico          |
| agrīcōla,   | a husbandman,       | „ agrēs and cōlo          |
| āquīlifer,  | a standard-bearer,  | „ āquīla and fero.        |

§ 208. The quantity of Verbs in composition is the same as that of the simple verbs: as, fēro, affēro; hābeo, prōhībeo, &c. The only apparent exceptions are mentioned in the *I'rosody*.

## PART II.—SYNTAX.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.—OF SENTENCES.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The Subject is that whereof something is affirmed or predicated (*praedicāre, to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

*Obs.* In Grammar, the terms Subject and Predicate are applied to single words; the remaining words of the sentence being regarded as *enlargements* of the Subject or Predicate. Thus in the sentence, *Alexander Magnus rex Mæcēdonum erat, Alexander the Great was king of the Macedonians*, *Alexander* is the Subject, and *rex* the Predicate; *Magnus* being an enlargement of the Subject (*Alexander*), and *Mæcēdonum* an enlargement of the Predicate (*rex*). Transitive verbs require an object as the complement of the Predicate: thus in the sentence, *Caesar vicit Gallos, Caesar conquered the Gauls*, the object *Gallos* is a complement of the predicate *vicit*.

§ 211. THE SUBJECT.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

*India mittit ēbur, India sends ivory.*—Virg.

*Hos ego versículos fēci, I made these little verses.*—Virg.

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

*Pulchrum est digito monstrārī, It is a fine thing to be pointed out (for admiration) with the finger.*—Pers. (Subject, *monstrārī*.)

§ 213. THE PREDICATE.—The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

*Omnia jam fiēt, All the things will now come to pass.*—Ov.

*Sōcrātes Graecōrum sapientissimū (erat), Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks.*—Cic.

*Hannibal Hāmilcāris filiū (fuit), Hannibal was the son of Hāmilcar.*—Nep.

*Obs.* When the Verb "to be" is employed to connect Subject and Predicate (as in two of the above examples), it is called the Copula (*cōpula, the or bond*).

§ 214. APPPOSITION.—Sometimes a Substantive is enlarged by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

*Thémistocles, imp̄rator Persico bello, Graeciam servitute lib̄ravit, Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage.*—Cic.

*Sc̄l̄erum inventor Ūlysses, Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds.*—Virg.

*Ōleae M̄nerva inventrix, Minerva, inventor of the olive.*—Virg.

*Ut ōmittam illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athēnas, To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventress of every branch of learning.*—Cic.

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

*Tulliōla, d̄l̄ciōl̄ae nostrae, m̄nusc̄l̄um tuum fl̄ḡitat, Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present.*—Cic.

But when the Substantive in apposition is *urbs*, *opp̄idum*, *civitas* or a similar word, the Predicate is made to agree therewith: as,

*Coriōli opp̄idum cap̄tum est, The town of Corioli was taken.*—Liv.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words “as” or “when:” as,

*D̄fendi rempublicam j̄v̄enis, I defended the commonwealth as (or when) a young man.*—Cic.

*N̄mo f̄ere saltat s̄brius, n̄si forte ins̄anit, Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.—CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

§ 218. Syntax is sometimes divided into two parts. SYNTAX OF CONCORD and SYNTAX OF GOVERNMENT.

The Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other; Syntax of Government of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

*Alexander vicit Darium, Alexander conquered Darius.*

the Verb *vicit* corresponds ("agrees") with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Substantive *Darium* is put in the Accusative Case, on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be "governed." [Syntax of Government.]

### First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

*Cōnōn magnas res gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.*—Nep.

*Athenienses omnium civium suorum pōtēntiam extimescēbant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow citizens.*—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

*Castor et Pollux ex ēquis pugnāre visi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cic.

*Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas, omnes hōmīnes vēmēntissimē permōvent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,  
*Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus intelligit, The senate and people of Rome are (lit. is) aware.*—Cic.

*Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, Time and necessity demand.*—Cic.

*Obs. 2.* Sometimes, when there are two or more subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,

*Orgētōrigis filia et ānus e filiis captus est, The daughter of Orgētoris and one of his sons was taken prisoner.*—Caes.

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third. For in fact a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= nos); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural (= vos): thus *ēgo et tu*, or *ēgo et frāter meus*, both = nos; while *tu et ille*, *tu et frāter*, = vos: as,

*Si tu et Tullia lux nostra vālētis, ego et suāvissimū Cicerō vālēmus, If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest Cicero (= so are we).*—Cic.

*Obs.* In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: as, *ēgo et rex, the king and I*, literally, *I and the king*.

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive ("Noun of Multitude"), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

*Tūra strant plācentque novum pia turba Quirinum, Let the pious people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.—Ov.*

*Dēsēctam sēgētem magna vis hōmīnum simul immissa corbibus fidere in Tibērim, A large body of men was set to work at once to reap the corn and empty it from baskets into the Tiber.—Liv.*

### Second Concord.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

*Jam pauca arātro jūgēra rēgiae*

*Mōles relinquent,*

*Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.—Hor.*

— *Nec te [silēbo] metuende certā*

*Phoebe sagittā,*

*Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine unerring shaft.—Hor.*

*Obs.* The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used as an Attribute or a Predicate: as, *vir bonus, a good man*; or *vir est bonus, the man is good.*

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

*Omnium assensu comprobata oratio est, The speech was approved by the assent of all.—Liv.*

*Neglectum Auxuri praesidium (est), The garrison at Anzur was not looked after.—Liv.*

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt, My father and mother are dead.—Ter.*

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

*Secundae res, honores, imperia, victoriae fortuita sunt, Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.—Cic.*

*Lābor vōluptasque sociētāte quādam inter sē conjuncta sunt, Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. Even if the things are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used ;

as,

*Ira et dvārītia impērio pōtentiōra erant, Anger and avarice were too strong to be controlled.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Substantive, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest : as, *omnes agri et mārīa, all seas and lands* ; or the Adjective is repeated, as, *agri omnes omniaque mārīa.*

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject : as,

*Duo millia Tyriōrum crucibus affixi sunt, Two thousand Tyrians were crucified.*—Curt.

*Cāpita conjurātōnis virgis caesi ac sēcūri percussi sunt, The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.*—Liv.

Obs. In both the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the words *millia* and *cāpita* are Neuter.

§ 227. Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is put in the Neuter ; where in English we should express the word “*thing* :” as,

*Triste lūpus stābūlis, The wolf is a sorry thing in cattle-stalls.*—Virg.

*Turpītudo pējus est quam dōlor, Disgrace is a worse thing than pain.*—Cic.

### Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person : as,

*Ego, qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum, I who am encouraging you, cannot (encourage) myself.*—Cic.

*Nullum ānimal, quod sanguinem hābet, sine corde esse pōtest, No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.*—Cic.

Obs. The Case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence : as,

*Arbōres sēret diligens agricolā, quārum adspiciet baccām ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic.

NOTE.—Here the Relative *quarum* is governed by the Substantive *baccam* in the Relative sentence. [Genitive of Possessor, § 265.]

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees in gender with the Predicate : as,

*Caesar Gomphos pervēnit, quod est (not qui sunt) oppidum Boeotiae, Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes.



*Iævis est animi, justam glóriam, qui (not quas) est fructus v̄ræ virtutis honestissimus, repudiare, It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.—Cic.*

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive :

*Sapientes soli, quod est proprium divitiarum, contenti sunt rebus suis, Wise men only—what properly belongs to wealth—are content with what is their own.—Cic.*

---

## CHAPTER XXXV.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence : as,

*Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos intrōducētis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.—Auct. ad Her. See also § 219.*

*Obs.* Only in the case of the Infinitive Mood, in the *Obliqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the Subject after the following classes of Verbs :—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become* : as, *sum, ex-isto, fio, evādo* (*to issue, turn out*) *nascor* (*to be born*), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence* ; also, *gesture* : as, *māneo* (*to remain*), *dūro* (*to endure*), *incēdo*, (*to walk*), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing* : as, *nōmīnor, dicor, appellor* [also *audio*, in sense of *to be called*] ; *creor, fio, designor, institutor*, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying *to seem* or *be thought* : as *vīdeor, hābeor, existimor, dūcor*, etc. : as,

(1.) *Nēmo repente fit turpissimus, No one becomes utterly base all at once.—Juv.*

(2.) *Mūnitiōnes integræ mānēbant, The fortifications remained entire.—Caes.*

*Divum incēdo rēgina, I walk queen of the gods.—Virg.*

(3.) *Nūma Pompilius rex creātus est, Numa Pompilius was made king.—Eutr.*

*Justitia erga deos religio dicitur, Justice towards the gods is called religion.—Cic.*

(4.) *Satis altitudo mūri exstructa vidēbatur, The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.—Nep.*

*In rebus angustis animōsus et fortis appāre, In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.—Hor.*

## CHAPTER XXXVI.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

## 1. Accusative of the Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative: as,

*Deus mundum aedificāvit*, God built the world.—Cic.

*Glōria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.—Cic.

*Nulla ars imitari solertiam naturae potest*, No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passive, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, *magister puerum laudat*, The master praises the boy, becomes in the Passive, *puer a magistro laudatur*, The boy is praised by the master.

*Obs. 2.* But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only impersonally: as,

*Invidetur praestanti florentique fortunae*, Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.—Cic. (Lit., Envy is felt by men for eminent fortune.)

*Non parceretur labōri*, Labour shall not be spared.—Cic. (Lit., There shall be no sparing for labour.)

*Obs. 3.* The principal apparent exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative*.—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

*Hac nocte mirum somniavi somnium*, This night I dreamt a strange dream.—Plaut.

*Variissimum fufurandum jurare*, To swear a most true oath.—Cic.

*Obs.* This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed.

§ 236. Some other Intransitive Verbs may govern an Accusative by virtue of a transitive sense involved in them. Thus, *sitio*, I thirst (for) = I desire eagerly; *conterreo*, I tremble (at) = I fear; *horreo*, I shudder (at) = I dread; *fleo*, I weep (for) = I lament; *rideo*, I laugh (at) = I ridicule; *dēpereo*, I am dying (for) = I desperately love: as,

*Sanguinem nostram sitiēbat*, He was thirsting for our blood.—Cic.

*Sequani Ariovisti crudelitatem horrebant*, The Sequani dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus.—Caes.

*Conterrere hastam*, To tremble at the lance.—Virg.

§ 238. *All Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,*

*Timotheus Peloponnëum circumvêhens Læoniâam pöpulâtus est, Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.—Nep.*

*Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.—Nep.*

§ 239. *Many Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions ad and in, and some verbs compounded with ante, con, ex, and prae, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,*

*Naves Genuam accesserunt, The ships reached Genoa.—Liv.*

*Urbem invadunt, They fall upon the city.—Virg.*

*Neminem convēni, I have met no one.—Cic.*

*Societatem coire, To form a partnership.—Cic.*

*Mōdum excēdere, To exceed the limit.—Cic.*

*Quantum Galli virtute cēteros mortāles praestarent, How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.—Liv.*

*Nemo eum in amicitia antecessit, no one excelled him in friendship.—Nep.*

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs, *pūdet, it shameth; taedet, it wearieth; poenitet, it repenteth; piget, it grieveth; and miseret, it pitieth (affects with pity);* take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects.* The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282): as,

*Mē piget stultitiae meae, I am vexed at my folly.—Cic.*

*Timothei post mortem pöpulum iudicii sui poenituit, After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

§ 242. In like manner *dēcet, it is becoming, and dēdēcet, it is unbecoming,* take an Accusative of the Person: as,

*Oratorem minime dēcet irasci, It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.—Cic.*

*Obs.* In like manner the Impersonals *jūvat, it delights; lätet, fallit, fugit, praeterit, it escapes (notice); oportet, it behoves,* take an Accusative of the Person.

## 2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching and concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *dōceo, I teach (with its compounds); cōlo. I conceal, hide from: as,*

*Quis mūscam docuit Epāminondam, Who taught Epāminondas music?—Nep.*

Non cēlāvi te sermōnem hōmīnum, *I have not kept from you the men's discourse.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Accusative after a Passive Verb. When a Verb of teaching, &c. is turned into the Passive (see § 234, *Obs.* 1), the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative : as,

L. Marcius omnes militiæ artes edoctus fuerat, *Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.*—Liv.

§ 244. Some verbs of asking, entreating, and demanding take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person : as, *oro*, *I entreat*, *rōgo*, *I ask or entreat* ; and *posco*, *rēposco*, *flāgīto*, *I demand* : as,

Lēgātī Verrem simūlācrum Cērēris rēposcunt, *The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.*—Cic.

Caesar frumentum Aeduos flāgītābat, *Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.*—Caes.

*Obs.* When a verb of asking, &c. is turned into the Passive, the thing may still remain in the Accusative : as,

Primus rōgātus est sententiam, *He was first asked for his opinion.*—Sall.

§ 245. *Factitive Accusative.*—Verbs signifying to name, to make or appoint, to reckon or esteem, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object : as,

Rōmulus urbem ex nōmine suo Rōmam (*Fact. Acc.*) vocāvit, *Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.*—Eutr.

Contempsit Siculos, non duxit (eos) homines (*Fact. Acc.*), *He despised the Sicilians ; he did not take them for human beings.*—Cic.

Ancum Martium rēgem (*Fact. Acc.*) pōpulus creāvit, *The people made Ancus Martius king.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs : see § 232.

§ 246. Transitive Verbs compounded with *trans* and *circum*, as *transjicio*, *transduco*, *transporto*, to carry across, and *circumdūco*, to lead around, take after them a double Accusative, one of the person, and the other of the thing crossed : as,

Agēsiliūs Hēllespontum cōpias trājēcit, *Agésilas carried his troops across the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Pompēlius Rōcillūm omnia sua praesidia circumduxit, *Pompeius led Rocillus round all his entrenchments.*—Caes.

*Obs.* In the Passive one of the two Accusatives remains : as,

Mījor multitudo Germānōrum Rhēnum transducitur, *A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.*—Caes.

### 3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards*. For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards*, *proximity*, or *relation to*: *as*, *ad*, *in* for *into*, *inter*, *præp*, &c. See §§ 135, 137.

### 4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long?* *How far?* *How high?* *How deep?* *How broad?* *How thick?* *as*, *Quaedam bestiolarum unum diem vivunt*, *Some insects live but one day.*—Cic.

*Pêricles quadrâginta annos praeftit Athênis*, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

*Pêdem e villâ adhuc egressi non stimus*, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the (country) house.*—Cic.

*Campus Marâthon ab Athênis circiter millia passuum decem abest*, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*—Nep.

*Milites aggèrem latum pèdes trècentos triginta, altum pèdes octôginta exstruxerunt*, *The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet broad and 80 feet high.*—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus*, *altus*, the Genitive would have been used: see § 274.)

### 5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection: *as*,

*Me caecum, qui haec ante non vidèrim*, *My blindness not to have seen this before!*—Cic.

*O vim maximam erroris*, *O the enormous power of error!*—Cic.

*Eheu mē misèrum*, *O hapless me!*

*Pro deòrum atque hominum fidem!* *In the name of gods and men!*—Cic.

*En quâtuor aras*, *Lo, four altars.*—Virg.

*Obs.* 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequent found with the Nominative: *as*, *Ecce tuas literas* (sc. sunt) de Varrône, *There is your letter about Varro!*—Cic.

*Obs.* 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative: *as*,

*Vae victis*, *Woe to the conquered.*—Liv.

*Hei misèro mihi*, *Woe to wretched me.*—Ter.

## G. Accusative of Closer Definition.

§ 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to: as,

*Hannibal, adversum fémur grāviter ictus, cæcidit, Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.—Liv.*

*Equus trēmit artūs, The horse trembles in its limbs.—Virg.*

*Fēmīnæ nūdæ brāchia et lācertos, Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.—Ter.*

*Trāiectus pēdes, With the feet pierced.—Virg.*

*Obs.* In prose, the Ablative is more generally used: as,

*Pēdibus aeger, Diseased in the feet.—Cic.*

*Capti oculis talpæ, Moles maimed in the eyes (i.e. blind).—Virg.*

## 7. Greek Accusative.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative: as, *induo*, *amicior*, *I clothe, put on myself*; *exuo*, *I strip off (from myself)*; *cingor*, *accingor*, *I gird on myself*; and the like: as,

*Inūtile ferrū cingitur, He girds on the bootless steel.—Virg.*

*Andrōgei gāleam induitur, He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.—Virg.*

## 8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (*id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *idem*, &c.), and of Adjectives implying number (*unum*, *multa*, *pauca*, &c.), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words: as,

*Idem glōriāri, To make the same boast.—Cic.*

*Omnes muliēres eādē student, All women have the same inclinations.—Ter.*

*Id opēram do, I strive after this.—Ter.*

*Utrumque laetor, I rejoice at both things.—Cic.*

*Discipulos id unum mōneo, I remind pupils of this one thing.—Cic.*

*Sæpe non audimus ea, quæ ab naturā mōnēmur, We often do not hear those things, which we are reminded by nature.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* This Accusative may also be used with the Passive, as in the last example.

*Obs. 2.* The same construction is used even without verbs: as,  
*Id temporis, At that time.—Cic.*

*Uōmo id ætātis, A man of that age.—Cic.*

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions *magnam* (*maximam*) *partem*, *for the most part*; *vicem*, *on account of*; *seus*, *sex*; *cetera*, *in other respects*; *nil*, *not at all*: as,

*Suēvi maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt*, *The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic.

*Tuam vicem saepe doleo*, *I often grieve on your account.*—Cic.

*Liberorum capitum virile secus ad decem millia capta*, *Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv.

*Vir cetera egregius*, *A man admirable in other respects.*—Liv.

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see § 507.

#### APPENDIX ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 256. It has been thought advisable to place together all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where?* *Whither?* *Whence?*

#### 1. Answer to the Question *Where?*

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

*Romae Consules, Athenis Archontes, Carthagine Suffetes, sive iudices, quotannis creabantur*, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*—Nep.

*Tibure Romam amo*, *When at Tivoli I am in love with Rome.*—Hor.

*Thebis, Argis, Ulubris, At Thebes, Argos (Argi), Ulubrae.*—Hor.

*Dionysius Corinthi pueros docebat*, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*—Cic.

*Obs.* There can be no doubt that these cases were originally *Locatives*, a case with the termination *i* in the Singular. This accounts for the form *as* in the 1st Declension, which was originally *at*, for the form *i* in the 2nd Declension, and for such forms as *Carthagini*, *Lacedaemoni*, *ruri* in the 3rd Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where?* Hence *ruri* rather than *rure*, *in the country*. See § 338.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives: *domi*, *at home*; *humi*, *on the ground*; *rure*, *more frequently ruri, in the country*; *militiae, belli*, *in the field*: as,

*Vir domi non solum sed etiam Romae clarus*, *A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome.*—Liv.

Non eādem dōmi quae militiae fortūna erat plēbi Rōmānae, *The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.*—Liv.

Vir dōmi bellique fortissimus, *A man most valiant at home and in the field.*—Vell.

Forto evēnit ut rūri (or rūre) essēmus, *It so happened that we were in the country.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Dōmi is also used with *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae*, and *alienae*; but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as *in illā dōmo*; *in dōmo publicā*; *in dōmo Caesāris*.

## 2. Answer to the Question Whither ?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither* ? names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition : as,

Cūrius primus elēphantos quātuor Rōmam duxit, *Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pausaniam cum classe commūni Cyprum atque Hellespontum misērunt, *They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

*Obs.* 1. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally : as,

Itāliam vēnit, *To Italy he came.*—Virg.

Verba rēfers aures non pervēnientia nostras, *Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

§ 260. The Accusatives dōmum, *home*; and rus, *to the country*, have the same construction as Names of Towns : as,

Sēmēl ēgressi, nunquam dōmum rēvertēre, *Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

Ego rus ibo, atque ibi mănēbo, *I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

## 3. Answer to the Question Whence ?

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence* ? names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without a preposition : as,

Diōnysius Platōnem Athēnis arcessivit, *Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

Dēmārātus, Tarquīnii rēgis pāter, Tarquīnios Cōrintho fugit, *Demaratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In like manner, dōmo, *from home*; rūre, *from the country*; without a preposition.



## CHAPTER XXXVII.—THE GENITIVE.

§ 262. The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Substantive (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Substantive or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

*Obs.* The Genitive appears originally to have denoted *origin*, in English *from* or *of*: it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

## A. GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

*Bellum Pyrrhi, The war of or with Pyrrhus.*

*Simulatio Amicitiae, The pretence of friendship.*

*Navis auri, A ship of, i.e. laden with, gold.*

(But a *ship [made] of gold* would be *navis aurea* or *navis ex auro facta*.)

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon *causā, grātiā, ergō*, for the sake (of), which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

*Voluptates omittuntur majōrum voluptātum adīpiendārum causā, Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.—Cic.*

*Dolores suscipiuntur majōrum dōlorum effugiendōrum grātiā, Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.—Cic.*

*Si quid contrā alias lēges hūjus lēgis ergō factum est, If anything has been done contrary to other laws for the sake of this law.*

*Obs. 1.* Instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, the Possessive Pronoun is used with *causā* and *grātiā*: as, *meā causā, for my sake*; *tuā causā, for thy sake*.

*Obs. 2.* In the same way the Genitive depends upon the indeclinable substantive *instār*, (in) the likeness (of); on the scale of:

*Instār montis equus, A horse like a mountain.—Virg.*

*Plātō mīhi unus instār est omnium, Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all put together.—Cic.*

## 1. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the Possessor, or the person or thing, whereto anything belongs:—

*Grāves Cyclopum offīcīnae, The heavy forges of the Cyclops.—Hor.*

*In umbrōsis Hēlicōnis ōris, In the shady regions of Helicon.—Hor.*

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after

the verb *sunt*, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed :—

*Omnia sunt victoris, All things are (the property) of the conqueror* (i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

*Militum est dūci pārēre, It is (the duty) of soldiers to obey the general.*

*Nihil est tam angusti animi quam amare divitias, Nothing is (the characteristic) of so petty a mind as the love of riches.*—Cic.

*Cujusvis hominis est errare, It is (the part) of any man to err.*—Cic.

*Obs.* This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns : thus we must say, *meum est, it is mine or my duty* ; *tuum est, it is thine or thy duty* ; not *mei, tui est*.

## 2. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after substantives and words used substantively to denote the whole of which a part is taken : as,

*Mōdius tritici, A peck of wheat.*—Cic.

*Mille hominum valentium, A thousand of able-bodied men.*—Cic.

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is most frequently found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns denoting *quantity*. These Neuters are then virtually Substantives.

The principal Adjectives and Pronouns so used are these :—*multum, much* (with plus and plūrimum) ; *paulum or paulum, a little* (with minus and minimum) ; *tantum, so much* ; *quantum, how much* ; *aliquantum, a good deal* (with their diminutives, *tantulum, quantulum, aliquantulum*) ; also, *hoc, this (amount)* ; *id, illud, that (amount)* ; *aliquod, some (amount)* ; *quicquam, any (amount) soever* : as,

*Multum temporis, Much (of) time.*—Cic.

*Aliquantum equorum et armorum, A considerable quantity of horses and arms.*—Sall.

*Tantulum morae, So little delay.*—Cic.

*Hoc cēptarum in Hispanias portatum est, This amount of troops was conveyed into the Spains.*—Liv. (42, 18, extr.).

*Num quidnam novi, Is there any news ?*—Cic.

*Id temporis, At that time.*—Cic.

To the above add the indeclinable Substantive *nihil* (nil), *nothing, none of* : as, *nihil mali, no (kind) of evil.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be used as Substantives in the Genitive : hence we have *aliquid difficile, something difficult* ; *aliquid difficilius, something more difficult*.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of Quantity,\* Place, or Time, used Substantively: as,

*Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum*, *Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.*—Sall.

*Ubinam gentium* } *Where in the world?*—Cic.  
*Ubi terrarum* }

*Eo miseriarum*, *To such a pitch of wretchedness.*—Sall.

*Postea loci*, *Afterwards.*—Liv.

*Inde loci*, *Thereupon.*—Lucr.

\* These Adverbs are:

|                            |  |                               |
|----------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| <i>satis</i> , enough.     |  | <i>abunde</i> , } abundantly. |
| <i>parum</i> , too little. |  | <i>affatim</i> , }            |

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives: as,

*Māior iuvēnum*, (*Thou*) *elder of the youths.*—Hor.

*Maxime principum*, *Greatest of princes!*—Hor.

*Graecōrum orātorum praestantissimi*, *The most eminent of Greek orators.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex*, *de*, and in certain cases *in*, *inter*, are used: as,

*Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi*, *The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.*—Cic.

*Crocus inter reges opulentissimus*, *Crocus, wealthiest among kings.*—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Numerals, and Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number: as,

*Primi iuvēnum*, *First of the youths.*—Virg.

*Consulū alter*, *one of the two consuls.*—Liv.

### 3. Genitive of Quality.

§ 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

(Vir) *priscæ ac nimis duræ severitatis*, *A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity*—Liv.

*Ager quattuor iugērum*, *A farm of four acres.*—Liv.

*Vir maximi corpōris*, *A man of very great stature.*—Nep.

*Obs.* 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative.

*Obs.* 2. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, *a man of talent* is *homo ingeniōsus* (not *homo ingēni*); but *a man of great talent* is *homo magni ingēni*.

## B. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying *capacity*; also of *desiring, experience, remembering, participating, fullness*, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

*Thémistocles p̄ritissimos belli nāvālis Athēnienses fecit, Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.*—Nep.

*Omnes immēmōrem bēnēficii odērunt, All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.*—Cic.

*Ira impōtens sui est, Anger is incapable of governing itself.*—Sen.

*Hōmo particeps est ratiōis et cōgitationis, Man is partaker of reason and thought.*—Cic.

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive:—

|                     |                        |                      |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>āvarus,</i>   | <i>covetous.</i>       | <i>rūdis,</i>        | <i>unskilled.</i>      |
| <i>avidus,</i>      | <i>greedy.</i>         | <i>insolens,</i>     | } <i>unaccustomed.</i> |
| <i>cupidus,</i>     | <i>eager.</i>          | <i>insolitus,</i>    |                        |
| <i>stūdiosus,</i>   | <i>fond.</i>           | <i>insuetus,</i>     | } <i>master of.</i>    |
| <i>fastidiosus,</i> | <i>disdainful.</i>     | <i>compos,</i>       |                        |
| <i>invidus,</i>     | <i>jealous.</i>        | <i>impos,</i>        | <i>not master.</i>     |
| <i>timidus,</i>     | } <i>fearful.</i>      | <i>pōtens,</i>       | <i>powerful.</i>       |
| <i>pavidus,</i>     |                        | <i>impōtens,</i>     | <i>not powerful.</i>   |
| <i>liberalis,</i>   | <i>liberal.</i>        |                      |                        |
| <i>profusus,</i>    | <i>lavish.</i>         | 8. <i>mēmōr,</i>     | <i>mindful.</i>        |
| <i>parcus,</i>      | <i>stingy.</i>         | <i>immēmōr,</i>      | <i>unmindful.</i>      |
| 2. <i>p̄ritus,</i>  | <i>skilled.</i>        | <i>cūriōsus,</i>     | <i>careful.</i>        |
| <i>imp̄ritus,</i>   | <i>unskilled.</i>      | <i>incūriōsus,</i>   | <i>careless.</i>       |
| <i>consciūs,</i>    | <i>conscious.</i>      | 4. <i>particeps,</i> | <i>participating.</i>  |
| <i>insciūs,</i>     | } <i>ignorant.</i>     | <i>consors,</i>      | <i>sharing.</i>        |
| <i>nesciūs,</i>     |                        | <i>exsors,</i>       | } <i>not sharing.</i>  |
| <i>præsciūs,</i>    | <i>foreknowing.</i>    | <i>expers,</i>       |                        |
| <i>gnārus,</i>      | <i>knowing.</i>        | <i>inops,</i>        | <i>weak.</i>           |
| <i>ignārus,</i>     | <i>not knowing.</i>    | 5. <i>plēnus,</i>    | <i>full.</i>           |
| <i>prūdēns,</i>     | <i>foreseeing.</i>     | <i>inānis,</i>       | <i>empty.</i>          |
| <i>imprūdēns,</i>   | <i>not foreseeing.</i> |                      |                        |

Verbal Adjectives in *ax* follow the above rule: as, *édax,* devouring; *cāpax,* holding.

*Obs. Rūdis and imprūdēns are also used with in and the Ablative: as, prūdēns in iure civili, skilful in civil law.*—Cic.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus *p̄tiens (adj.) labōrum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; *p̄tiens (part.) lab̄res,* (actually) *enduring them*: as,

*Epaminondas adeo fuit veritatis diligens, ut ne jeco quidem mentiretur, Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.*—Nep.

*Alieni appetens, sui profusus, Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.*—Sall.

## C. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

## 1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 278. Verbs signifying *to remember or to forget* usually govern the Genitive: as,

*Anīmus mēmīnit prætēritōrum, The mind remembers the past.*—Cic.

*Nec unquam obliviscar illius noctis, Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.*—Cic.

## 2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting*, to denote the Charge: as,

*Accusātus est prōditiōis, He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.*—Nep.

*Iūdex absolvit injuriarum eum, The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.*—Auct. ad Her.

*Absens prōditiōis damnātus est, He (Themistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de*: as,

*Appius de pecūniis rēptundis postulātus, Appius was impeached for extortion.*—Cic.

This is the only admissible construction in the case of *vis, violence*: as, *de vi postulare, damnare, &c.*

Obs. 2. The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty, innocent, condemned*: as, *reus, noxius, innoxius, insons, manifestus*, and the like.

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

*Cūptis hōmīnem condemnare, To condemn a man to death.*—Cic.

*Octūpli damuāri, To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.*—Cic.

Obs. The Ablative is also used: as, *cūpīte damnare.*—Cic.

## 3. Genitive of Price or Valuation.

§ 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote *Price or Valuation* when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity; as *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris*: as,

*Quanti Chrysōgōnus dūcet, At what price does Chrysogonus give reasons?*—Juv.

*Plūris, minōris, vendere, To sell for less or more.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But a *definite* price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 316; and even the Ablatives *magno, parvo, plūrimo, minūmo, &c.* are of frequent occurrence, where money value is meant.

Obs. 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *floci, pili, nauci, aciei*, to denote that a thing is of *no value at all*: especially in the phrases *floci, pili facere, pendere, &c.*, “not to care a straw for.”

## 4. Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs *miseror*, *miseresco*, *to pity*; and the Impersonals *miseret*, *miserescit*, *miseretur*, *it causes pity*; *piget*, *it vexes*; *poenitet*, *it repenteth*; *pudet*, *it causes shame*; *taedet*, *pertaesum est*, *it causes weariness*, govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

*O virgo, miserere mei*, *O maiden, have pity on me!*—Ov.

*Me piget stultitiae meae*, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

*Nunquam suscepti negotii Atticum pertaesum est*, *Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative: see § 241.

Obs. 2. *Miseror*, and *commiseror* *to commiserate*, follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

## 5. Genitive with Interest and Rêfert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs *intérest* and *rêfert*, *it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person *to whom* a thing is of *importance or benefit*: as,

*Quid Milonis intérrerat interfici Clodium*, *What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?*—Cic.

*Rêfert compositionis*, *It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.*—Quint.

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, being used instead: as,

*Quid tua id rêfert*, *What matters that to you?*—Ter.

*Vestra intérest commilitones*, *It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.*—Tac.

NOTE.—*Rêfert* probably = *rei fert*, *it contributes to the interest*; and with *intérest*, *rei* may be understood: in that case the forms *mea*, *tua*, &c. may perhaps be regarded as datives agreeing with *rei*.

Obs. 2. *Rêfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *mea*, *tua*, &c.

Obs. 3. The subject of *intérest* (and *rêfert*) is never a Substantive, but is usually expressed by an Infinitive word or clause.

## D. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal; whether according to the Greek idiom, or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, *Obs.*): as,

*Désine mollium tandem querelarum*, *Cease at length from unmanly repinings.*—Hor.

*Solutus operum*, *Released from toil.*—Hor.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.—THE DATIVE.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Prepositions *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Indirect Object*, as distinguished from the *Direct Object*; the latter being put in the Accusative (see § 234): as,

*Aesōpo quidam lapidem impēgērat, A person had cast a stone at Aesop.—Pluadr.*

*Obs.* Here the *direct object* of the action is the *stone* (*lapidem*) which is *cast*; while the Dative *Aesōpo* denotes the *indirect object*, or the person to whom the action has reference.

## A. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

## 1. Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.

(*Dātīvus Commōdī or Incommōdī.*)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for*, *for the good of*: as,

*Dōmus dōmīnis aedificātur, non mūrībus, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.—Cic.*

*Non schōlae sed vitae discimus, We learn not for the school, but for life.—Sen.*

*Non solum nobis divītes esse vōlūmus, We wish not to be rich for ourselves only.—Cic.*

*Obs.* 1. When *for* signifies in defence of, in behalf of, *pro* must be used: as, *mōri pro patriā, to die for one's country*; *dicere pro aliquo, to speak for any one* (i. e. in behalf of any one).

*Obs.* 2. The *Dativus Commōdi* is also used after Adjectives: see § 298.

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus *vāco, to be free*, signifies with the Dative *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it*; *nūbo, to cover or veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself or put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry*; *supplico, to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person*: as,

*Philōsōphīae semper vāco, I always find leisure to study philosophy.—Cic.*

*Vēnus nupsit Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.—Cic.*

*Caesāri pro te libentissime supplicābo, I will most willingly supplicate Caesar for you.—Cic.*

*Obs.* Of course *nūbo* is used only of a woman marrying.

## 2. Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (*ἡθος*) by some person : as,

*Quid mihi Celsus agit, How does my friend Celsus?*—Hor.

*Hic Marius veniet tibi origine parvā, Here shall come your Marius, of stock obscure.*—Sil.

*Obs.* The *Dativus Ethicus* is a more delicate shade of the *Dativus Commodi*.

## 3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following verbs, apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the *Dativus Commodi* or *Incommodi* :

1. *To assist* : *subvĕnio, succurro, auxiliōr.*
2. *To resist, oppose* : *rĕsisto, adversor, obnitor, rĕnitor, rĕpugno, obsum, &c.*
3. *To favour, study (be devoted to)* : *fāveo, indulgeo, stūdeo.*
4. *To envy, be jealous of* : *invideo, aemulor* (see *Obs.* 4).
5. *To please* : *plāceo, arrīdeo.*
6. *To serve, obey, benefit* : *pāreo, obĕdior, obtempĕro, servio, prōsum.*
7. *To trust or distrust* : *crĕdo, fido, confido, diffīdo.*
8. *To spare, refrain from* : *parco, tempĕro.*
9. *To advise, persuade* : *suādeo, persuādeo.*
10. *To flatter* : *ādūlor, assentor, blandior.*
11. *To cure* : *mĕdeor, mĕdicor.*
12. *To pardon* : *ignosco.*
13. *To congratulate* : *grātūlor.*
14. *To revile* : *mālĕdico, obtrecto, convīcior.*
15. *To be angry* : *īrascor, succenseo.*
16. *To protect* : *patrōcīnor.*
17. *To command* : *impĕro, impĕrito, praecipio, and sometimes dōmīnor, mōdĕror, tempĕro.*

With some others.

*Hōmīnes hōmīnibus plūrimum et prōsunt et obest, Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.*—Cic.

*Liber is est existimandus, qui nulli turpitudīni servit, That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.*—Cic.



Non licet sui commōdi causā, nocēre alteri, *It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.*—Cic.

Dēmōsthēnes ejus ipsius artis, cui stūdebat, primam litēram non pōtērat dicēre, *Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.*—Cic.

Antiochus se nec impensae, nec lābōri, nec pēriculo parsūrum pollicēbatur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.*—Liv.

Mēdici tōto corpore cūrando, minīmas etiam parti mēdentur, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.*—Cic.

Epīcūrus Phaedōni turpissīme mālēdixit, *Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.*—Cic.

Quis Isocrāti est adversātus impensius (quam Aristōtēles), *Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?*

Iis aemulāmur qui ea hābeant quae nos hābere cūpiāmus, *We are jealous of those who have what we want.*—Cic.

Omībus gentībus ac nātiōnibus impērāre, *To rule over all peoples and nations.*—Cic.

Mōdērārī ānīmo et ōrātiōni cum sis irātus, *To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally: as, mīhi invīdētur, *I am envied.* See § 234, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Jūvo and adjūvo, *I assist*, always govern the Accusative: as,

Multum pōtes nos apud Plancum jūvāre, *You are able greatly to help me with Plancus.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. Mēdeor, mēdicor, *I heal*; and ādūlor, *I flatter*, have sometimes the Accusative and sometimes the Dative.

Obs. 4. Aemūlor, in sense of to rival, emulate, is always followed by an Accusative:

Me Agāmēmnōnem aemūlari pūtas, *You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.*—Nep.

Obs. 5. Jūbeo, rēgo, and gūberno are always followed by the Accusative: as,

O diva grātum quae rēgis Antium, *O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium!*—Hor.

Spērāre nos āmīci jūbent, *Our friends bid us hope.*—Cic.

Obs. 6. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative: as,

Haec nobis convēniunt, *These things agree with us.*

Convēnīre aliquem, *To have an interview with any one.*

Mētuo, timeo te, *I fear you.*

— tibi, *I am apprehensive for you.*

Consūllo te, *I consult you.*

— tibi, *I consult for your interests.*

— in te, *I take measures against you.*

Prospīcio, and providēo te, *I see you at a distance.*

— tibi, *I consult for your interests.*

Cūveo te or a te, *I am on my guard against you.*

— tibi, *I am concerned for your safety.*

Tempēro, mōdēror aliquid, *to regulate, arrange.*

— mīhi, irae, &c., *to set bounds to, to check, restrain*

## 4. Dative after Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

## § 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter  
ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern the Dative, when the Preposition retains its original force in reference to an object. Transitive verbs have also an Accusative case in addition: as,

*Tu mihi terram in-jice, Fling thou earth on me (my corpse).—Virg.*

*Delphines altis in-cursant rāmis, The dolphins course against the high  
br inches.—Ov.*

*In-cūbuit tōro, She leaned upon her couch.—Virg.*

*Quum prōpēmōdo mūris ac-cessisset, When he had almost got up to  
the walls.—Liv.*

*Caesāri vēnienti oc-currit, He hastens to meet Caesar on his way.—  
Caes.*

*Quum virtūte omnibus prae-starent, Whereas they (the Helvetii) sur-  
passed all in valour.—Caes.*

*Nātūra hōmīnis pēcūdiibus antē-cēdit, The nature of man excels brute  
beasts.—Cic.*

*Obs.* Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo, inspergo, circumdo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Circumdāre brachia collo, To put the arms about any one's neck.—Ov.*

*Oppidum vallo et fossā circumdāre, To surround a town with a rampart  
and moat.—Cic.*

## 5. Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used with the *Perfect Tenses* Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: as,

*Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, My plan has been already long  
formed.—Cic.*

*Cui non sunt auditaē Demosthēnis vigīliae, Who is there to whom  
the night-watchings of Demosthenes are a thing unheard?—Cic.*

*Obs.* The Dative is by the Poets used with *all tenses* of the Passive Verb; as,  
*Barbārus hīc ego sum quia non intelligor ulli, Here I am a barbarian,  
inasmuch as I am understood by none.—Ov.*

*Nēque cernitur ulli, Nor is she seen by any (visible to any).—Virg.*

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent: as,

*Quod fērendum est molliter sapiēti, Which the wise man must bear  
gently.—Cic.*

*Semper ita vivānus, ut ratiōnem reddendam (esse) nobis arbitremur,  
Let us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.—  
Cic.*

## 6. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs *licet*, *it is lawful*; *libet*, *it pleases*; *expēdit*, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative: as,

*Licet nēmīni dūcere exercitum contrā patriam*, *It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic.

*Ei libēbit, quod non licet (ei)*, *It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic.

Obs. After *licet*, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse*; as,

*Licuit esse Themistōcli stitūso*, *It was allowed Themistocles to be inactive.*—Cic.

*Illis timīdis et ignāvis licet esse*, *It is for them to be timid and cowardly.*—Liv.

7. Dative with the Verb *Sum*.

§ 296. The Verb *sum* with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo*: as,

*Mthi est injusta nōverca*, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.

*Trōja huic loco nōmen est*, *This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

Obs. When, as in the last example, a name is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also: as,

*Scipio, cui Africāno cognōmen ex virtūte fuit*, *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.

*In campis, quibus nōmen erat Raudii, decertāvere*, *They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudii.*—Vell.

## 8. Double Dative.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (*Dativus Commodi*, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying *to be or become*; *to give, send or come*; *to impute or reckon*, &c.: as,

*Ampla dōmus saepe fit dōmīno dēdēcōri*, *A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.*—Cic.

*Pausanias rex Lacēdaemōniōrum vēnit Atticis auxilio*, *Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, came to the help of the Athenians.*—Nep.

*Nec timuit sibi nē vitio quis vertēret*, *Nor was afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.*—Hor.

*Cui bōno fuit*, *For whose advantage was it?*—Cic.

Obs. The Dative of result is also used without a Dative of the Person: as,

*Nec eam rem hābuit religiōni*, *Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.*—Cic.

*Magno odio esse apud aliquem*, *To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.*—Cic.

## B. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a *Dativus Commodi*, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives:—

1. *Of Utility*: *utilis, commodus, fructuosus, &c.*
2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury*: *inutilis, noxius.*
3. *Of Fitness*: *aptus, accommodatus, idoneus, conveniens, proprius, &c.*
4. *Of Unfitness*: *incommodus, inconveniens.*
5. *Of Acceptableness*: *gratus, jucundus, carus.*
6. *Of Displeasure*: *ingratus, injucundus.*
7. *Of Friendliness*: *benignus, amicus, benivolus, fidelis, fidus.*
8. *Of Hostility*: *inimicus, perniciosus, malevolus, malignus, molestus, iratus, infestus.*
9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity*: *similis, dissimilis.*
10. *Of Equality and inequality*: *aequalis, inaequalis.*
11. *Of Proximity*: *proximus, vicinus, propinquus.*

*Romulus multitudini gravior fuit quam Patribus, Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.*—Liv.

*Deiotarus fidelis erat Populo Romano, Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.*—Cic.

*Patriae solum omnibus carum est, The soil of our country is dear to all.*—Cic.

*Siculi Verri inimici infestique sunt, The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.*—Cic.

*Homo alienissimus mihi, A man most unfriendly to me.*—Cic.

*Ingratam Veneri pone superbiam, Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.*—Hor.

*Numquid iratus es mihi propter has res, You are not angry with me for these things, are you?*—Pl.

*Idque eo facilius credébatur quia simile vero vidébatur, And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.*—Cic.

*Paupertatem divitiis etiam inter homines esse aequalem volumus, We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *amicus, inimicus, finissimus, vicinus, propinquus, &c.*, and are then constructed with the Genitive.

*Obs. 2.* *Similis* and *dissimilis* are quite as often found with the Genitive: *ae, Deum similes Nestoris, Ten men the like of Nestor.*—Cic.  
*Impii cives, tui dissimilissimi, Impious citizens most unlike yourself.*—Cic.

*Obs. 3.* An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take, in addition to the Dative as above, an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad*: *ae, Multas ad res peritiles (nobis) Xenophontis libri sunt, The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.—THE ABLATIVE.

§ 302. The Ablative has two leading significations: it denotes,

(A.) Separation from.

(B.) Various Conditions of an action: as, manner, cause, instrument, time, place, attendant circumstances.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from, by, with, in*: as,

*Trōjæ vēnit ab ōris, He came from the coasts of Troy.*—Virg.

*Fātō prōfūgus, An exile by destiny.*—Virg.

*Carthāgo, stūdiis asperrima belli, Carthage, most fierce in the pursuits of war.*—Virg.

## 1. Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From a Place or Person* is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from*. See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion or Absence from*, as *a* or *ab, de, ex, sine*, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See §§ 136, 137.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found with Verbs signifying to *separate, remove, deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) *Vērecundum Bacchum sanguineis prōhibēte rixis, Save ye honest Buechus from blood-stained frays!*—Hor.

*Nōdōā corpus prōhibēre chiragrā, To save the body from the knotty gout.*—Hor.

*Libērāre aliquem culpā, To free a man from blame.*—Cic.

*Vercingētōrix oppugnātiōne destitit, Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.*—Caes.

(B.) *Ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibent, They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.*—Caes.

*Viri boni lapidibus a foro pellebantur, Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.*—Cic.

*Eum ab omni errātiōne liberāvit, He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.*—Cic. (But *libero* is quite as frequent with the abl. alone.)

§ 307. The Ablative is used after Adjectives denoting freedom or exemption from : as,

*Rōbustus animus omni est liber curā, The strong mind is free from all anxiety.*—Cic.

*Fēmā atque fortunīs expertes, Destitute of character as well as fortune.*—Sall.

§ 308. *Opus est, there is need*, like verbs of want, governs the Ablative : as,

*Auctoritatē nobis opus est, We have need of authority.*—Cic.

*Opus est matūre factō, There is need of prompt execution.*—Sall.

## 2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles *nātus, born from* ; *ortus, oriundus, sprung from* ; *gēnitus, begotten of* : also in the Poets with *sātus, ēditus, creātus, orētus, sprung from or begotten of* : as,

*Jove nātus et Maiā, Born of Jove and Maia.*—Cic.

*Orte Saturno, O thou offspring of Saturn!*—Hor.

*Quo sanguine crētus, From what blood (family) sprung.*—Virg.

*Albā oriundum sacerdotium, A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.*—Liv.

*Obs.* But *oriundus* and likewise *ortus* when it refers to more remote origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition : as,

*Hippocrātes et Epicydes, nāti Carthāgine, sed oriundi ab Syracūsia, Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.*—Liv.

*Belgae orti sunt a Germānis, The Belgians are descended from the Germans.*—Caes.

## 3. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Instrument.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the Cause, Manner, Means, or Instrument of an Action or state of being : as,

*Sol cuncta suā luce illustrat et complet, The sun illumines and fills all things with its light.*—Cic.

*Helvētīi reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Caes.

*(Britanni) equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi (sunt), The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.*—Caes.

*Epāminondas princeps meo iudicio Graeciae, Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.*—Cic.

Ennius fuit maior nātū quam Plautus et Naevius, *Ennius was earlier in his period of birth than Plautus and Naevius.*—Cic.

Cornūbus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leōnes, se tūtantur, *Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (the'r) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Hence the Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the *thing* by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a *person*, the preposition *a* or *ab* is required with the Ablative: see § 234, *Obs.* 1. By the poets, however, the Ablative is occasionally used alone: as,

Scribēris Vārio, *Thou shalt be written of by Varius.*—Hor.

§ 312. 1. If the *manner* in which anything is done, be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without *cum*:

2. But if the *manner* is expressed by a Substantive alone, *cum* must be used: as,

Miltiades res Chersonēsi summā acqūtātē constituit, *Miltiades arranged the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness.*—Nep.

Athēnienses cum silentio auditi sunt, *The Athenians were heard with silent attention.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *mōdus, rātio, mos, ritus, consuetudo*, never take the preposition *cum*: as, *hoc modo, in this manner*; *Persarum mōre, after the custom of the Persians*.

*Obs.* 2. The student should observe that where *with* in English means *in company with*, *cum* is always used; but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword*, *cum* cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

§ 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, *ardēre stūdīo, to burn with zeal*; *exsultāre gaudio, to exult with joy*; *intērire (pērire, mōri) fāme, to die of hunger*; *gaudēre (laetāri) āmīci adventu, to rejoice at the arrival of a friend*; *glōriāri victōriā suā, to boast of his victory*; *confidēre nātūrā loci, to trust in the nature of the ground*: as,

*Delicto dōlēre, correctionē gaudēre, nos oportet, We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.*—Cic.

*Nōmīnibus vētērū glōriantur, They glory in the names of the ancients.*—Cic.

§ 314. The Adjectives, which express a state of the feelings, are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, *contentus, contented*, *laetus, rejoicing*, *sūperbus, proud*, *frētus, relying on*, and, less frequently, *maestus, sorrowful*, *anxius, anxious*: as,

*Frētus attentīā vestrā, lissēro brevius, Relying on your attention, I treat (the matter) more briefly.*—Cic.

*Paucis contentus, Content with little.*—Hor.

*Phoebe superbe lyra, Thou Phoebe, proud of thy lyre!*—Tib.

*Obs.* For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *vescor*, *nitom*, *pōtior*, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

*Sāpiens ratiōne optime ūtītur, The wise man uses reason in the best way.*—Cic.

*Plūrimis mārītīmīs rēbus fruimur atque ūtimur, We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.*—Cic.

*Agēsilaus magnā est praedā pōtītus, Agesilaus obtained possession of great spoil.*—Nep.

*Obs.* 1. Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *pōtior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 319).

*Obs.* 2. *Pōtior* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rērum pōtīri*, to obtain the management of affairs.—Cic.

*Obs.* 3. *Fungor* and *vescor* are sometimes found with the Accusative: as, *Nēque bōni nēque libēralis functus officium est vīri, He has acted the part of neither an honest man nor a gentleman.*—Ter.

*Coepti vesci singulas, He began to eat them up one by one.*—Phaedr.

§ 316. Verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *valuing*, *exchanging*; and the Adjectives *cārus*, *dear*, and *vīlis*, *cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price: as,

*Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin.

*Quod non opus est, asse carum est, What you don't want is dear at any price* (lit., at an as).—Cic.

*Mutat quadrata rotundis, He changes square for round.*—Hor. (With *mutuo*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

*Obs.* 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the means by which a thing is obtained.

*Obs.* 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281. The Ablatives *magno*, at a high price; *permagno*, plūrimo, at a very high price; *nimio*, at too high a price; *parvo*, at a low price; *minimo*, for a very low price; *nihilo*, for nothing; are also found with words of *buying*, *selling*, and *valuing*, without a Substantive: as,

*Permagno decimas vendidisti, You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.*—Cic.

*Non potest parvo res magna constare, A great thing cannot cost little.*—Sen.

*Obs.* 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

§ 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fullness* or *want* often govern an Ablative of the means or manner: as,

*Germania rivis fluminibusque abundat, Germany abounds in streams and rivers.*—Sen.



*Neptūnus ventis implēvit vēla sēcundis. Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.*—Virg.

*Voluptāte virtus saepe caret, nunquam indiget, Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).*—Sen.

*Cēra rēferta nōtis, A wax tablet full of marks.*—Ov.

**Obs. 1.** Verbs of *filling* less frequently take a Genitive of that *with which*; as, *implēre ollam dēnāriōrum, to fill a pot with denaries*, Cic. Adjectives of *filling* usually take a Genitive (§ 276). Of Verbs of *want* *careo* takes always an Ablative; *indigeo*, usually a Genitive; *ēgeo*, either the Genitive or Ablative.

**Obs. 2.** The Verbs *afficere, instruere, ornare, &c.*, come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,  
*Praeda affecit pōpūlāres suos, He has enriched his countrymen with booty.*—Plaut.

**Obs. 3.** *Præditus*, *endowed with*, also governs the Ablative: as,  
*Mens est prædita mōtu sempiterno, The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.*—Cic.

#### 4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

*Caesar fuisse traditur excelsā staturā, cōlōre candido, tērtiūbus membris, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.*—Suet.

**Obs.** For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality*, see § 274, Obs. 1.

#### 5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

*Nihil est otiosā sēnectūtē (= quam otiosa senectus) jucundius, Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.*—Cic.

*Tullus Hostilius Rōmulo (= quam Romulus) fuit ferocior, T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.*—Liv.

*Scimus sōlem multo majōrem esse terrā (quam terram), We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.*—Cic.

**Obs. 1.** The Ablative instead of *quam*, with the Object-Accusative, is rare in prose, when the Accusative is a Substantive, but frequent in poetry: as,  
*Cur olivum sanguine vipérino (= quam sanguinem viperinum) cautius vitat, Why does he avoid the olive-oil more cautiously than the viper's blood?*—Hor.

**Obs. 2.** The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as,  
*Miltiādes amīcor (fuit) omnium libertāti quam suae dōminātiōni, Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than to his own sovereign power.*—Nap.

**Obs. 3.** The use of the Ablatives *spe, expectatione, opinione, aequo, justa, æquo*, after the comparative, is peculiar, and must be explained by *quam* *est* or *erat*: as,

*Opiniōne omnium majōrem cēpi dōlōrem, I experienced greater grief than all thought I should* (lit. *greater than the opinion of all men*).—Cic.

§ 320. In like manner *dignus, worthy*, and *indignus, unworthy*, govern the Ablative: as,

*Virtus imitātiōne, non invidiā, digna est, Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy*.—Cic.

*Quam multi luce indigni sunt, How many are unworthy of the light of day!*—Sen.

## 6. Ablative of Measure.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes by *how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words: as,

*Turres dēnis pedibus quam mūri altiores sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet*.—Curt.

*Q. Pompēius, biennio quam nos major, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero) by two years*.—Cic.

*Quo quisque est sollertior et ingēniosior, hoc docet lāboriosius, The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons*.—Cic.

## 7. Ablative of Time.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Plato uno et octogēsimō anno scribens est mortuus, Plato died (while) writing in his eighty-first year*.—Cic.

*Extremā puēritiā miles fuit summi impēratoris, In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general*.—Cic.

§ 323. When the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive the Preposition *in* is generally used: as,

*Aurigandi arte in adōlescentiā fuit clārus, He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving*.—Suet.

*Ter in anno, Thrice in the year*.—Cic.

**Obs.** The following Ablatives are exceptions: *die, by day*; *nocte, by night* (but also *de die, de nocte*); *vespère a. vespēri, in the evening*; *tempore, in time, in season*: which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition *in*: as,

*Agamemnon vix dēcem annis unam cēpit urbem, Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city*.—Nep.

*Sénatus decrevit, ut légati Jügurthae in diēbus proximis decem Italiā decēderent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.*—Nep.

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with *ante* or *post* after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning:

*Accusative.*

ante or post tres annos  
 „ post tertium annum  
 tres ante or post annos  
 tertium ante or post annum

*Ablative.*

tribus annis ante or post.  
 tertio anno ante or post.  
 tribus ante or post annis.  
 tertio ante or post anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it: as,

*Annis quingentis et decem post Rōmam conditam Līvius fabulā dedit, Līvius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of Rome.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used:

Tribus annis post, quam (or postquam) vēnērat.  
 Post tres annos quam vēnērat.  
 Tertio anno post, quam (or postquam) vēnērat.  
 Post annum tertium quam vēnērat.

Or *post* may be omitted:

Tertio anno quam vēnērat.

All these expressions signify equally, *Three years after he had come.*

## 8. Ablative of Place.

§ 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* *dextrā, on the right hand; laevā, sinistra, on the left hand; terrā mārīque, on sea and land; bello, in the field* (comp. § 258): as,

*Intōnuit laevā, It thundered on the left hand.*—Virg.

*Terrā mārīque conquirere, To make search by sea and land.*—Cic.

§ 329. The following Substantives, *lōcus*, *terra*, *rēgio*, *via*, *iter*, are frequently used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them: as,

*Athēnienses lōco idōneo castra fecērunt*, *The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Nep.

*Aurēliā viā prōfectus est*, *He set out by the Aurelian way.*—Cic.

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective *tōtus*, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Quis tōto mārī lōcus tūtus fuit*, *What place was safe throughout all the sea?*—Cic.

*Tōtā Asiā*, *Throughout all Asia.*—Cic.

§ 331. In all cases besides the above a Preposition must be used: as,

*In Italiā nullus exercitus (erat)*, *There was no army in Italy.*—Sall.

*In hac solitūdine cāro omnium collōquio*, *In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.*—Cic.

*Obs.* These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

*Silvisque agrisque viisque corpōra foeda jacent*, *O'er forest, field and highway the loathsome bodies lie.*—Ov.

### 9. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute*: as,

*His rebus cognitis*, *Caesar ad nāves rēvertitur*, *Having learnt these things (lit., these things having been learnt), Caesar returns to the fleet.*—Caes.

*Pythāgorās Tarquīnio Sūperbo regnante in Italiā vēnit*, *Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (lit. Tarquinius Superbus reigning).*—Cic.

*Aliquid salvīs ēgībūs āgēre*, *To do a thing without breaking the laws.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322), as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

*Obs. 2.* As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,

*Caesar, expōsito exercitū, ad hostes contendit*, *Caesar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.*—Caes.

§ 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause : as,

*Nondum comperto, in quam rēgionem vēnisset, It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.*—Liv.

*Excepto quod non simul esses, cētera laetus, This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.*—Hor.

*Obs.* This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives *audito, cognito, comperto, and the like.*

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle : as,

*Natus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicōrōne et Antōnio consūlibus, Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*—Suet.

*Si se invito transire cōnārentur, If they should attempt to cross against his will (lit., he being unwilling).*—Cæc.

## CHAPTER XL.—THE VOCATIVE.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the object spoken to : as,

*Recte te, Cyre, beātum fērant, With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.*—Cic.

*Et tu, Brūte, And thou too, Brutus !*

*Obs.* Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *eui, hic, ille, iste, &c.*, with the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection *O*, especially in the Poets : as,

*O lux Dardāniæ, O thou light of the land of Troy !*—Virg.

*O dēcus impērii, O thou glory of the empire !*—Lucan.

*Obs.* This use of the Interjection *O* must not be confounded with that explained in § 250 : the Vocative is used only in *speaking to or invocation.*

§ 337. A Substantive or other word in Apposition with a Vocative sometimes stands in the Nominative : as,

*Audi tu pōpulus Albānus, Hear, O thou people of Alba !*—Liv.

*Obs.* Perhaps this apparent Nominative is to be regarded as an old form of the Vocative ; for it is found even without Apposition : as,

*Agēdum pontīfex publicus pōpuli Rōmāni, praei verba, Go to now, thou national pontiff of the people of Rome, repeat before me the form of words !*—Liv.

## CHAPTER XLI.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223-227), and the several Cases of Substantives. The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons*; and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things*: as,

Omnes omnia bona dicere, *All (men) say all kinds of good (things)*.—Ter.

Parvum parva decet, *Small (things)-befit a small (man)*.—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive *homo* or *res* must be expressed: thus, *multorum hominum*, of many persons; *multarum rerum*, of many things. [*Multorum* alone might refer to either persons or things.]

Obs. 2. Masculine Adjectives are mostly used in this way in the Plural: as, *docti*, learned men. But in the Singular *vir* or *homo* is usually added: as, *homo doctus*, a learned man.

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives*.—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with *summus*, at the top, the top of; *infimus* or *imus*, at the bottom, the bottom of; *medius*, the middle; *extremus*, last, at the end of; *primus*, first, at the beginning of; *reliquus*, remaining, the remainder of; *dimidiatus*, halved, the half of: as,

Ad imam quercum, *At the foot of an oak*.—Phaedr.

Unus dimidiatusque mensis, *One month and a half*.—Cic.

Extremâ hieme, *At the end of winter*.—Cic.

Reliqua vita, *The rest of life*.—Cic.

Obs. But *reliquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, *reliquum vitae* (= *reliqua vita*), *Liv.*

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs*.—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

Ego cum a me invitissimus dimisi, *I parted with him very unwillingly*.—Cic.

Pius hodie boni imprudens feci, quam sciens ante hunc diem unquam, *I have to-day done more good unwillingly, than I ever before did willingly*.—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: *invitus*, *unwilling*, *unwillingly*; *laetus*, *joyful*, *joyfully*; *libens* = *libenter*, *gladly*, *with pleasure*; *sciens*, *knowing*, *knowingly*; *imprūdens*, *unwitting*, *unwittingly*; *impēritus*, *unskilled*, *unskilfully*; also, *mātūtinus*, *in the morning*; *prōnus*, *on one's face*; *sūpinus*, *on one's back*; *sublīmis*, *aloft*.

§ 345. *Prior*, *primus*, *postērior*, *postrēmus*, are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

*Hannibal primus cum exercitu Alpes transiit*, *Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army*.

*Hispania postrēma omnium prōvinciarum perdomita est*, *Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued*.—Liv.

Obs. The use of *prior*, *primus*, and *postērior*, *postrēmus*, must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius*, *primum*, etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus *primus dixit*, means *he was the first who spoke*; *primum dixit*, *he first spoke*, and *then*, etc.

### Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam*, the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

*Neque habet [hērūs meus] plus sapiētiæ quam lāpis*, *Nor has he [my master] any more sense than a stone (has)*.—Pl.

*Dēcet nobis cāriorem esse patriam quam nosmetipsos*, *Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves*.—Cic.

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb *to be* is frequently omitted: as,

*Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hōmīnis doctiōris quam fuit Claudius*, *These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius*.—Gell.

*Argentum reddidisti L. Cordio, hōmīni non grātiosiori, quam Cn. Calidius est*, *You restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more influential than Cn. Calidius*.—Cic.

Obs. If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

*Ego hōmīnem callidiōrem vidi nēmīnem quam Phormiōnem (= quam Phormio est)*, *I never saw a cleverer fellow than Phormio*.—Ter.

*Patrem tam plācidum reddo quam ovem (= quam ovis est)*, *I make your father as quiet as a sheep*.—Ter.

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of *quam*. This is explained under § 319.

§ 349. *Plus* and *amplus*, *more*, and *minus*, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

Non *plus quam* quattuor millia effugerunt (not effugit), *Not more than four thousand escaped*.—Liv.

Pictores antiqui non sunt usi *plus* (not pluribus) *quam* quattuor coloribus, *The ancient painters did not use more than four colours*.—Cic.

*Minus* duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt, *Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army*.—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, *magis* is either used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree: as,

Corpora magna *magis* quam firma, *Bodily frames rather big than strong*.—Liv.

Paulli contio fuit *verior* quam *gratior* populo, *The speech of Paullus was more true than popular*.—Liv.

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree: as,

Sæctus est *natura* *luculentior*, *Old age is naturally somewhat talkative*.—Cic.

Volutas, quum *maior* est, omne animi lumen extinguit, *Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind*.—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Too great in proportion to something* is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro*: as,

Proelium *atrocius quam pro* numero pugnantium, *A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants*.—Liv.

Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut*: as,

*Maiores quam* cui possit fortuna nocere, *I am too great for fortune to be able to injure*.—Ov.

Damna *maiores sunt quam* quæ aestimari possint, *The losses are too great to be able to be estimated*.—Liv.

§ 352. *Atque* and *ac* are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives: as,

*Artius atque* hederæ, *More closely than ivy*.—Hor.

### Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with *quam*, or in the case of *maximus* with *quantus* also, either with or without *possum*: as,



*Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat. Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.*—Sall.

*Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxima potest esse morum studiorumque distantia, There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.*—Cic.

*Dicam quam brevissimē, I will speak as briefly as possible.*—Cic.

*Obs.* We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of :

1. *Unus* or *ūnus omnium* : *as*,

*P. Scaevola ūnum nostrae civitatis et ingenio et justitiā praestantissimum audeo dicere, I venture to call P. Scaevola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.*—Cic.

*Miltiades et antiquitate generis et gloriā majorum ūnus omnium maximē florēbat, Miltiades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.*—Nep.

2. By *longē* or *multo* : *as*,

*Alcibiades omnium aetatis suae multo formosissimus fuit, Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.*—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam qui* and the Superlative : *as*,

*Tam sum mitis quam qui lenissimus, (i. e. est), I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.*—Cic.

*Tam sum amicus reipublicae quam qui maximē, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.*—Cic.

§ 356. “*All the best*,” “*all the wisest*,” and similar phrases are expressed by *quisque* with the Superlative : *as*,

*Sapientissimus quisque aequissimo animo moritur, All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.*—Cic.

*Allissima quaeque flumina minimo sono labuntur, (All) the dearest rivers flow with the least noise.*—Curt.

## CHAPTER XLII.—PRONOUNS.

## 1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 75.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

*Ego te laudavi, tu me culpasti, I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.*

*Nos, nos consules dēsumus, It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting (in our duty)!*—Cic.

§ 359. The plural forms *nostrum, vestrum*, must be carefully distinguished from *nostri, vestri*. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with *omnium*. Thus *one of us* is *unus nostrum* (not *unus nostri*); *the wish of you all*, *omnium vestrum* (not *vestri*) *voluntas*.—Cic.

*Obs. Nostri, vestri*, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *nostrus, vester*, used abstractly. Thus, *mēmōr nostri* = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. of us.)

## 2. Reflective Pronouns of the Third Person.

(See § 76.)

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun *sui, sibi, se*, with the Possessive Pronoun *suus*, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

*Nicias tuā sui mēmōriā dēlectātur, Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.*—Cic.

*Bestiis hōmīnes ūti possunt ad suam ūtilitātem, Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.*—Cic.

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun *suus* in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

*Hannibālem sui cives ē civitāte ējēcērunt, His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.*—Cic.

*Octāvia admōnēbat dīum ēgestātis, dīum cūpīditātis suae, Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.*—Sall.

*Sua cuiusque animantis natūra est, Every living creature has its own nature.*—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, *sui, sibi, se*, and *suus* may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially

when that proposition expresses the thoughts or wishes of the previous subject: as,

(Proculus) dixisse fertur, a se visum esse Rōmūlum, *Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic.

Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se vēlit, illum ad se vēnire oportere, *Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*—Caes.

### 3. Possessive Pronouns. (See § 77.)

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

Apud mātrem recte est, *All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. ad Att.

De fratre confido ita esse ut semper vōlui, *As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—ib.

Obs. The Possessive Pronouns often denote something *proper* or *favourable* to: as, suo loco, suo tempore, *at a favourable place or time.*

### 4. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See § 78.)

§ 364. Hic is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me*. Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

Opus vel in hac magnificentiā urbis conspiciendum, *A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv.

Qui hac vituperari vōlunt, *Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

Sex. Stōla, iudex hic noster, *Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge.*—Cic.

§ 365. Ille is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him or yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

Ex suo regno sic Mithridātes prōfūgit, ut ex eōdem Ponto Mēdea illa quondam prōfūgisse dicitur, *Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Medea fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.*—Cic.

§ 366. When hic and ille are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the nearer, *ille* to the more remote: as,

Caesar bēnēficiis atque mūnificentiā magnus habēbātur, integritate vitae cōto. Ille mansuetūdine et misericordiā clarus factus, hūc sēvērītus dignitatem addiderat, *Caesar was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, Cato for the spotlessness of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency: on the latter severity had conferred distinction.*—Sall.

§ 368. *Iste* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you* or *that of yours*: as,

De *istis* rebus exspecto tuas litteras, *Concerning those things (where you are) I am expecting your letters.*—Cic.

*Ista* oratio, *That speech (which you make).*—Cic.

§ 369. *Iste* often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

*Iste* vir optimus, *That excellent man of yours* (ironically).—Cic.

Obs. The distinction in meaning between *hic*, *ille*, *iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

## 5. Determinative Pronouns. (See § 79.)

§ 370. *Is* refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdote praetore. *Is* quum haberet unicam filiam, eam bonis suis heredem instituit, *P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.*—Cic.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of *is* are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

(Multos) illustravit fortuna dum vexat (*sc. eos*), *Many Fortune has made famous while persecuting (them).*—Sen.

Non modo non invidetur illi aetati, verum etiam favetur (*sc. ei*). *We not only do not envy that time of life, but we even favour it.*—Cic.

Obs. Sometimes the pronoun *is* is omitted, even when it would be in a different case: as,

Huic meae voluntati ut favens adiutorque (*sc. ejus*), sis, *That you would favour this my intention, and be the furtherer (of it).*—Cic.

§ 375. *Idem* may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

Nihil utile, quod non *idem* honestum, (*There is*) *nothing expedient which is not also honourable.*—Cic.

Inventi multi sunt, qui vitam profundere pro patria pirati essent, *idem* gloriae jacturam ne minimam quidem facere vellent, *There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on her behalf).*—Cic.

§ 376. *Ipse* gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very*, *just*, or *exactly*: as,

Quaeram ex *ipsa*, *I will enquire of the woman herself.*—Cic.

Accipio quod dant; mihi enim satius est, *ipsis* non satius, *I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.*—Cic.

Ibi mihi Tulliola mea fuit praesto, natali suo ipso die, *There met me my (daughter) Tullia: just on her very birthday.*—Cic.

Crassus triennio ipso minor erat quam Antōnius, *Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.*—Cic.

§ 377. Ipse, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus “me ipse laudo,” *I (but not another person) praise myself*; but “me ipsum laudo,” *I praise myself (but not another person): as,*

Non cōgeo mēdicinā [i. e. ut alii me consolentur]; me ipse cōsolor, *I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.*—Cic.

Drusus se ipse intēremit, *Drusus slew himself* [i. e. others did not slay him].

Frātre[m] suum dein seipsum interfecit, *He slew his brother and afterwards himself.*—Tac.

## 6. Relative and Correlative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 228–230.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

| RELATIVES.     | CORRELATIVES.  |
|----------------|----------------|
| qui            | is, idem       |
| quālis         | tālis          |
| quantus        | tantus         |
| quot (indeel.) | tot (indeel.)  |
| ADVERBS.       |                |
| ut             | ita            |
| quāliter       | tālīter (rare) |
| quantōpēre     | tantōpēre      |
| quōtīes (-ens) | tōtīes (-ens)  |

Bestiae in quo loco natae sunt ex eo se non commōvent, *Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.*—Cic.

Eīdem utilitatis quae hōnestatis est rēgula, *The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.*—Cic.

Quāles . . . principes, tāles . . . cives, *Like rulers, like people.*—Cic.

Tantas opes quantas nunc habet, non habēret, *He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.*—Cic.

Quōtīescunque dico, tōtīes mihi videor in iudiciū vēnīre, *As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. After *talīs, tantus, tot* and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives *qualis, quantus*, etc., are often left to be understood: as,

Quaeso tam angustam talis vir (sc. qualis tu es) pōnis dōmum, *Pray, such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?*—Pompey.

Conservare urbes *tantas atque tales* (sc. *quales eas sunt*), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable* (as those).—Cic.

*Obs. 2.* It must not be supposed that the Relative *qui* is regularly preceded by *is* or *idem* : but these pronouns are to be used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not *hic*, *ille*, or *iste*. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force : as,

*Ille fulgor qui dicitur Jovis, Fonder splendour which is called (that of Jupiter).*—Cic.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause : as,

*Thémistocles noctu de servis suis [eum] quem habuit fidelissimum, ad Xerxem misit, Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.*—Nep.

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives *quālis*, *quantus*, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb Substantive or Adjective in their own clause : as,

*Quum talis esset qualem te esse video, Since he was such a man as I see you to be.*—Cic.

*Nullam unquam vidi tantam (contionem), quanta nunc vestra est, I never saw so large a meeting as yours now is.*—Cic.

*Obs.* *Talis*, *tantus* are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut*.

## 7. Indefinitive Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. *Aliquis* *some one*, is more definite than *quis*. *Aliquis* often stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *quum*, *si*, *nisi*, *ne* and *num* : as,

*Gravis aliquis casus, Some severe calamity.*—Cic.

*Si quis quid reddit, If one repays anything.*—Ter.

*Divitiis Caesarē obsecravit, ne quid gravius in frātre statuēret, Divitiacus besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. *Quispiam* is similar to *quis*, but is capable of taking a more independent and emphatic position ; as,

*Quid, si hoc vult quispiam Deus? What if some deity hath willed this?*—Ter.

§ 385. *Quidam*, *a certain one*, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary or desirable : as,

*Quidam ex advocatis intelligere se dixit, non id agi, ut verum inve-*

nirētur, *One of the assistant counsel said he could see the object aimed at was not the discovery of truth.*—Cic.

Hābitant hic quaedam mūllercūlae, *There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

§ 386. The substantive *quisquam* and the adjective *ullus*, *any one whatever*, are used in negative propositions, and in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sine* : as,

*Iustitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, qui eam habet, Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

*Sine sociis nemo quidquam tale cōnātur, No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

*Sine virtute neque amicitiam neque ullam rem expetendam consequi possumus, Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

*Quid est, quod quisquam dignum Pompēio afferre possit? What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

§ 388. *Quisque* denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), and in principal sentences is always placed after *se* and *suus* : as,

*Sibi quisque maxime constitit, Everybody consults his own interests above all.*—Cic.

*Suae quemque fortunae maxime poenitet, Everybody has most fault to find with his own fortune.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic : as,

*Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat, Let each practise himself in the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. *Quisque* is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. *Alius*, when repeated, signifies *one . . . another* ; *alter*, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things) : as,

*Præferēbant alii purpuram, tus alii, gemmas alii, They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.*—Cic.

*Alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit, The one has lost an army, the other sold one.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XLIII.—THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

A. To state a proposition; or, Predicatively.

B. To ask a question; or, Interrogatively.

*Obs.* On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

## A. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense*.—The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

*Dextrā laevāque duo mīria claudunt (nos), On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.*—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

*Vōluptas sensibus nostris blanditur, Pleasure wins upon our senses.*—Cic.

*Obs.* With *jam pridem*, *jam dūdum*, the present tense has the force of a present perfect: as, *jam pridem cūpio, I have long desired* (Cic.); so, *jam dūdum flebam, I had been for some time weeping* (Ov.). In poetry and in later writers, they are also used with the perfect tenses.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present*: as,

*Dum hæc in his locis gēruntur, Cassivellaunus pūctios mittit, While these events are going on in these parts, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.*—Caes.

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense*.—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

*Anus subtilem nēbat: præterea ūna ancillula erat; ea texēbat, A old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl (herself) was weaving.*—Ter.

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

*Archytas nullam capitāliorem pestem quam vōluptātem corpōris dicebat à nātūrā datam, Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by the gods than bodily pleasure.*—Cic.

*Ut Rōmæ consules, sic Carthāgine quōtannis annui bini rēges creābantur, As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.*—Nep.

*Obs.* For the use of this tense with *jam pridem*, etc., see § 392, *Obs.*

§ 399. *Future Tense*.—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

*Oras ingens trāsrābimus æquor, To-morrow we shall again traverse the boundless ocean.*—Hor.



§ 400. *Perfect Tense*.—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *scī* is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

*Nemo parum diu vixit qui virtutis perfunctus est minere, No one has lived (Pres.-Perf.) too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.*—Cic.

*Appius caecus multos annos fuit (Past.-Indef.), Appius was blind for many years.*—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after *postquam*, *after that*; *ut primum*, *simul atque (ac)*, *as soon as*; *ut, ubi*, *when*; where in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as,

*Pelopidas non dubitavit, simul ac conspexit hostem, configere, Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw (had seen) the enemy, to engage.*—Nep.

*Ubi de Caesaris adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes.

*Ut Hostus cecidit, confestim Rōmana inclinatur acies, As soon as Hostus fell (had fallen), the Roman line immediately gave way.*—Liv.

*Obs. 1.* But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, *Hannibal anno tertio postquam dōmo profugerat, in Africam venit, Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.*—Nep.

*Obs. 2.* But *quum*, *when*, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense*.—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of: as,

*Prōgēniem Trōjāno a sanguine dūci audierat, She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.*—Virg.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense*.—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have taken place* by the time spoken of: as,

*Rōmam quum vēnērō, quae perspexērō, scribam ad te, When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.*—Cic.

*Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse convēnērō, While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.*—Cic.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

*Hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit caelesti vitae simile, This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.*—Cic.

*Naturam si sequemur dūcem, nunquam aberrābimus, If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*—Cic.

De Carthagine vēreri non ante dēsinam, quam illam excisam esse cognōvērō, *I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic.

Obs. But the future sense is sure to be expressed in one of the clauses, as in the above examples.

## B. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED INTERROGATIVELY.

### 1. Single Direct Question.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions*: as,

Quousque tandem, Cātīlina, abūtēre pātentiā nostrā, *How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?*—Cic.

Ut vālet? ut mēmīnit nostri? *How does he? how does he think of me?*—Hor.

Quōta hōra est? *What o'clock is it?*—Hor.

Thrax est Gallina Syro par? *Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*—Hor.

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—*nē* (enclitic), *num*; *utrum* and *an*. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions*; i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle -nē.*—The Particle *nē* is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question: as,

Tarquinius rex interrōgāvit: Estisne vos lēgāti orātōresque missi a pōpulo Collātino? Sūmus—*King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.*—Liv.

Dāturne illa hōdie Pamphīlo nuptum, *Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?*—Ter.

Obs. *Ne* is always joined to the first word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with *non*, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

§ 411. *Nonne.*—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, *nonne*: as,

Cānis nonne similis lupo (est), *Is not the dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

Nonne emōri per virtutem praestat, *Is it not better with valour to die outright?*—Sall.

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle num.*—The Particle *num* indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

AM. L. G.

M

*Num negare audes, Do you dare deny it?—Cic.*

*Num facti Pamphilum piget, Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?—Ter.*

*Num Viscellinum amici regnum appetentem debuissent adjuvare, Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?—Cic.*

## 2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are *utrum*, *an*, *-nē*. *Utrum* is used only in the first alternative, and *an* only in the second, while *-nē* is used in both : as,

*Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours?—Cic.*

*Isne est quem quaero annon, Is that the man I am seeking, or not?—Ter.*

*Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or no?—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. Necne and annon, "or no," are written as single words.*

*Obs. 2. Ne is rare in the second alternative ; unless that alternative is stated in the form "or no," neene.*

*Obs. 3. The first particle (utrum) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.*

§ 415. *An* is sometimes apparently used in single questions ; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed : as,

*Quid ais? An Pamphilus venit? What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?—Ter.*

*Quid dicis? An bello fugitivorum Sycliam virtute tuā liberatam? What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?—Cic.*

*Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c."*

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative :—

| First Alternative | Second, Third, etc. |           |
|-------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| <i>utrum,</i>     | <i>an,</i>          | <i>an</i> |
| <i>-nē,</i>       | <i>an,</i>          | <i>an</i> |
| (omitted)         | <i>an,</i>          | <i>an</i> |
| (omitted)         | <i>-nē</i>          |           |

*Obs. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 434.*

## CHAPTER XLIV.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 417. *Present Tense*.—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions, or advice, with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time; also in salutations: as,

*Dissolve* frigus, ligna super fœco large repñens, *Thaw away the cold; piling the logs freely upon the fire*.—Hor.

Fessae dâte serta cārīnæ, *Crown with chaplets my tired bark*.—Ov.

Carpe diem, *Seize the (present) day*.—Hor.

Salve! Ave! *Hail to thee, farewell!*—Cic.

*Obs.* Not in prohibitions is expressed by *ne* (never non) and in double sentences by *ne . . . . nève* (neu); *nëve . . . . nëve*.

§ 418. *Future Tense*.—The Future Imperative is used in commands and exhortations extending to the future as well as the present; hence it is always employed in laws: as,

Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe *ne sēpēlīto, nëve ūrītō, Thou shalt not bury or burn a corpse within the city*.—XII. Tables.

Rēgio impērio duo *sunto, Let there be two persons with regal power*.—Cic.

Non sātis est pulchra esse poēmāta, dulcia *sunto, It is not enough for poems to have beauty; they must be sweet*.—Hor.

Hunc tu, Rōmāne, cāveto, *Against such an one, man of Rome, thou wilt have to be on thy guard*.—Hor.

§ 419. The Subjunctive Present is sometimes used (*not* in laws) instead of the Imperative, especially in the Third Person: as,

Aut bībat aut ābeat, *Let him either drink or begone*.—Cic.

Stātus, incessus, vultus, ōcūli, tēneant dēcōrum, *Let the attitude, gait, features, and eyes maintain propriety*.—Cic.

Iniūrias fortūnæ, quas ferro nōqueas, dēfūgiendo rēlinquas, *The injuries of fortune which you cannot bear, escape by flying from*.—Cic.

§ 420. A prohibition may also be expressed by *nē* (also *nēmo, nīhil*) with the Subjunctive: generally with the Third Person of the Present, and the Second Person of the Perfect Tense: as,

*Ne* quid rēi tibi sit cum Sāguntinis, *Meddle not with the Saguntines*.—Cic.

*Ne* transiēris Ibērum, *Cross not the Ebro*.—Liv.

Nīhil ignōvērīs, *Show no charity for anything*!—Cic.

etc., *If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.*—Cic.

*Si tonuit, etiam fulsit, If it thundered, it also lightened*

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

*Si nēgem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.*—Cic.

*Tu si hīc sis, alīter sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.*—Ter.

*Nēcassem jam te verbēribus, nisi irātus essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.*—Cic.

§ 426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may* possibly *happen* or *may* have happened: as,

*Me dies, vox, latēra, dēficiant, si hoc nunc vōciferārī vēlim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now, etc.*—Cic.

*Si scōteris (Perfect) aspīdem occulte latēre uspiam,..... imprōbe fecēris, nisi monueris altērum ne assideat, If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In such cases we in English often use a *Past Tense Subjunctive*, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were, &c.*, as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not* actually taking place, whether *now* (*Past-Imperfect*), or in the *Past* (*Past-Perfect*): as,

*Sāpientia non expetērētur si nihil efficeret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.*—Cic.

*(Si, ūno praelio victus (esset) Alexander, bello victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.*—Liv.

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

*Māius civis On. Carbo fuit:—fuerit aliis; tibi quando esse coepit, Onaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?)*—Cic.

*Vērūm, ut ita eēt, tamen non pōtes hoc praedicāre, Yet (granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.*—Cic.

## 2. The Subjunctive of Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used in dependence upon clauses or sentences denoting doubt, uncertainty, or conditionality (see following sections).

*Obs.* But the Subjunctive cannot stand by itself with this force.

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Qualis sit animus ipse animus nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.*—Cic.

(Here the *Direct Question* would be, *Qualis est animus?* § 408.)

*Diogenes disputare solēbat, quanto regem Persarum vitā fortunāque superāret, Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.*—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Quanto regem Persarum supero? How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

*Dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, The question is raised whether here are gods or no?*—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Utrum dii sunt, necne sunt?*)

*Multae gentes nondum sciunt, cur luna deficiat, Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.*—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Cur luna deficit?*)

*Obs.* Thus, *quae tu scias scio*, is *I know what it is you know*: but *quae tu scis, scio*, *What you know, I know also*.

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, *num* (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

*Quaero .... num, aliter ac nunc eveniunt, evenirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?*—Cic.

*Exsistit hoc loco quaedam quaestio subdifficilis, num quando amici novi veteribus sint antepōnendi, A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?*—Cic.

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

Quaeritur,    *utrum* .... *an* .... *an*.  
                   *-nē* .... *an* .... *an*.  
                   (omitted) .... *-nē* .... *-nē*.  
                   *num* .... *an* .... *an*.

§ 438. The particle *an* is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after *haud scio*, *nescio*, *dūbīto*, *dūbium est*, *incertum est*: as,

*Aristotēlem, excepto Platōne, haud scio an recte dixerim principem philosophōrum, With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.*—Cic.

*Dūbīto an Vēnūsiām tendam, et ibi exspectem de lēgiōnibus, I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.*—Cic.

*Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nēmīni, The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The phrases *haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an*, always imply the probability of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "*I don't know whether.*"

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating *perplexity*, where the Verb *dūbīto* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

*Quid hoc hōmīne faciātis, What are ye to do with this man?*—Cic.

*Quid aliud faceret, What else was he to do?*—Cic.

*Quid enūmerem artium multītūdīnem, Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?*—Cic. (*Quid enumero* would imply that the speaker was actually doing so.)

### 3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctivus Optativus.*—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a *wish*.

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable: as,

*Intēream si vāleo stare, May I be a dead man, if I can stand bail!*—Hor.

*Vāleant cives mei, sint beati, May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!*—Cic.

| Especially with *ut*nam, *O that!* as,

*Utīnam mōdo cōnāta perficere possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!*—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express *mutual encouragement*: as,

*Dum vivimus vivāmus, While we live let us live!*

*Imitēmur nostros mājores, Let us imitate our ancestors!*—Cic.

*Obs.* In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. *mēmīnerim*: as,  
*Mēmīnērīmus, Let us remember!*

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable: as,

*Utīnam prōmissa liceret non dare, Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises!*—Cic.

*Utīnam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Caesāre societātem nunquam coisses aut nunquam dirēmisses, I would, Cnaeus Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Caesar, or else had never broken it off.*—Cic.

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut* :

(1.) *Opto*, *I wish*, is generally construed with *ut* and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive): as,

*Optāvit ut in currum patris tollērētur*, *He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic.

(2.) *Volo*, *Nolo*, and *Malo*, are frequently found with *ut* and the Subjunctive; also very often with *ut* omitted: as,

*Malo te sapiens hostis mētuat*, *quam stulti cives laudent*, *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.*—Cic.

*Nolo accusātor in iudicium pōtēntiam afferat*, *I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.*—Cic.

#### 4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, *ut* (*ūt*), *quō*, *that*, *in order that*; *nō* (or *ut nō*), *lest*, *in order that . . . not*; *quā*, *quōminus*, *that not*, to denote Purpose and Result.

§ 450. The Conjunction *ut*, *that*, *in order that*, *so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either Purpose or Result: as,

##### (a.) Purpose.

*Rōmāni ab arātro abduxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset*, *The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.*—Cic.

*Pylādes Ōrestem se esse dixit, ut pro eo necārētur*, *Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of commanding, persuading, striving, wishing, &c. (see § 451).

##### (b.) Result.

*Tarquinius sic Servium diligēbat, ut is ejus vulgo hāberētur filius*, *Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.*—Cic.

*Temperantia sedat appetitiōnes et efficit ut hae rectae ratiōnē pāreant*, *Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.*—Cic.

*Saepe fit ut, si qui dēbeant, non respondeant ad tempus*, *It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic.

*Si haec nuntiatio vērā non est, sequitur ut falsa sit*, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.



Thrasylulo contigit ut patriam liberaret, *It fell to the lot of Thrasylulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

Obs. The phrases, sequitur, *it follows*; restat, *it remains*; necesse est, *it is necessary*; aequum, justum est, *it is right or just*; and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. *Ut* and *ne* are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying to *command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour*; *ut* in a positive, *ne* in a negative sense: as,

Civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis exirent, *He (Orgetorix) persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes.

To hortor ut hos libros de philosophiâ studiôse lëgas, *I urge you to read these books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic.

Preor nē me dēsseras, *I beg you not to forsake me.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *never* expresses a purpose.

Obs. 2. Jūbeo, *I order*; vëto, *I forbid*; cōnor, *I attempt*; and, sometimes, nitor, *I strive*, take the Infinitive: as,

Jābet nos Pythius Apollo noscēre nosmet ipsos, *The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic.

Lex pēgrinū vītat in mūrū ascendēre, *The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic.

Ter eunt cōnati impōnere Pēlio Ossam, *Thrice they essayed to pile Ossan on Pelion.*—Virg.

Jugurtha Cirtam irrumpere nātur, *Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall.

Obs. 3. Impēro is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as, Ipsos abduci impērabat, *He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 453. Quo. — The Conjunction *quo*, in order that; that thereby, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose: as,

Corrūpisse dicitur Cluentius jūdicium pēcūniā, quo inīmicū suū innocentē condemnāret, *Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.*—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause: as,

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab impēritis tēneatur, *A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.*—Cic.

(Here *quo* = *ut* eo.)

Obs. 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a result.

Obs. 2. Concerning non *quo*, not that, see § 487. Obs. 1.

§ 454. Nō is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose, *ut* being omitted; it is equivalent to *ut non*, *quo non*, in order that . . . not; lest: as,

Nōh esse laudātor, nē videar adūlātor, *I am reluctant to be an up-plauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.*—Auct. ad Her.

Gallinae avesque reliquae pennis fovēt pullos, ne frigore laeduntur, *Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.*—Cic.

§ 456. Similarly, when a *Purpose* is signified, we find

|                                |            |             |                       |
|--------------------------------|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| nē quis                        | instead of | ut nēmo,    | that no one.          |
| nē ullus                       | " "        | ut nullus,  | that none.            |
| nē unquam                      | " "        | ut nunquam, | that never.           |
| nē usquam                      | " "        | ut nusquam, | } that nowhere.       |
| nēcūbi (i. e. ne alicubi)      |            | "           |                       |
| nēcunde (i. e. ne alicunde),   |            |             | that from no quarter. |
| nēquando (i. e. ne aliquando), |            |             | that at no time.      |

Caesārem complexus obsecrāre coepit ne quid grāvius in fratrem stituēret, *Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.*—Cacs.

Circumspectans necunde impētus in frumentātōres fleret, *Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.*—Liv.

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms *ut non*, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, etc., must be used : as,

Ex hoc efficitur . . . ut vōluptas non sit summum bonum, *From this it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.*—Cic.

Demosthēnes perfecit mēlītando, ut nēmo plānius eo locūtus pūtarētur, *By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.*—Cic.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety* *ne* expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; *ut*, that it will *not* occur : as,

Tīmēbam ne evēnīrent ea quae accidērunt, *I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

Tīmor Rōmae grandis fuit, ne itērū Galli Rōmam rēdirent, *There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pater terruit gentes grāve ne rēdiret sēcūlum Pyrrhae, *The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

Omnes labōres te excipere vīdeo; timeo ut sustineas, *I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne non*; especially in negative sentences : as,

Timeo ne non impetrem, *I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

Non vīdeor ne tua virtus opmōni hōmīnum non respondeat, *I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. *Quin*, *that not*, *so that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after *negative*, or *virtually negative sentences* only. It is used,

- (1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering*: as, *Non prōhibeo*, *I do not prevent*; *Non retineo*, *I do not restrain*; *Non repugno*, *I do not object*; and the like.
- (2.) After such negative phrases as *Non est dubium*, *There is no doubt*; *Quis dubitat*, *Who doubts?* *Fieri non potest*, *It cannot be*; *Negari non potest*, *It cannot be denied*; and the like.
- (3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens *without* something else happening.

*Obs.* Under *negative sentences* are included those *virtually so*; as when *quis* expects the answer *No*: also those containing such words as *vix*, *scarcely*; *pārum*, (*too*) *little*, &c.

(1.) *Non possumus, quin alii a nobis dissentiant, recūsare*, *We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.*—Cic

*Vix me contineo quin in illum involem*, *I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.*—Ter.

*Haud multum abfuit quin Ismēnias interficeretur*, *A little more and Ismenias would have been killed.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The expressions *haud multum abfuit*, *minimū abfuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat dubium quin Helvētīi plurimum possent*, *There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.*—Caes.

*Haud dubia res visa ..... quin circumduceret agmen*, *There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.*—Liv.

*Obs.* In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

*Quis ignorat quin tria Graecōrum gēnēra sint*, *Who knows not (i. e., there is no one who knows not) that there are three classes of Greeks?*—

Cic.: where we might equally well have had, *Quis ignorat tria . . . esse* (§ 507).

(3.) *Equidem nunquam domum mihi unam epistolam, quin esset ad te altera*, *In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.*—Cic.

*Nullus fere dies est quin Satrius meam domum ventitet*, *There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.*—Cic.

§ 462. *Quin* is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (*qui ne*); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

*Quin igitur expergiacimini?* *Why not then be up and doing?*—Sall  
*Quin conscendimus equos?* *Why not to horse at once?*—Liv.

*Obs.* *Quin* with the Imperative is used in exhortations: as,

*Quin tu hoc audi*, *Nay but do you hear me?*—Ter.

§ 463. *Quominus*, *that not*, *so that not*, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify *hindrance*; as, *impedio*, *I impede*; *prohibeo*, *I prevent*; *officio*, *I obstruct*, etc.; also after *per me stat*, *fit*, *it is owing to me* (that something does not take place): as,

*Non reūsābo quominus omnes mea scripta legant*, *I will not object to all men's reading my writings.*—Cic.

*Caesar cognōvit per Afrānium stāre quominus dimicārētur*, *Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement did not take place.*—Caes.

### 5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Oratio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

*Caesar lēgātis respondit: diem se ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (esse)*, *Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take a day to consider.*—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: *Diem ego ad dēlibērandum sumam*, *I will take a day to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

- (A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.
- (B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.
- (C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.
- (D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.
- (E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as *dixit*, *he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

*Ariovistus respondit, . . . Aeduis se obsides redditūrum non esse*, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Caes.

Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit, "*velle se de his rebus agere cum eo*," *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes.

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit, .. *haec esse quae ab eo postularet*, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.*—Caes.

(Direct form: *Haec sunt quae a te postulo.*)

Apud Hypänim fluvium Aristotēles ait, *bestiolas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant*, *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.*—Cic.

(Direct form: *Sunt bestiolae quaedam quae unum diem vivunt.*)

Obs. But if a statement of the *writer's* be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative: as,

Quis potest esse tam aversus a vëro, qui nēget haec omnia, *quae videmus, deorum immortalium potestate administrari*, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods?*—Cic.

§ 468. (C.) Questions transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood; being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434): as,

Furere omnes tribuni plebis .. "*quidnam id rei esset?*" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) "What did that mean?"*—Liv.

(Direct question: *Quidnam id rei est?*)

Quid de praedā faciendum censērent, *What did they think should be done about the spoil?*—Liv.

(Direct question: *Quid de praedā faciendum censetis?*)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is usually expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

"*Si vëtëris contāmēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam rēcentium injuriarum mēmōriam depōnere posse?*" *"Even if he were willing (he said) to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?"*—Caes.

(Here, *num depōnere posse* = *non depōnere posse.*)

Interrōgabat .. "*quando ausuros exposcere rēmēdia, nisi .. etc.*" *He asked "When would they venture to demand redress, if not .. etc.?"*—Tac.

(*Quando ausuros* = *nunquam ausuros.*)

An quicquam esse sūperbiū? *Could anything be more arrogant?*—

Liv.

(*An quicquam esse* = *nihil esse.*)

§ 470. (D.) *Commands and exhortations, when transferred to the oratio obliqua, also take the Subjunctive; imperavit, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451):* as,  
(Orāre) ..ferrent opem, adjuvarent, (*He begged them, to come to his assistance and help.*—Liv.

"Sin bello persēqui persēveraret, rēminiscēretur pristinae virtūis Helvētiōrum," "*If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them (he bad him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii.*"—Caes.

§ 471. (E.) *Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the oratio obliqua:* as,

Caesar respondit .. "nullos in Galliā vācāre agros, qui dāri tantae multitudīni possint," *Caesar replied .. that "there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude."*—Caes.

(Direct form: "Nulli in Galliā vacant agri, qui dari possint:" comp. § 480.)

"Intellectūrum quid invicti Germāni, .. qui inter quātuordēcim annos tectum non subissent, virtūte possint," "*He (Caesar) would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle.*"—Caes.

(Direct form also: "Qui subissent (§ 476) .. possint" (§ 434).

## 6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. *The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.*

§ 475. *Qui hypothetical.*—The Relative *qui, quae, quod*, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

Haec qui videat, nonne cōgātur fātēri deos esse, *Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods?*—Cic.

(Qui videat = *si quis videat, if any one were to see.*)

Nec quisquam rex Persarū pōtest esse, qui non ante Magōrum disciplinam percēperit, *Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.*—Cic.

(Qui non perceperit = *nisi perceperit, unless he has learned.*)

*Obs.* To this head belongs the phrase *quod sciam, as far as I know, if only I know.*

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

O fortunāto adolescens, qui tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praeconem invenēris, *O fortunate youth, who hast found (i. e. in that thou hast found) a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.*—Cic.

Ut cūbitum discessimus, me et de viā et *qui* ad multam noctem *vigilassem*, arctior quam *sōlēbat* somnus complexus est, *No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.*—Cic.

(*Qui vigilassem* = *quum vigilassem*, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of *qui* as introducing a reason is augmented by *ut*, *utpōte*, *quippe*: as,

Magna pars Fidenātium, *ut qui cōlōni additi Rōmānis essent*, Lātine sciēbant, *A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.*—Liv.

Multa de meā sententiā questus est Caesar, *quippe qui* ab eo in me *esset incensus*, *Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).*—Cic.

*Obs.* But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative: as,

Anīmus fortunā non eget, *quippe* quas prōbitātem . . . nēque dāre neque ēripere pōtest, *The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.*—Sall.

§ 478. *Qui* of Purpose.—*Qui* takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of *ut*, and denotes a Purpose (§ 449): as,

Sunt multi qui ēripiunt āliis quod āliis largiantur, *There are many who take from one to bestow on another.*—Cic.

(*Quod largiantur* = *ut largiantur*.)

Clusini lēgātos Rōmān *qui* auxilium a sēnātu pēterent, misēre, *The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.*—Liv.

(*Qui peterent* = *ut peterent*.)

§ 479. *Qui* of Result.—*Qui* is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of *ut* as indicating a Result (§ 449): as,

In enōdandis nōmīnibus, *quod* misērandum sit, lābōrātis, *In explaining names you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.*—Cic.

(*Quod miserandum sit* = *ut miserandum sit*.)

Mājus gaudium fuit quam *quod* ūniversum hōmīnes cāpērent, *The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.*—Liv.

(*Major quam quod caperent* = *major quam ut caperent*.)

§ 480. *Qui* is especially so used after the adjectives dignus, indignus, idōneus, and the like, to denote what a person is worthy of or fit for: as,

Liviānæ fabulæ non sātis dignæ sunt quas itērum lēgantur, *The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.*—Cic.

Nulla mihi vidēbātur aptior persōna *quæ* de sēnectūte loquerētur, quam Cātōnis, *No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.*—Cic.

Hōmīnes scēlērātī indigni mihi vidēbantur, quōrum causam agerem, *The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.*—Cic.

§ 481. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPETITION.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are often used in narrative, after Relative Pronouns and Particles, to denote the recurrence of an action under a given condition: as,

*Primi quia modo praeirent duces, signa sequébantur, The foremost, wherever their guides only led the way, kept up with the standards.—Liv.*

*Alii ubi semel procubissent, inter jumenta . . . morientes, Others when once they had fallen to the ground amongst the baggage cattle, dying there.—Liv.*

*Obs.* But the Indicative may also be used: as, *consul, quicumque in parte laborare senserat suos, impigre ferebat opem.*

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as *sunt qui, there are some who*; *non desunt qui, there are not wanting men who*; *reperiuntur, there are found some who*: as,

*Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem, There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.—Cic.*

*Fuere qui crederent M. Crassum non ignarum ejus consilii fuisse, There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.—Sall.*

§ 483. *Quum*.—The Conjunction *quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causale*); it may then generally be translated by *as, since, or although*: as,

*Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipse monet amicitias comparare, Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.—Cic.*

*Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.—Nep.*

§ 484. *Quum* also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative: as,

*Socrates in pompa quum magna vis auri argentique ferretur, quam multa non desidero inquit, When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrates, "How many things there are I don't want!"—Cic.*

*Quos quum tristiore vidisset, triginta minas accepit, When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minas.—Cic.*

*Obs.* The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But *quum* is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time *at which* something takes place: as,

*Quum testes dabo ex Sicilia, quem volet ille eligat, When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.—Cic.*

§ 486. *Quod* (quo) and *quia*.—The Conjunctions *quod* and *quia, because*, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

*Idcirco sum tardior quod non invenio fidum tabellarium, I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.—Cic.*



Urbs quae quia postrēma aedificāta est, Neapōlis (νέα πόλις) nōmīn-  
atur. *A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (New-  
town).*—Cic.

Obs. Quia states a reason more directly and positively than quod.

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is not true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *non quod*, *non quia*, is used.

The difference between the use of quia or quod with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example:—

Pugiles etiam quum feriunt adversarium ingemiscunt, *non quod doleant* animove succumbant, sed quia profundēdā vōce omne corpus intenditur, *Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but false reason), but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension (real reason).*—Cic.

§ 489. Quod is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions corresponding to those referred to in the preceding section: as, jūvat, *it delights*; vītium est, *it is a fault*; laudābile est, *it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

Jūvat me, quod vigent stūdia, prōferunt se ingēnia hōmīnum, *It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.*—Plin. Ep.

Magnum bēnēficiū nātūrae est, quod nēcesse est mōri, *It is a great boon of nature that we must die.*—Sen.

§ 492. Quippe (*quia-pe*), *because, as being*, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, quum, quod, quius, quōniam, ubi, enim, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

Ego vērō laudo: .. quippe quia magnarū saepe id rēmedium aegritūdinum est, *I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.*—Ter.

Lēve nōmen hābet utrāque res: quippe lēve enim est hoc tōtum, risum mōvère, *Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.*—Cic.

§ 493. Quippe is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

Quippe vētor fātis! *Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!*—Virg.

Mōvet me quippe lūmen cūriae! *Forsooth that luminary of the senate horse disturbs me!*—Cic.

§ 494. *Quōniam* (*quum jam*), *since*, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

*Quōniam res in id discrimen adducta est, Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.*—Cic.

*De suis privātim rēbus ab eo pētēre coopērunt, quōniam civitāti consūlère non possent, They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.*—Caes.

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified themselves merely: v. § 487.)

*Itaque quōniam ipse pro se dicēre non posset, verba fēcit frāter ejus, Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.*—Nep.

§ 497. *Dum, whilst*, is construed with the Indicative; *dum, until*, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

*Ea rēdemptio mansit.....dum jūdices rejecti sunt, That bargain remained in force.....until the judges were rejected.*—Cic.

*Obsidio deinde per paucos dies māgis quam oppugnatio fuit dum vulnus dūcis cūraretur, The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile (dum) the general's wound might be cured.*—Liv.

*Irātis subtrāhendi sunt ii, in quos impētum facēre cōnantur, dum se ipsi colligant, Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.*—Cic.

§ 498. *Dummōdo* (also simply *dum* or *modo*), *provided that* (Hypothetical, § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Ōderint, dum mētuant, Let them hate provided only they fear.*—Suet.

*Omnia recta et hōnesta negligunt, dummōdo pōtēntiam cōsequantur, They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.*—Cic.

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, *antēquam*, *priusquam*, *before that*, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

*In omnibus nēgōtiis, priusquam aggredīāre, adhibenda est praepratio diligens, In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.*—Cic.

§ 501. When *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam*, are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(a.) *With Indicative.*

*Antēquam ad sententiam rēdeo, de me pauca dicam, Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.*—Cic.

Non *ante* finitum est proelium, quam tribunus militum *interfectus* est, *The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.*—Liv.

*Ante* aliquanto quam tu natus es, *A good while before you were born.*—Cic.

Decessit post annum quartum quam expulsus erat, *He died four years after he had been banished.*—Nep.

(b.) *With Subjunctive.*

Prius Placentiam pervenire quam satis sciret Hannibal ab Ticino profectos, *They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.*—Liv.

Interfuit pugnae navali apud Salamina, quae facta est prius quam poena liberaretur, *He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.*—Nep.

§ 502. *Quamvis*, however much, and *licet*, although, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

*Quamvis* Elÿsios miretur Graecia campos, *However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.*—Virg.

*Quamvis* sit magna (expectatio), tamen eam vinces, *Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.*—Cic.

*Licet* ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frequenter tamen causa virtutum est, *Though ambition in itself is a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.*—Quint.

Vita brevis est licet supra mille annos exeat, *Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.*—Sen.

§ 503. *Quanquam*, etsi, etiamsi, although, take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between those Moods (§ 421): as,

*Quanquam*,—etsi priore foedere staretur,—satis cautum erit de Saguntinis, *Although,—even if the former treaty were adhered to,—sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.*—Liv.

*Quanquam* festinas, non est mora longa, *Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.*—Hor.

Sed *quanquam* negent, nec virtutes nec vitia crescere, attamen, etc., *But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XLVI.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

§ 504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive.

### 1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as *jūvat*, *dēlectat*, (*it*) *delights*; or such phrases as *pulchrum*, *dēcōrum est*, (*it*) *is fine, becoming*, &c. : as,

*Jūvat integros accēdere fontes, atque haurire*, *It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and drink.*—Lucr.

(Here *accēdere*, *haurire*, form subjects to *jūvat*.)

At *pulchrum est digito monstrāri, et dici*, "*hic est*," *But it is a fine thing to be pointed at with the finger, and for it to be said, "There he is!"*—Pers.

### 2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare, and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

*Quid sit futurum cras fuge quaerere*, *What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.*—Hor.

*Pro nobis mitte precari*, *Give over praying for us!*—Ov.

### 3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, hearing*, and the like, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

*Thales Milēsius aquam dixit esse initium rerum*, *Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.*—Cic.

*Sentit animus se moveri*, *The soul is conscious that it moves.*—Cic.

*Non enim ambrosia deos aut nectare laetari arbitror*, *For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.*—Cic.

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various feelings of the mind, as, *joy, grief, wonder*, etc., may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Salvum te advenire gaudeo*, *I rejoice that you come in safety.*—Plant.

*Inferiores non dolere* (debent) *se a suis superari*, *Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.*—Cic.

*Miror te ad me nihil scribere*, *I am surprised that you write nothing to me.*—Cic.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as *certum est*, *it is certain*; *manifestum est*, *it is manifest*; *aequum, justum est*, *it is fair or just*; *opus, necesse est*, *it is necessary*; *sequitur*, *it follows*; *constat*, *it is acknowledged*; *expedit*, *it is expedient*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Certum est liberos a parentibus amari*, *It is certain that children are loved by their parents.*—Quint.

Quae libèrum scire æquum est adòlescentem, *Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.*—Ter.

Constat ad sàlùtem civium inventas esse lèges, *It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.*—Cic.

Lègem brevem esse oportet, quò faciùs ab impèritis teneatur, *A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Restat, reliquum est, *it remains*; proximum est, *the next thing is*, and the like; as also sometimes, sequitur, *it follows*; expedit, *it is expedient*; mos (moris) est, *it is a custom*, are often followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,

Proximum est ut doceam deòrum pròvidentià mundum administràri, *The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.*—Cic.

Si hæc enuntiatio vèra non est, sequitur ut falsa sit, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

§ 511. Verbs signifying *willingness*, or *permission* (including *jubeo*), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Majores corpòra juvènum firmàri labòre vòluèrunt, *Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.*—Cic.

Senàtui placet, Crassum Syriam obtinère, *It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.*—Cic.

Verres hòminem corrìpi jussit, *Verres ordered the man to be arrested.*—Cic. (comp. § 451).

Cupio me esse clémentem, *I desire that I may be merciful.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. Verbs of *wishing* are in many cases followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 443, sqq.).

*Obs.* 2. *Impéro* is sometimes used like *jubeo* (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Hæc omnes actuàrias impèrat fieri, *He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.*—Caes.

#### 4. Verbs which govern the Infinitive without the Accusative Case.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness* or *determination*, *ability*, *lawfulness*, *duty*, or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive without an Accusative: as,

Studeo ex te audire quid sentias, *I desire to hear from you what you think.*—Cic.

Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non pòtest, *Friendship can only exist between the good.*—Cic.

Optat aràre càballus, *The nag would like to draw the plough.*—Hor (cf. § 447).

Dici beàtus ante òbitum nemo debet, *No one ought to be called happy, before his decease.*—Ov.

Caesar bellum cum Germànīs gèrere constituit, *Cæsar resolved to make war upon the Germans.*—Caes.

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

Ubi völes päter esse, ibi esto, *When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.*—Plaut.

Cüpio in tantis reipublicae përicülis, me non dissolutum vidëri, *I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.*—Cic.

Licuit esse ötiöso Themistocli, *Themistocles might have been inactive*—Cic.

Obs. The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs: thus, *I wished to have been consul*, is *Volui me consulem esse*, not *fuisse*: see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying *to begin, continue, or leave off*; also *to be or become accustomed*, govern the Infinitive: as,

Incipe, parve puer, mätrem cognoscere risu, *Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!*—Virg.

Illud jam mirari desino, *That I am now ceasing to wonder at.*—Cic.

## 5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote *surprise*, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mene desistere victam, *(To think that) I should give over as vanquished!*—Virg.

## 6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

Interea Manlius in Etruriä plëbem sollicitare, *Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall.

Suo quisque metu përicula metiri, *Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall.

## 7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the Active or Passive Voice, we often find *fore ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Clamabant homines, fore ut ipsi se dii immortales ulciscerentur, *The men exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.*—Cic.

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

Spero fore ut contingat id nobis, *I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.*—Cic.

§ 519. Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua: see § 466.

## CHAPTER XLVII.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) involved in the Verb, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition*: as,

*Dionysius, cultros metuens tonsoris, candenti carbone sibi adurebat capillum, Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.*—Cic.

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

*Ipsa sua Dido concolit usa manu, Dido fell, by (Lit. using) her own hand.*—Ov.

*Puer bene sibi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity* for, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*; and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

*Obs.* 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which form a *Perfect* Participle Active: as, *adeptus, having acquired*; *usus, having used*, &c. (See § 103.)

*Obs.* 2. The lack of an *Imperfect* Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: as,

*Multi in equis parandis adhibent curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt, Many take pains in getting horses (Lit. horses being got), but are careless in choosing friends.*—Cic.

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents a thing as *going on* at the time spoken of: as,

*Curio ad focum sedenti magnum auri pondus Samnites quum attulissent, repudiati sunt, When the Samnites brought Curio as he was sitting at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected.* Cic.

*Scripta tua jam diu expectans non audeo tamen flagitare, While expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to importune you for them.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Instead of the *Imperfect* Participle, *quum* with the *Past-Imperfect* is often used: as,

*Audivi quum diceret, I heard him saying.*—Cic.

524. The *Perfect* Participle Active represents a Person as *having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs.

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense :—

|                 |                      |           |                                    |
|-----------------|----------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| Audeo,          | <i>I dare,</i>       | ausus,    | <i>having dared.</i>               |
| Gaudeo,         | <i>I rejoice,</i>    | gāvīsus,  | <i>having rejoiced, rejoicing.</i> |
| Sōleo,          | <i>I am wont,</i>    | sōlītus,  | <i>having been wont.</i>           |
| Fido (& comp.), | <i>I trust,</i>      | fīsus,    | <i>having trusted.</i>             |
| Jūro,           | <i>I swear,</i>      | jūrātus,  | <i>having sworn.</i>               |
| Coeno,          | <i>I dine,</i>       | coenātus, | <i>having dined.</i>               |
| Prandeo,        | <i>I breakfast,</i>  | pransus,  | <i>having breakfasted.</i>         |
| Nūbo,           | <i>I am married,</i> | nupta,    | <i>having married.</i>             |
| Ōdi,            | <i>I hate,</i>       | ōsus      | <i>having hated, hating.</i>       |

§ 525. Some Deponents use their Perfect Participle both in an Active and a Passive sense: the following are among the principal ones that do so :—

|            |                           |                                                           |
|------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Adīpīscor, | <i>I attain to,</i>       | ādēptus, <i>having attained, or having been attained.</i> |
| Ōmītor,    | <i>I accompany,</i>       | ōmītātus, &c.                                             |
| Confīteor, | <i>I confess,</i>         | confessus, &c.                                            |
| Mētior,    | <i>I measure,</i>         | mensus.                                                   |
| Expērior,  | <i>I try,</i>             | expertus.                                                 |
| Mēdītor,   | <i>I practise,</i>        | mēdītātus.                                                |
| Testor,    | <i>I call to witness,</i> | testātus.                                                 |
| Mōdēror,   | <i>I control,</i>         | mōdērātus.                                                |
| Pōpūlor,   | <i>I devastate,</i>       | pōpūlātus.                                                |
| Partior,   | <i>I divide,</i>          | partītus.                                                 |
| Pācīscor,  | <i>I bargain,</i>         | pactus.                                                   |

§ 526. The want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways:

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute*.

(B.) By *quum* with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

*Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit, Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes.

*Dextrā Hercūles datā ōmēn se accipere ait, Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.*—Liv.

(B.)

*Epāminondas quum vicisset Lacedaemōnios apud Mantīnēam, atque ipse grāvi vulnere se exālmārī videret, quaeisivit, salvusne esse clipeus, Epāminondas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe.*—Cic.

(For more examples see § 332.)



## 186 THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE. § 527.

§ 527. The *Future Participle* Active is used to denote (1) *simple futurity*; (2) *intention or purpose*: as,

*Delli mōritūre, O Delli, who art (one day) to die.*—Hor.

*P'erseus rēdiit, belli cāsum de integro tentātūrus, Perseus returned, intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The Future Participle occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The Neuter of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Substantive: as,

*Nam priusquam incipias, consulto; et ubi consulueris, mātūre facto ōpus est, For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.*—Sall.

*Nihil penā neque mōdērātī hābēre, They exercised no reflection, no restraint.*—Sall.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles.*—Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions where several predications are united in a sentence: as,

*Victa pietas jacet, Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate.*—Ov.

*Rursus in obliquum verso perrumpit arātro, Again he turns the plough, and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction.*—Virg.

*Tyrtæus carmīna compōsita exercitui rēcītāvit, Tyrtæus composed songs and repeated them to the army.*—Justin.

## CHAPTER XLVIII.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative: as, *rēgendi, of ruling*; *rēgendo, to, for, or by ruling*; *ad rēgendum, for the purpose of ruling*.

*Obs.* Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 505).

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

*Gen.*—*Omnis loquendi* (§ 263) *ēlēgantia expōlitur scientiā librārum, Every kind of elegance of speech is made more refined by an acquaintance with literature.*—Cic.

*Dat.*—*Aqua nitrōsa utilis est bibendo* (§ 298), *Water full of natron is useful for drinking.*—Plin.

*Acc.*—*Breve tempus aetatis satis longum est ad bēne hōnestēque vivendum* (§ 248), *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.*—Cic.

## § 534. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE. 187

*Abl.*—*Orātor in dicendo* (§ 331) *exercitātus*, *An orator practised in speaking.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used: see § 506 sqq.

§ 533. The Gerund as a Verbal Substantive still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

*Parasimōnia est scientia vitandī sumptūs supervācuos, aut nrs re familiārī modēratē utendi*, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense; or the art of using one's income with moderation.*—Sen.

*Diogenēs dicēbat, artem se tradere vērā ac falsā dijūdicandi*, *Diogenes professed to impart the art of distinguishing between the true and the false.*—Cic.

§ 534. The *Gerundive Participle* signifies that a thing is *necessary or proper to be done*. It is always *Passive* in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly *Passive* or from a *Deponent*. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the *Nominative Case* along with the Verb *est, sunt*, etc., in agreement with a Substantive, to signify that something *ought to be done*.

(B.) It is used (*impersonally*) in the *Neuter Gender* along with the Verb *est*, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all Cases except the *Nominative* or *Vocative*, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative.—NOTE. *The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case.*

§ 535. (A.) If the verb governs an *Accusative*, the Gerundive agrees with the *Nominative* of its substantive: as,

*Diligentia est cōlenda*, *We must practise diligence.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Such a construction as *poenas timendum est*, *we must fear punishment* (Lucr.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb governs any other case than the *Accusative* the Gerundive is used *impersonally* with *est* in the *Nominative Singular Neuter*: as,

*Rēsistendum sēnectūti est*, *We must resist old-age.*—Cic.

*Corpōri subveniendum est*, *We must aid the body.*—Cic.

*Utendum erit verbis iis, quibus jam consuetudo nostra non utitur*, *We shall have to use words which our present usage does not employ.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

*Obs.* 2. The *Dative of the Agent* is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus

*Ars pueros educandi difficilis est*

becomes

*Ars puerorum educandorum difficilis est*

in the following way: (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus*, *a*, *um*. (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with *puerorum* in gender, number, and case; consequently, *educandorum*. For example:

*Nihil Xenophonti tam regale videtur, quam studium agri colendi*,  
Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.—Cic.

*Regulus retinendi officii causâ cruciatum subiit voluntarium*, *Regulus*  
for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.—Cic.

*Obs.* The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a *neuter* Adjective: as,

(*Pars honesti*) in *tribuendo suum* cuique versatur, *A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own*.—Cic.

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a *Purpose* or *Result*: as,

*Valerius consul comitia collegae subrogando habuit*, *Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing him a fresh colleague*.—Liv.

*Decemviri legibus scribundis*, *Decemvirs for framing a code of laws*.—Liv.

## CHAPTER XLIX.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in *um* and *u* are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in *um* is used only after Verbs signifying *motion*, and denotes a *Purpose*. It is thus equivalent to *ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

*Fabius Pictor Delphos ad oraculum missus est scitatum quibus præ*

etibus deos possent placare, *Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

*Cūbitum* ire (or, of several persons, *cūbitum* discēdere), *To go to bed.*—Cic.

Themistocles.....Argos *hūbitūm* concessit, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos.*—Nep.

§ 544. The Supine in *u* (which is properly an Ablative of *Manner*, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as *jūcundus*, pleasant; *facilis*, easy; *honestus*, honourable; *crēdibilis*, credible; *mirābilis*, wonderful; and the like, with their contraries, to denote in what respect they are predicated of anything: as,

Quid est tam *jūcundum* cognītu atque auditu, quam sapientibus sententiis grāvibusque verbis ornāta oratio? *What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?*—Cic.

Id dictu quam re *facilius*, *That were easier in the saying than in the doing.*—Liv.

*Nēfas* est dictu, *There were an impiety in so saying!*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pūdet*: as,

*Pūdet* dictu, *I am ashamed as I say it!*—Agr. 32.

Obs. 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,

*Mirābile* dictu, *Marvellous to relate!*—Virg.



## PART III.—PROSODY.

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables and *Metre*, or the laws of Verse.

*Obs.* *Prosody* is a Greek word (προσῳδία), which signifies literally the tone or accent of a syllable.

## CHAPTER L.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The Quantity of a Syllable is either long (—), short (˘), or doubtful (≐).

## (A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long: as, āurum, *gold*, pōēna, *punishment*, cūī, *to whom*.

*EXCEPTION.*—*Præ* in composition is usually short before a vowel: as, *præ-acutus*, *sharpened at the end*.

*Obs.* 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long: as, *oc-cīdo*, *to hit*, from *caedo*, *to strike*; *con-clūdo*, *to shut up*, from *claudio*, *to shut*.

*Obs.* 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened: as, *pōēsis* (ποίησις), *plātēa* (πλατεία) as well as *plātēa*.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long: as, *cōgo* from *cōāgo*, *to collect*, *bōbus* from *bōvībus*, *to or by oxen*, *jūnior* from *jūvēnior*, *younger*, *prūdēns* from *prōvīdēns*, *possessed of foresight*.

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, by a double consonant (*x*, *z*), or by *j*: as, *mēnsa*, *a table*, *dūx*, *a leader*, *Amāzon*, *an Amazon*, *ējus*, *of him*.

*Obs.* In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word *nūx* (*a nut*), root *nūc-*, the vowel *u* is said to be long (by position): though strictly speaking, it is the syllable which is lengthened by the addition of the consonant *x*, the vowel retaining its quantity as in other cases; *nūc-l*, *nūc-em*, *nūc-ea*, etc.

**EXCEPTION 1.** *Bi*jugus, yoked two together, *quadri*jugus, yoked four together.

*Obs. 1.* *Qu* is a single consonant: hence, *āqua*, water. *H* is a simple breathing: hence, *ād*huc, as yet.

*Obs. 2.* A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word and another consonant begins the next word: as, *in mare*, into the sea, *fruit*ur *vita*, he enjoys life.

*Obs. 3.* But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel usually remains short: as,  
In solio Phoebus claris lucēntē smaragdīs.—Ov.

*Obs. 4.* But a short vowel rarely stands before *sc*, *sm*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*.

**EXCEPTION 2.** Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful: as, *dū*plex or *dū*plex, twofold, *pā*tris or *pā*tris, of a father. It generally remains short before *ū*, as, *Ā*tlas; *ē*l, as *as*sūcūla; and *fl*, as *mellif*uus, flowing-with-honey.

*Obs. 1.* It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids *m* or *n*: as, *Tē*cmessa or *Tē*cmessa, *Prō*gne (or *Prō*gne), *cŷ*enus (or *cŷ*gnus), a swan.

*Obs. 2.* A vowel naturally long remains long before a mute and a liquid: as, *ā*cres from *ā*cer, sharp.

*Obs. 3.* In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begins with a liquid, the vowel is long by position: as, *ŏb*-ruo, not *ŏb*-ruo, to overwhelm, *sūb*-latum, not *sūb*-latum, lifted up.

**§ 730.** A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, *pī*us, pious, *flē*o, to weep, *pū*er, a boy: or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as *trā*ho, *vē*ho.

**EXCEPTIONS.** The following vowels are long before another vowel.

1. The *a* in the old Genitive of the First Declension: as, *aquā*.
2. The *a* and *e* of proper names in *-aius*, *-eius*: as, *Cā*ius, *Pompē*ius (*Cā*jus, *Pompē*jus).
3. The *e* in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: as, *diē*i: but *rē*i and *fidē*i except in archaic poets.
4. The *e* in the Interjection *ē*heu.
5. The *i* in the Genitive *alius* (but always short in *alterius*). In the other Genitives in *ius*, the *i* is long in prose, but doubtful in poetry: as, *illū*s, *ipsū*s, *unū*s.
6. The *i* in *fio* when not followed by *r*: as, *fio*, *fiobam*, *fiam*, but *fierem*, *fieri*.
7. The *i* in *dīa* (*δία*), divine.
8. The *i* in *Diana* is doubtful: *Dī*ana and *Dī*ana.
9. The *o* in the Interjection *ō*he is doubtful: *ō*he and *ō*he.
10. All vowels long in the original Greek words: as, *ā*ēr (*ἄēr*), *Aenē*as (*Αἰνέας*), *Alexandria* (*Ἀλεξάνδρεια*) *Brisē*a (*Βρισηΐς*).

§ 731. *Radical Vowels*.—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the Dictionary: as, *lēvis*, *light*, *lēvis*, *smooth*, *lēgo*, *I pick*, *read*, *lēgo*, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel has sometimes been lengthened in the Present Tense: as, *dūco*, *I lead*, root *dūc* (compare *dux*, *dūcis*: *ēdūco*, *I educate*); *dīco*, *I say*, root *dīc* (compare *index*, *-dīcis*, *mālēdīcus*, etc.).

§ 733. The Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are short: as, *rēgīfūgium* (name of a festival), *rēgīficius*, *kingly* (*rex*, *fūgo*, *fācio*); *ōpīfēr*, *aid-bringing* (*ops*, *fēro*); *lāniger*, *wool-bearing* (*lāna*, *gēro*); *magnīlōquus*, *grandly speaking* (*magnus*, *lōquor*), etc.

Obs. In *levāmentum*, *instrumentum*, *lentimentum*, etc., *a*, *u*, *i* are Stem Vowels.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as,

*gēr-ēbam*, *gēr-ens*, *lānī-gēr*, from *gēr-o*.

*rēg-ius*, *rēg-īna*, *rēg-ī-fūgium*, from *rex*, *rēg-is*.

|                                     |                                                |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| EXCEPTIONS: <i>cūrūlis</i> (sella), | <i>the curule chair</i> , from <i>currus</i> . |
| <i>tēgūla</i> ,                     | <i>a tile</i> , " <i>tēgo</i> .                |
| <i>sēdes</i> ,                      | <i>a seat</i> , " <i>sēd-eo</i> .              |
| <i>lūcerna</i> ,                    | <i>a lantern</i> , " <i>lūc-eo</i> .           |
| <i>sēcius</i> ,                     | <i>otherwise</i> , " <i>sēcus</i> .            |
| <i>prōnūba</i> ,                    | <i>match-maker</i> , " <i>nūbo</i> .           |
| <i>jūcundus</i> ,                   | <i>pleasant</i> , " <i>jūvo</i> .              |
| <i>hūmānus</i> ,                    | <i>human</i> , " <i>hōmo</i> .                 |
| <i>sōpor</i> ,                      | <i>sleep</i> , " <i>sōpio</i> .                |
| <i>pējero</i> and <i>dējero</i> ,   | compounds of <i>jūro</i> .                     |

with some others.

Obs. 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, *index*, *-dīcis*, *an informer*; *praedīco*, *I affirm*; *mālēdīcus*, *evil-speaking* (all with *i* short), compared with *dīco*, *I say*, *addīco*, *I assign to*, etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root *dīc*, which is lengthened in the Present Tense of *dīco*, but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

Obs. 2. In *cognītum*, *agnītum* (from *nōtum*), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare *cāpio*, *accīpio*, etc., *a* being a fuller vowel sound than *i*.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

|                |               |                |                   |               |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>lāvō</i> ,  | <i>lāvi</i> , | <i>lōtum</i> , | <i>to wash.</i>   | <i>lavē</i>   |
| <i>vīdeo</i> , | <i>vīdi</i> , | <i>visum</i> , | <i>to see.</i>    | <i>vidēre</i> |
| <i>mōveo</i> , | <i>mōvi</i> , | <i>mōtum</i> , | <i>to move.</i>   | <i>movēre</i> |
| <i>jūvo</i> ,  | <i>jūvi</i> , | <i>jūtum</i> , | <i>to assist.</i> | <i>juvēre</i> |

EXCEPTIONS. 1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, *rūl*.

## 2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short :

Bibi, dēdi, fūi, tūli.  
Stēti, stīti, fīdi, solūi.

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

## 3. The following Supines have the first syllable short ;

Dātum, rātum, sātum, rūtum,  
Itum, cītum, litum, sītum (quitum).

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

From *sto* comes *stātum* : from *sisto* comes *stātum*.

§ 736. The first syllable of the reduplicated Perfect is short : as *pōposci* from *posco*, *to demand* ; *tētīgi* from *tango*, *to touch* ; *cēcidi* from *caedo*, *to cut*.

§ 737. The prefix *pro* is short in *prōcella*, *a storm*, *prōcul*, *far off*, *prōfanus*, *profane*, *prōfestus*, *not kept as a holiday*, *prōficiſcor*, *to set out*, *prōfecto*, *truly*, *prōfiteor*, *to profess*, *prōfugio*, *to flee to a distance*, *prōfundus*, *deep*, *prōfundo*, *to pour forth* (with a few exceptions, *e. g.* : “*Has postquam moesto prōfudit pectore voces*,” (Lat.), *prōnepos*, *great-grandson* (but *prōnepos* once in *Sidonius*), *prōpitius*, *propitious*, *prōtervus*, *wanton* : it is doubtful in *prōcuro*, *to manage another's affairs*, *prōpago*, *layer*, *offspring*, *prōpago*, *to propagate*, *prōpino*, *to drink to another*, *prōpello*, *to push forward* (*ō* in *Lucr.* only) : it is long in all other words : as, *prōcedo*, *to go forward*, *prōcurro*, *to run forward*, &c.

Obs. *Prōpago*, in sense of *layer* ; *prōpago*, *offspring* (*Virg.*).

§ 738. *Di* is short only in *dīrimo* (*disimo*), *to separate*, and *dīsertus*, *eloquent*.

§ 739. *Nē* is short only in *nēque*, *neither* ; *nēqueo*, *to be unable* ; *nēfas* (and its derivatives), *unlawful* ; *nēfandus*, *abominable* ; long in other words, as *nēmo* (*ne-hemo* or *homo*), *no one*.

§ 740. *O* for *ob* is short in *ōmitto*, *to let go by*, and *ōperio*, *to shut up*.

§ 741. *Si* is short in *sīquidem*.

§ 742. *Re* is always short, except *rēfert* (= *rem fert*), *it concerns* (but *rēfert* from *rēfero*).

§ 743. *Ve* is long, except in *vēhemens* (= *vē-miens*), *forcible*.

§ 744. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel are long : as, *ai*, *tū*, *tē*, *mē*, *sē*, *nē*, *ē*, *dē*.

EXCEPTIONS. The enclitics are short : as, *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *cē*, *tē*, *tutē*, *prē* (*reaped*), *ptē* (*snoptē*) : *quā* (*usu.* preceded by *ai*, *num*, etc.) *Nom. Sing. Fem.* and *Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut.* from *quā*.



## (B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES.

## I. FINAL VOWELS.

§ 745. *a* is long :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the First Declension : *as*, *mensā*.
2. In the Vocative Sing. of the First Declension of Substantives in *as* and *es* (excepting *tes*) : *as*, *Aeneā*, *Anchisā*.

*Obs.* But those in *es* (excepting *tes*) more frequently make *ē* : see § 746, 2.

3. In the Imperative Active of the First Conjugation : *as*, *amā*.
4. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals : *as*, *ā* (*āb*), *contrā*, *suprā*; *anteā*, *frustrā*; *trīgintā*, *quingūagintā*.

(But see next paragraph : 4.)

*a* is short :

1. In the Nominative and Vocative Sing. of the First Declension : *as*, *mensā*.
2. In the Voc. of Greek nouns in *tes*, *as* *Orestā*.
3. In the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural of all Neuters : *as*, *regnā*, *marīā*, *cornuā*.
4. In the Adverbs *itā*, *postēā*, the Conjunction *quīā*, and the Interjection *ejā*.

*Obs.* *a* in Acc. Sing. from a Gk. word in *eus* is doubtful : *as* *Thesēā*.

§ 746. *e* is long :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the Fifth Declension : *as*, *diē*; and consequently in *hodiē*, *quarē*. Also in the contracted forms of the Genitive and Dative : *as*, *fidē* (= *fidēi*).
2. In Greek words in *e* of the First Declension : *as*, *epitomē*, *Anchisiadē* (Voc. of *Anchisiades*); and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted : *as*, *Tempē*, *oetē*.

3. In the Imperative Active 2nd Person Sing. of the Second Conjugation: as, monē. But the following are doubtful: vidē, valē, cavē; and sometimes (esp. in the comic poets), habē, tacē, manē, jubē.
4. In the Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension: as, doctē, aegrē: with the exception of benē, malē, supernē, infernē (in Luor. and Auson.), internē.
5. In the Adverbs ferē, fermē, and the Interjection ohē.

*Obs.* Concerning monosyllables in e, see § 744.

e is short in all other words: as, dominē, regē (subs. and verb.), fuerē.

§ 747. i is generally long: as, puerī, corporī, diei, andī, docuistī, vigintī.

i is short:

1. In nisi, quasi, sicubi, necubi, and in the very rare form cūi for cūi.
2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: as, Dat. Paridī, Voc. Alexī.

i is doubtful in mihī, tibī, sibī, ibī, ubī.

*Obs.* ōtīque always; but always ibīdem, ubīque. We find also otīque.

§ 748. o is mostly common: as, amō, amatō, leō, octō.

But o is long:

1. In Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension: as, dominō, deō, magnō.
2. When it represents the Greek ω: as, Didō, Plutō.
3. In monosyllables: as, dō, prō.

o is short in egō, duō, modō, only, putō, I think, and cedō, tell me (both used parenthetically), nesciō, I know not (in the phrase, nesciō quis), and quando when compounded with quidem: as, quandōquidem.

§ 749. u is always long: as, cornū, auditū.

## II. FINAL CONSONANTS.

§ 750. *as* is almost always *long*: *as*, *mensās*, *civitās*, *laudās*.

*as* is *short* only:

1. In *anās*, *anātis*, *a duck*.
2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: *as*, *Arcadās*. And some Greek Noms. as *Iliās*, &c.

*Obs.* In *vas* (*vādis*) the Nom. is probably doubtful.

§ 751. *es* is almost always *long*: *as*, *vulpēs*, *a fox*, *leonēs*.

*es* is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Substantives in *es*, which have the penultimate short in the Genitive: *as*, *milēs*, *ītis*, *interpēs*, *ētis*: and *adj.* *praepēs*, *ētis*; but *mercēs*, *ēdis*; *pēs*, *pēdis*; *abiēs*, *abiētis*.
2. In the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek Substantives: *as*, *Arcadēs*: also *Hippomanēs* (*Nom. Sing. Neut.*), *Demosthenēs* (*Voc. Sing.*).
3. From *esse*, *to be*; *as*, *es*, *adēs*, *potēs*.
4. In the Preposition *penēs*.

§ 752. *is* is usually *short*: *as*, *navis*, *lapidīs*, *regis*, *regeris*.

But *is* is *long*:

1. In Dat. and Abl. Plural of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns: *as*, *musis*, *dominīs* (contr. from *musa* + *is*, *domino* + *is*: see §§ 17, 19. *Obs.*), *nobīs*, *vobīs*.
2. In Acc. Plur. of Third Declension (archaic for *es*); *as*, *omnīs* (or *omneis*) for *omnēs*.
3. In Second Person Sing. of Present Indic. of Fourth Conjugation: *as*, *audis* (= *audi* + *is*: see § 104).
4. Also in the contracted forms *velis*, *nolis*, *malis*; *sīs*, *possis*.

† *Obs.* 1. In Fut. Perf. Indicative, the *is* of Second Person Sing. is common, as *fuertis*.

*Obs.* 2. Monosyllables are mostly long: *as*, *vis* (noun and verb), *gis*; but *is*, *quis* (prons.), are short.

§ 753. *os* is almost always *long*: as, puerōs, honōs (ōris), arbōs (ōris). (But arbōr, honōr, etc.: see § 760.)

• *os* is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. Sing. (archaic) of the Second Declension: as, avōs servōs (= avus, servus): see § 19.  
*Obs.*

2. In inpōs (ōtis), compōs (ōtis).

3. In the Gen. Sing. of Greek Substantives: as, Thetidōs: and in some Greek Noms., as Argōs (neut.): besides ōs, ossis, already mentioned.

§ 754. *us* is usually *short*: as, dominūs, gradūs, sumūs.

It is *long* only:

1. In the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, which have long *u* in the penultimate of the Genitive: as, virtūs, ūtis: but pecūs, pecūdis.

2. In the Gen. Sing., and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension: as, manūs.

3. In contractions from the Greek, as Sapphūs: but we have polypūs, Oedipūs, from ποῦς.

§ 755. *ys* in some Greek words is *long*: as Phorcȳs, Erinnȳs: in Tethys it is common (Tethȳs).

§ 756. Final syllables in *b, d, t* are short: as, āb, apūd, amāt.

EXCEPTIONS. Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in *t*; as, irritāt for irritavit (Lucr. 1, 71): see § 110, 1.

§ 757. *c*. Final syllables in *c* are mostly short: as, nec, donēc.

EXCEPTIONS. Lāc, *milk*; hīc (adv.), *here* (the pronoun hīc is doubtful); hūc, *hither*; sic, *thus*: the Imperatives dīc, dūc (shortened from dīce, dūce). Fāc is short (for fācē).

§ 758. 1. Final syllables in *l* are short: as, semēl, animāl.

EXCEPTIONS. Monosyllables: as, sōl, sāl, nil.

§ 759. *n*. Final syllables in *n* are short: as, carmēn, tamēn, ān.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables: as, rēn (*a kidney*), sīn (= *si non, but if not*), splēn (*the spleen*), ēn (*lo*), nōn (*not*).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in *as* and *es* (First Decl.): as, Aconēn, Anchisēn, Penelopēn.

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension: as, Iacedaemōn Titān, Actaeōn.

§ 760. *r*: Final syllables in *r* are short: *as*, *puēr*, *vīr*, *sempēr*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables: *as*, *fūr* (*a thief*), *pār* (*substantive and adjective*), *lār*, *vēr*, *cūr*. (But *cōr*, *the heart*, is short.)

2. A few Substantives in *er* taken from the Greek: *as*, *aēr* (*ἀἴρ*), *this air*; *aethēr* (*αἰθήρ*), *the sky*.

N.B. *Celtibēr* is common. (Mart.)

## CHAPTER LI.—METRE.

§ 761. RHYTHM (*ῥυθμός*) consists in the recurrence of accent or stress of voice at regulated intervals; as in the following lines:

Quadrupē | dāntē pū|trēm sōn|tū quātīt | ūngulā | cāmpūm.—Virg.

Pāssēr | dē|līc|āē mē|āē pū|ēllāē.—Catullus.

Flūmīnā | cōn|stītē|rīnt a|cūtō.—Hor.

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called *Arsis* (*ἄρσις*, *ictus*), and is denoted by the sign '. It nearly always falls on a long syllable, or on two short syllables, representing one long: as, *vīdimus*, *āma*, *tēnūia*, *dēerat*. The unaccented syllable is called *Thesis* (*θέσις*), and is denoted by the sign `: as, *āma*.

Obs. Sometimes, though rarely, the *Arsis* falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby made long: as, *Itā|nam* (Virg. *Æn.* I. 2). The Grammarians call this *Diastō*.

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called *feet* (*πῆδες*): thus the first of the above lines contains *six* feet; the second *five*; and the third *four*.

The following are all the feet which have distinctive names:

### 1. OF TWO SYLLABLES.

~ ~ Pyrrhichius (Pyrrhic)... *pātēr*, *bōnē*.

~ ~ Iambus ..... *adest*, *mēō*.

~ ~ Trochaeus (Trochee).... *armā*, *flēbīt*.

-- Spondēus (Spondee)..... *orās*, *ēmī*.

### 2. OF THREE SYLLABLES.

~ ~ ~ Tribrachys ..... *hōmīnīs*, *rēpūt*.

~ ~ ~ Dactylus (Dactyl)... *omnīa*, *fēcīnīa*.

|       |                            |                        |
|-------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| — — — | Anapaestus (Anapaest) ..   | ἀνάπαιστος, λέγεται.   |
| — — — | Amphibrachys .....         | ἀμφιβράχης, διελύς.    |
| — — — | Creticus or Amphimacer, .. | κρητικός, σερβίτις.    |
| — — — | Bacchius .....             | βακχίος, στίπτελλος.   |
| — — — | Antibacchius .....         | ἀντιβακχίος, ἐκρίστος. |
| — — — | Molossus .....             | μόλυστος, δυνάμει.     |

### 3. OF FOUR SYLLABLES.

|       |                        |                                  |
|-------|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| — — — | Proceleusmaticus ..... | προκελευστικός, ἐκτετατός.       |
| — — — | Ionicus a Minore ..... | ιονικός αὐτὸς ὀλίγος, γενερός.   |
| — — — | ———— a Majore .....    | ιονικός αὐτὸς ὀλίγος, σολάμειος. |
| — — — | Choriambus .....       | χοριαμβός, σιμπίτιος.            |
| — — — | Antispastus .....      | ἀντισπαστός, περὶ ὅλων.          |
| — — — | Paeon Primus .....     | παιών πρῶτος, ἀντισπαστός.       |
| — — — | ———— Secundus .....    | παιών δεύτερος, ἀντισπαστός.     |
| — — — | ———— Tertius .....     | παιών τρίτος, περὶ ὅλων.         |
| — — — | ———— Quartus .....     | παιών τέταρτος, ἀντισπαστός.     |
| — — — | Epitritus Primus ..... | ἐπιτρίτος πρῶτος, ἀντισπαστός.   |
| — — — | ———— Secundus .....    | ἐπιτρίτος δεύτερος, ἀντισπαστός. |
| — — — | ———— Tertius .....     | ἐπιτρίτος τρίτος, ἀντισπαστός.   |
| — — — | ———— Quartus .....     | ἐπιτρίτος τέταρτος, ἀντισπαστός. |

*Obs.* Two Iambi, Trochees or Spondees together, are sometimes called Diiambus, Ditrochaeus, and Dispondeus respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, or Hexameter, according to the number of measures (μέτρα) which they contain.

*Obs.* A Dactyl or Choriambus constitute each one measure: an Anapaest, Iambus, or Trochee only a half-measure.

Hence a line consisting of six Dactyls is called *Hexameter* (ἕξ, six); while a line consisting of the same number of Iambi or Trochees, is called *Trimeter* (τρεις, three); and a line consisting of four Anapaests, *Dimeter* (δύο, twice).

§ 765. Elision (ἐλίσιο) or Synaloepha (συναλοιφή) is the striking-out of a vowel, or a syllable ending with *m*, at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, and is indicated by the sign ~: as,

Conclitēre omnes (conclitē|ēr'ōmnēs)

Mis miserum exolamēt (mē miser|ēxolām|ēt).

Pêrque hîēmēs (pêrqu'hîē|mēs).

Ūmbrārūm haec sēdēs (ūmbrār'|hæc sēd|ēs).

*Obs. 1.* Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse: as,

Sî ad vitulam spectas.

*Obs. 2.* The Elision of a long vowel before a short one is rare: as.

intimō amore.

*Obs. 3.* The Elision of an iambus is avoided: as,

disce mēō exemplo.

*Obs. 4.* If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of *est* is elided, and not the final vowel: thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read  
nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

*Obs. 5.* Sometimes a final long vowel remains in *Hiatus*, and is not elided: as,

Ter sunt | conat|t im|ponere | Pelîō | Ossam.—Virg.

*Obs. 6.* The Interjections ô, heu, ah, proh, are not elided: as,

Ô pater | ô hōmīn|um dī|vumque æt|erna pot|estas.—Virg.  
Ah ēgō | non alit|er trist|es ej|vincere | morbos.—Ib.

*Obs. 7.* Occasionally a long vowel or diphthong at the end of a word becomes short before a word beginning with a vowel: as,

Te Cory|dōn, ô Ā|lexi; tra|hit sua | quemque vol|uptas.—Virg.  
Insūlæ | Ionī|o in mag|no quas | dira Ce|laeno.—Virg.

N.B. This is an imitation of the Greek usage.

*Obs. 8.* Earlier writers sometimes elide *s*: as,

Nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Lucr.

§ 766. Synaerēsis (συναίρεσις) is the combination of two vowels into one, and is indicated by the sign  $\sim$ ,  $\sim$ . It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names at the end of a verse: as,

Si len|to fue|rint al|vēaria | vimine | texta.—Virg.

Caucasi|asque re|fert volu|cres fur|tumque Pro|methē<sup>^</sup>.—Virg.

So Orphic<sup>^</sup>, Typhoc<sup>^</sup>.

Synaeresis is chiefly found in the following words: dêinde, prôinde, abiête, ariête, dêesse and its derivatives, antêhac, and in the whole verb antêire.

§ 767. Diaerēsis (διαίρεσις) is the separation of a diphthong into two syllables: as, pictai.

## I. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER METRE.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed the Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls ( $\text{—} \cup \cup$ ), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee ( $\text{—} \cup$ ), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee ( $\text{—} \text{—}$ ). Instead of the first four dactyls, spondees may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

| 1                    | 2                    | 3                    | 4                    | 5                    | 6                   |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| $\text{—} \cup \cup$ | $\text{—} \cup \cup$ | $\text{—} \cup \cup$ | $\text{—} \cup \cup$ | $\text{—} \cup \cup$ | $\text{—} \cup$     |
| $\text{—} \text{—}$  | $\text{—} \text{—}$  | $\text{—} \text{—}$  | $\text{—} \text{—}$  | $\text{—} \text{—}$  | $\text{—} \text{—}$ |

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

1. *Four Dactyls.*

- (a) Rápidit iter liquidúm celerés nequē commovet alas.

2. *One Spondee and Three Dactyls.*

- (b) Impensáque súf potérít supérare cruoris,  
 (c) Témpora labúntúr tacítisquē nescimus annia,  
 (d) Nítimúr ín vétítum sémper cupimusque negata,  
 (e) Aspiciúnt oculis supérí mórtalia justis;

3. *Two Spondees and Two Dactyls.*

- (f) Dúm virés anníque sinúnt tolérate labores,  
 (g) Quárúm quae médiá'st nōn ést hábitabilis aestu,  
 (h) Cúrvaríque mánu's ét adúncōs crescer' in unguēs,  
 (i) Át pátér út terrás mundúmquē rúbescere vidit,  
 (k) Númíná nec spérnít síné poenā nostra sinamus,  
 (l) Ontígéránt rápidás limbōi Phasidos undas;

4. *Three Spondees and One Dactyl.*

- (m) Náturam expállás fureá tāmēn usque recurrit,  
 (n) Út desínt virés tāmēn ést laudanda voluntas,  
 (o) Aut pródessē vólúnt aut dēlectare poetae,  
 (p) Párturíúnt móntēs nascétúr ridiculus mus;

5. *Four Spondees.*

- (q) Ex aequó captis ardébant mentibus ambo.



§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called *Spondaic*. It usually concludes with a word of four syllables or one syllable: as,

Constitit atque oculis Phrygia signā cūcūmāpexit :

Cura deum soboles, magnū Jōvis incrēmētum :

Cum patribus populoque, penātibus ēt magnis dis.

*Obs.* Very rarely indeed do we find such a line as,

Aut levis ceras lentō dūcūnt argento.—Virg. Aen. VII. 634.

§ 771. Every Hexameter verse must have at least one *Caesura* (from *caedo*, “to cut”) which is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Hence the following line has five *Caesuras*:

Dōneo || eris || felix || multōs || numerābis || amīcos.

§ 772. The *Caesura* may be either strong or weak. The *strong Caesura* is when the foot is cut after its first *long* syllable: as,

Arma virūmque canō || Trojaē qui primus ab oris.

The *weak Caesura* is when the foot is cut after the first *short* syllable of a *Dactyl*: as,

Ō passi graviora || dabit deus his quoque finem.

§ 773. The *Caesuras* are named after the number of the half feet in Greek (*ἡμι-* and *μέρος*): hence, *Triemimeral*, after the first three half feet; *Penthemimeral*, after the first five half feet; *Hepththemimeral*, after the first seven half feet; *Ennehemimeral*, after the first nine half feet.

*Obs.* The two short syllables of the *Dactyl* are counted as one half foot.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the *Penthemimeral*, or *Hepththemimeral* *Caesura*. The *Penthemimeral* strong *Caesura* is the most common. The *Hepththemimeral* is generally used along with the *Triemimeral*: as,

Fāma malūm || quo nōn aliūd || velocius ūllum.

§ 775. Besides the Pause of the *Caesura*, a Hexameter usually has another pause, when the foot terminates with the word. Thus, in the following line, there are two pauses in addition to the *Penthemimeral Caesura*: as,

Tāntae || molis erat || Romānam || cōdere gēntem.

§ 776. The last word of a Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables. But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere. Compare Virg. *Aen.* 3, 680 (cypā | rissī); *Bucol.* 8, 1 (Alphēsi | boei); etc.

Obs. 1. A monosyllable may end a line if closely connected with another preceding it. Hence such endings as *laus ēst* (*Hor.*), *ūsa ēst* (*Virg.*), are admissible.

Obs. 2. Also a single monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect: as,

*Vértitar interea cœlum, & ruit decand Nôx* (*Virg.*).

§ 777. It is not usual except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of a Hexameter entirely dactyls or entirely spondees. An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement: an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement. These effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines:

*Quádrupedánte putrém sonitú quatit úngula cámpum.*

*Ílli intérsesé magná vi bráchia tollunt.*

§ 778. *Hypermeter*.—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (*ὑπὲρ μέτρον*). But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (or *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel: as,

*Inseritur vero ex fetu nucis arbitrius hœrída,  
Et steriles, &c.—Virg.*

*Janque iter emensi turres ac tectâ Látinôrum  
Ardua ceruebant, &c.—Virg.*

Obs. In Virgil, the redundant syllable is in most cases the enclitic *-que*.

## II. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with a Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet: as,

*Póstera lûx oritúr. Línguís animísque favéte,  
Núnc dicénda boná || súnt bona verba díe.—Ov.*

It has the following scheme:

— — — | — — — | — || — — — | — — — | —

Hence it appears :

1. That it consists of two members, separated by a Pause (the Penthemimeral).
2. That each member consists of two *entire* feet, originally Dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half* foot, consisting of a monosyllable. ( $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$ . Hence the name Pentameter.)
3. That the first two Dactyls only may be replaced by Spondees.
4. That it has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).
5. That the last syllable of the verse is common.

*Obs.* The best poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant : as,

Vix Priamús tantí || tótaque Trója fust.—Ov.

§ 780. The two Dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable: the first half admits of the following four varieties :

1. Two Dactyls : as,  
Crédidímús gēnērí || nómínibúsque tuís :
2. A combination of a Spondee and a dactyl : as,  
Trájectám gládió || mórtē períre juvát :  
Cúm mǎlā pēr lóngās || cónvaluére morás : (most usual form) :
3. Two spondees : as,  
Súprēmám bellís || ímposuísse manúm.

§ 781. The following are the principal rules observed by the most accurate poets in the structure of Pentameter Verse :

- (1.) The ending of the line is regularly a dissyllable.

*Obs.* But Catullus, Propertius, and others employ quadrisyllabic, and, less frequently, trisyllabic endings.

- (2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.

- (3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

*Obs.* The best model for Elegiac Verse is Ovid.

(For further particulars see Principia Lat. Part III.)

## III. TRIMETER IAMBIC (ACATALECTIC) VERSE.

§ 782. The Romans called this Verse *Senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi (*διωδιῖν ἰαμβικά*), but amongst the best poets it has the following form:—

1 2 3 4 5 6  
 — — | — — | — || — | — — | — — | — — |

§ 783. Hence it appears that the *odd* places (1, 3, 5) admit spondees instead of iambi: the 5th foot being regularly a spondee. The principal caesura is the penthemimeral: as,

Mētās pavórquē || fúnus ét frëndéns dolōr,  
 Prōnást timóri || sēmpēr ín pājús fidēs.

*Obs.* A Verse is called *Catalectic* (*καταλήγω*, to leave off), when the last foot wants one or sometimes two syllables; *acatalectic*, when it is complete; *hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable over.

§ 784. As the long syllable can be resolved into two short (except in the case of the last syllable of the verse), we often find

(A.) A tribrach in the 2nd and 4th place.

(B.) An anapaest or a dactyl in the 5th place.

(C.) A tribrach, an anapaest, or a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd place: as,

Quae-poēnā mānēat mēmet ét sedēs scio;

Hic laēva frōnis dóctā mōdērandis manus; "

Pýrrhí manú mactētur ét tímūlūm riget,

Tu tú malórum máchinátrix fáctinorum;

An álliqua poēnae párs meae ignotást mihi,

Lūcēraeve fixis únguibus venae fluant,

Quín pōtius íra cóncitūm pectús doma;

Fas ómne cédāt ábēat éxpulsús pudor,

Evásit ét pēnētráble fúnestum áttigit,

Parum ípse fidēs mihimet ín tutó tua.

## APPENDIX I.—THE CALENDAR. III

§ 922. The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But, *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quintilis* and *Septilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

- (1). *Kalendæ, arum*; *the Kalends*: being the 1st day of the month.
- (2). *Nōnæ, arum*; *the Nones*: being either the 5th or 7th day of the month, i. e., *nine* days before the Ides.\*
- (3). *Idūs, um (/)*; *the Ides*: being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

\* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the Nones (and consequently the Ides) fall late:

"In March, July, October, May,

The Nones fall on the seventh day."

Consequently in the remaining eight months they fall on the 5th.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its "*Kalends*," the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (*pridie Kalendas*). Thus, the 31st of December is called *the day before the Kalends of January*: often written *pridie Kal. Jan.* Then the day before that is the 3rd of the Kalends, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the Nones, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table:—

## CALENDAR FOR THE MONTH OF DECEMBER.

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. KALENDIS DECEMBRIBUS.          | 17. XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias. |
| 2. IV. ante Nonas Decembres.      | 18. XV. "                         |
| 3. III. " "                       | 19. XIV. " "                      |
| 4. Pridie Nonas Decembres.        | 20. XIII. " "                     |
| 5. NONIS DECEMBRIBUS.             | 21. XII. " "                      |
| 6. VIII. ante Idus Decembres.     | 22. XI. " "                       |
| 7. VII. " "                       | 23. X. " "                        |
| 8. VI. " "                        | 24. IX. " "                       |
| 9. V. " "                         | 25. VIII. " "                     |
| 10. IV. " "                       | 26. VII. " "                      |
| 11. III. " "                      | 27. VI. " "                       |
| 12. Pridie Idus Decembres.        | 28. V. " "                        |
| 13. IDUS DECEMBRIBUS.             | 29. IV. " "                       |
| 14. XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias. | 30. III. " "                      |
| 15. XVIII. " "                    | 31. Pridie " "                    |
| 16. XVII. " "                     |                                   |

—§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. And as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the Kalends form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them.

*Obs.* Hence the rule,—After subtracting, add *one* for the Nones or Ides, and *two* for the Kalends.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, Kalendis Martiis, Idibus Martiis, die quinto ante Kalendas Martias. Both die and ante were often omitted, as XIV. Kal. Mai., which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But another very common way was to begin with ante, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under its government: as, ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Martias, usually written a. d. XIV. Kal. Mai. In this construction the Accusative Kalendas remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by ante.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In ante dies octāvum et septimum Kalendas Octōbres cōmitti dicta dies. *The time was fixed for the comitia for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres. *A public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Calendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the Kalends of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, Bissextile (*bis-sextus*). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th February) appear to have been distinguished as prior and posterior.

*NOTE.*—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page:—

## § 928. CALENDARIUM.

| Our days<br>of the<br>Month. | March, May, July,<br>October,<br>have 31 days. | January, August,<br>December,<br>have 31 days. | April, June, September,<br>November,<br>have 30 days. | February has 28 days,<br>and in<br>Leap Year 29. |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1.                           | KALENDS.                                       | KALENDS.                                       | KALENDS.                                              | KALENDS.                                         |
| 2.                           | VI.                                            | IV.                                            | IV.                                                   | IV.                                              |
| 3.                           | V.                                             | III.                                           | III.                                                  | III.                                             |
| 4.                           | IV.                                            | II.                                            | II.                                                   | II.                                              |
| 5.                           | III.                                           | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 6.                           | ante Nonas.                                    | ante Nonas.                                    | ante Nonas.                                           | ante Nonas.                                      |
| 7.                           | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 8.                           | VI.                                            | VI.                                            | VI.                                                   | VI.                                              |
| 9.                           | V.                                             | V.                                             | V.                                                    | V.                                               |
| 10.                          | IV.                                            | IV.                                            | IV.                                                   | IV.                                              |
| 11.                          | III.                                           | III.                                           | III.                                                  | III.                                             |
| 12.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 13.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 14.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 15.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 16.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 17.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 18.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 19.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 20.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 21.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 22.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 23.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 24.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 25.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 26.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 27.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 28.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 29.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 30.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |
| 31.                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                          | Idus.                                                 | Idus.                                            |

## APPENDIX II.—MONEY.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the *as* (*assis*), or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the *as* were designated as follows :—

|                 |              |                 |          |                 |                   |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|-------------------|
| Uncia,          | one ounce ;  | $\frac{1}{16}$  | that is, | $\frac{1}{16}$  | of an <i>as</i> . |
| Sextans, ntis,  | two ounces ; | $\frac{2}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{1}{8}$   | "                 |
| Quadrans, ntis, | three "      | $\frac{3}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{3}{16}$  | "                 |
| Triens, ntis,   | four "       | $\frac{4}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{1}{4}$   | "                 |
| Quincunx, nois, | five "       | $\frac{5}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{5}{16}$  | "                 |
| Sēmis, issis,   | six "        | $\frac{6}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{3}{8}$   | "                 |
| Septunx, nclis  | seven "      | $\frac{7}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{7}{16}$  | "                 |
| Bes, bossis,    | eight "      | $\frac{8}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{1}{2}$   | "                 |
| Dodrans,* ntis  | nine "       | $\frac{9}{16}$  | "        | $\frac{9}{16}$  | "                 |
| Dextans,† ntis, | ten "        | $\frac{10}{16}$ | "        | $\frac{5}{8}$   | "                 |
| Deunx, nois,    | eleven "     | $\frac{11}{16}$ | "        | $\frac{11}{16}$ | "                 |

\* = de-quadrans.

† = de-sextans.

*Obs.* The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus *terna jūgēra et septunces* (Liv.), is *three acres and seven-twelfths (a-piece)* : *hæres ex asse, heir to the entire estate, ex dodrante, to three-fourths, etc.* So *fenus ex triente factum erat besibus* (Cic.), *interest had risen from  $\frac{1}{4}$  per cent. (per month) to  $\frac{3}{4}$*  ; or from 4 to 8 per cent. (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the *as* was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value ("*vilem redigatur ad assem*," Hor. at. 1, 1, 43). The *denarius* was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 *asses*. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the *sestertius* (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a *denarius*, and equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*, or a little more than *2d*. The *sesterce* was also a silver coin, and both it and the *denarius* maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

*Obs.* *Sestertius* is a contraction for *sēmis tertius*, lit. *the third is minus a half*, i. e.  $2\frac{1}{2}$ . This was often written *IIS*, whence the common abbreviation *HS* or *IIS*.

§ 931. Sums of 1000 and under are counted regularly : *as, mille sestertii*, 1000 *sesterces* ; *trecenti sestertii*, 300 *sesterces*. But in expressing several thousand *sestertii*, the neuter plural *sestertia* was employed, with which *millia* must be understood, unless expressed : *as duo sestertia* or *duo millia sestertiūm*, 2000 *sesterces*.

§ 932. To express sums of a million of *sesterces* and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, *decies*, &c., are used with *sestertium* or *HS*, the words "*centēna millia*" being understood. Thus

SM. L. G.

P



*décies sestertium* (= *décies centēna millia sestertium*, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces*. (Sometimes we find only *décies centena*, "*millia sestertium*" being understood.) In like manner *sexāgies sestertium* is *six millions of sesterces*.

In such expressions *sestertium* must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,

*Argenti ad summam sertertii dēcies in aerārium rettūlit, he brought into the treasury up to the sum of one million of sesterces.*—*LIV.* 45, 4.

*Syngrapha sestertii centies, a Bill of ten millions of sesterces.*—*CIC. Phil.* 2, 37.

*Serviliae sexāgies sestertio margaritam mercātus est, he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces.*—*SUET. CAES.* 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement: as, *accēpi vicies dūcenta triginta quinque millia quadringentos dūcem et septem nummos, 2,235,417 sesterces.*—*CIC. Verr.* 1, 14.

### APPENDIX III.—ROMAN NAMES.

§ 983. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as *Marcus Tullius Cicero*, *Caius Julius Caesar*. Of these the middle one was properly called *nōmen*, being *the name of his gens*; the third, *cognōmen*, being that of *his family* (*fāmilia*); the first, *praenōmen*, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "*Christian name*."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called *agnōmen*, or *an appendage* to the name proper: as, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*. When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, *-anus*. Thus, the son of *L. Aemilius Paulus*, adopted by *P. Cornelius Scipio*, became *P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus*.

*Obs. 1.* The same individual might have more than one *agnomen*. Thus the *P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus* mentioned above, was also called *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus*.

*Obs. 2.* The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus *C. Fannius* (*Cic. Am.* 1, 3) is called *M. F.*, i. e. *Marcii filius*; and *Cn. Pompeius Strabo*, father of the triumvir, is called *Cn. Pompeius*, *Sex. F.*, *Cn. N. Strabo*; i. e. *son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus*.

*Obs. 3.* Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as *Julia*, *Pompēia*, *Sempronia*.

*Obs. 4.* In some cases an individual had only two names: as, *C. Marius*

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (nomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even an honourable agnomen, like Magnus, Africanus, was transmitted to his family by the person who bore it.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, Tiro, is called M. Tullius Tiro. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, Q. Horatius Flaccus (the father), P. Terentius Afer; L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, etc.

## APPENDIX IV.—ABBREVIATIONS.

### § 936. A. PRAENOMINA.

|           |          |            |           |
|-----------|----------|------------|-----------|
| A.        | Aulus.   | Mam.       | Mamercus. |
| App.      | Appius.  | N. or Num. | Numerius. |
| C.        | Caius.   | P.         | Publius.  |
| D.        | Decimus. | Q.         | Quintus.  |
| Cn. (Gn.) | Cnaeus.  | S. or Sex. | Sextus.   |
| K.        | Kaeso.   | Ser.       | Servius.  |
| L.        | Lucius.  | Sp.        | Spurius.  |
| M.        | Marcus.  | T.         | Titus.    |
| M'.       | Manius.  | Ti.        | Tiberius. |

### § 937. B. TITLES, &c. (ANCIENT).

|       |                                       |            |                                           |
|-------|---------------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Aed.  | Aedilis.                              | O. M.      | Optimus Maximus<br>(surnames of Jupiter). |
| Cos.  | Consul.                               | Pont. Max. | Pontifex Maximus.                         |
| Coes. | Consules.                             | Quir.      | Quirites.                                 |
| Des.  | Designatus.                           | S.P.Q.R.   | Senatus Populusque<br>Romanus.            |
| D.    | Divus (applied to deceased emperors). | Tr. Pl.    | Tribunus Plebis.                          |
| Imp.  | Imperator.*                           |            |                                           |
| P. C. | Patres Conscripti.                    |            |                                           |

\* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name: as, M. Tullius Cicero Imperator; in the latter it was prefixed, as Imperator C. Julius Caesar.

## § 938. C. MISCELLANEOUS (ANCIENT).

|          |                                             |                   |                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| A.       | Absolve, <sup>1</sup> Antiquo. <sup>2</sup> | F. F. F.          | Felix, faustum, fortunatum.                       |
| C.       | Condemno. <sup>1</sup>                      |                   |                                                   |
| N. L.    | Non liquet. <sup>1</sup>                    | H. C. S. E.       | Hic conditus situs est. <sup>2</sup>              |
| U. R.    | Uti Rogas. <sup>2</sup>                     | H. M. H. N. S.    | Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur. <sup>2</sup> |
| A. U. C. | Anno urbis conditae.                        |                   |                                                   |
| D. D.    | Dono dedit.                                 | L.                | Libertas.                                         |
| D. D. D. | Dat, dicat, dedicat.                        | M. P.             | Mille Passuum.                                    |
| D. M.    | Dis Manibus. <sup>2</sup>                   | N.                | Nepos.                                            |
| D. O. M. | Deo optimo, maximo.                         | Ob.               | Obiit.                                            |
| F.       | Filius.                                     | Resp.             | Respublica.                                       |
| S. D. or | } Salutem dicit.                            | S. C.             | Senatus consultum.                                |
| S. only. |                                             | S. V. B. E. E. V. | Si vales bene est, ego valeo. <sup>4</sup>        |
| S. P. D. | Salutem plurimam dicit. <sup>4</sup>        | Pot.              | Potestas.                                         |
| F. C.    | Faciendum curavit. <sup>2</sup>             | V.                | Vixit. <sup>2</sup>                               |

<sup>1</sup> Judicial formula.<sup>2</sup> Used in voting (with respect to laws).<sup>3</sup> Sepulchral.<sup>4</sup> Epistolary.

## § 939. D. MODERN.

|                  |                                |                        |                                                     |
|------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| A.B. or B.A.     | Artium Baccalaureus.           | leg.                   | lege, legendum.                                     |
| A.M. or M.A.     | Artium Magister.               | LL.B.                  | Legum Baccalaureus.                                 |
| A.C.             | Ante Christum.                 | LL.D.                  | Legum Doctor.                                       |
| cet.             | cetera.                        | M.B.                   | Medicinae Baccalaureus.                             |
| cf.              | confer, conferatur.            | M.D.                   | Medicinae Doctor.                                   |
| cod. codd.       | codex, codices                 | MS., MSS.              | Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.                        |
| D.               | Doctor.                        |                        |                                                     |
| del.             | dele, deleatur.                | Mus. D.                | Musicae Doctor.                                     |
| ed., edd.        | editio, editiones.             | N.B.                   | Nota bene.                                          |
| e.g.             | exempli gratia.                | N.T.                   | Novum Testamentum.                                  |
| etc.             | et cetera.                     |                        |                                                     |
| h.e.             | hoc est.                       | Obs.                   | Observa.                                            |
| I.H.S.           | Jesus Hominum Salvator.        | P.S.                   | Post scriptum.                                      |
|                  |                                | q.v.                   | quod vide.                                          |
| I.N.R.I.         | Jesus Nazaraeus Rex Judaeorum. | sc.                    | scilicet.                                           |
| J.C.             | Jesus Christus.                | sq., sqq.              | quod sequitur, or pl.                               |
| I. ctus (Ictus). | Juris consultus.               | S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P. | Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor. |
| ibid., ib.       | ibidem.                        |                        |                                                     |
| id.              | idem.                          | V. cel., V. cl.        | Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.                      |
| J.U.D.           | Juris Utriusque Doctor.        | V.D.M.                 | Verbi divini Minister.                              |
| l.c., ll. cc.    | locus citatus, loci citati.    | V.T.                   | Vetus Testamentum.                                  |

## APPENDIX V.—VERSUS MEMORIALES.

## 1. DIFFERENCE OF QUANTITY IN CERTAIN WORDS.

- 1 Est *acer* in silvis, equus *acer* Olympia vincit.  
Non *appāret* iners, faciendas *appāret* ut res.  
*Culgas*, manicas *cāligas*que ubi cernere non est.  
Voce tremente *cānet*, qui toto vertice *cānet*.
- 5 Deficit ille *cānis*, cui candent tergora *cānis*.  
In magno et *cāro* prostat *cāro* rara macello.  
*Œdo* facit cessi, *cecidī* cado, caedo *cecili*.  
Fert ancilla *cōlum*, penetrat res humida *cōlum*.  
Vin' bonus esse *cōmes*? Sermones occipe *cōmes*.
- 10 Compte *cōmas* puer; heus! *cōmis cōmes* esto magist:  
Quod mihi *consuēram*, *consuēram* tendere rete.  
Bellandi *cupīdo* damno est sua saepe *cupīdo*.  
Non violant *decōris* memores praecepta *decōris*.  
*Dedēre* dis animum par est, qui tanta *dedēre*.
- 15 Vin' tibi *dicamus*, cui carmina nostra *dicemus*?  
*Diffidit* is foedus, male qui *diffidit* amico.  
Per *rēges*, deus, atque *dūces dūces*que *rēges*que.  
Carnem sanus *ēdit*, carmen doctissimus *ēdit*.  
*Educāt* hic catulos, quos mox *educāt* in apros.
- 20 Si sapis, *ēs*, ut sis: nimirum non *ēs* edendo.  
Qui *fābula* ludunt, pueris et *fābula* grata est.  
Ni sit fida *fīdes*, non *fīdes*: quaere fideles.  
Decepit me saepe *frētum* nimis abiete *frētum*.  
Per quod quis peccat, per *īdem* punitur et *īdem*.
- 25 *Indīcat* bellum rex huic, qui se *indīcat* hostem.  
Non talos *jacērent*, si ludicra prava *jacērent*.  
Si potans sermone *lābes*, fuge: nam prope *lābes*.  
Est gravis ille *lābor*, cuius sub pondere *lābor*.  
Cum ratione *lēges*, quem magna ad munera *lēges*.
- 30 Tu, quaecunque *lēgis*, non instar *lēgis* habebis.  
In silvis *lepōres*, in verbis quaere *lepōres*.  
Imverbis *lēvis*; *lēvis* est, qui pondere parvo est.  
Non *līber*, ut sis *līber*, aget, sed recta voluntas.  
Deceptura viros pingit *māla* femina *mālas*.
- 35 In rate triste *mālum*, quum fracta est turbine *mālus*.  
*Mālō* mihi pulchrum *mālō* decerpere *mālum*.  
Nobilis est mulier *matrōna*, at *Matrōna* flumen.  
Officium *mīseris* offert, si *mīseris* aera.  
Frumentum *mōlītur*, sed homo *mōlītur* agenda.
- 40 Sunt bene *mōrati* multi nec in urbe *mōrati*.  
Non sunt se *fīsi*, *nīsi* qui sunt numine *nīsi*.

- Nitēre* cum studio, si vis aliquando *nitēre*.  
 Sit *nōta nōta* : *nōtus* ventus, sed *nōtus* amicus.  
*Oblitus* decoris ne dedecore *oblītus* adsit.
- 45 *Obstidet* obsidens, possidens possidet exin.  
*Occidet* latro, misere quoad *occidet* ipse.  
 Omnia jam *fiunt*, *fiēri* quae posse negabam.  
*Os ōris* produc, sed *ōs ossis* corripe, quaeso.  
 Stagnat sicca *pdlus*, fixus stat *pālus* acutus.
- 50 Saepe puer *pāret*, *pāret* ut sibi dora parentis.  
 Gaudet uterque *pārens*, quum filius est bene *pārens*  
*Pendēre* vult justus, sed fur *pendēre* recusat.  
 Est color in *pica* *picoque* nivisque *ptcisque*.  
 Ludo *pīla*, *pīlum* contorqueo, *pīla* columna est.
- 55 Pro reti aut regione *plāga* est, pro verbere *plāga*.  
 Sunt cives urbis *pōpulus*, sed *pōpulus* arbor.  
 Si vitare *pōtes*, ne plurima pocula *pōtes*.  
*Prōfectus* ostende, schola non ante *prōfectus*.  
 Non quae quisque *rēfert*, sapientis discere *rēfert*.
- 60 Dat *rēpente* gradu serpens, fuge, damna *rēpente*.  
 Si qua *sēde sēdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sēdes*,  
 Illa *sēde sēde*, si nova tuta minus.  
 Lacte *sērum*, *sērumque* die secernitur ipso.  
 Num natale *sōlum* placet omni tempore *sōlum* ?
- 65 Hos non *suspicio*, quibus est *suspicio* prompta.  
 Integer est *tōtus*, *tōtus* est, quotus ordine, quivis.  
*Tribula* grana terit, *tribuli* nascuntur in agris.  
 Gressum fige *vādīs*, quando per flumina *vādīs*.  
 Spondet *vas vādīs*, at *vas vāsīs* continet escam.
- 70 Si transire *vēlis* maris undas, utere *vēlis*.  
*I'ēneris* ad *Vēneris*, mecum *vēnērīs* ut inde.  
 Merx *vēnit* numis, *vēnit* huc aliunde profectus.  
*Vinctur* victus, vinctus non *vinctur* ultro.  
 Ni probitate *vīres*, male jactas, inscie, *vīres*.
- 75 Ut rem quamque *vōces*, debes cognoscere *vōces*.  
*Vōmere* quam tollis, *vōmere* agrum terra videtur.

## 2. DIFFERENCE OF MEANING IN CERTAIN WORDS.

- Cantat *acanthīs* avis, sed crescit *acanthus* in agris.  
 Plus *aetate* graves hieme atque *aestate* premuntur  
 Qui confirmat, *ait*, sed qui responsa dat, *inquit*.
- 80 *Alga* venit pelago, sed nascitur *ulva* palude.  
 Sancta voces *arcana*, putes *secreta* profana.  
*Arma* tegunt corpus, quod figere *tela* minantur.  
*Armus* brutorum est, *humerus* ratione fruentum.



- Turbat asilus equos, miseros suscepit asyllum.*  
 85 *Fac felix aliis videre tibi que beatus.*  
*Bilis inest felli, si fel vesica putatur.*  
*Qui sculpsit, caelut, servans abscondita celut.*  
*Splendent candidus atque niger, non albus et ater.*  
*Haec cassis galea est, hi casses retia signant :*  
 90 *Casside conde caput, capiantur cassibus apri.*  
*Clava ferit, clavus firmat, clavisque recludit.*  
*Cominus ense ferit, jaculo cadit eminus ipse.*  
*Comoeli scenam, comedones quaerite coenam.*  
*Conamur magnam, molimur difficilem rem.*  
 95 *Consortes fortuna eadem, socios labor idem,*  
*Unum collegas efficit officium ;*  
*Sed caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa sodales.*  
*Corrigit invitos, emendat cura sequaces.*  
*Sanguis inest venis, cruor est de corpore fusus.*  
 100 *Immotus facit, at motus sunt signa cubantis.*  
*Est cutis in carne, at detracta a corpore pellis.*  
*Delige cum cura, tum dilige semper amicum.*  
*Deko quod scriptum est, sed flammam exstinguo lucernae*  
*Longius ire nequit, quicumque diutius ivit.*  
 105 *Uxorem vir ducit, at illi femina nubit.*  
*Edicunt reges, indicit festa sacerdos ;*  
*Indicat auctorem facti, qui novit eundem.*  
*Expetit hoc nemo, quod non satis expedit ipsi.*  
*Expugnat capiens, oppugnans obsidet urbem.*  
 110 *Fas res divinas, at jus humana tuetur.*  
*Forfice sartores, tonsores forcipe gaudent,*  
*At faber ignitum forcipe prensat opus.*  
*Fornix est arcus, sed fornax saxa perurit.*  
*Pistor habet furnum, fornace hypocausta calescunt.*  
 115 *Murdet equus frenos, vector quem flectit habenis.*  
*Frontem dic capitis, frondem dic arboris esse.*  
*Gignit ager fruges, nascuntur in arbore fructus.*  
*Vincentes fugies, sed victos ipse fugabis.*  
*Quis duxit bellum, Poenus quod gessit et egit ?*  
 120 *Gibba premit tergum, sed collo struma molesta est.*  
*Bruto gurgulio est, homini gula, guttur utrique.*  
*Esca sapit pulchre, quam gustat lingua libenter.*  
*Mobile dependet, sed res immobilis haeret.*  
*Ales hirundo canit, nat hirudo, movetur arundo.*  
 125 *Arma movent hostes, inimici jurgia noctunt.*  
*Invidus invidiae reus ipse invitus amicum.*  
*Castra sacramentum, jusjurandum iora poscunt.*  
*Lacteo lac sugo ; lacto lac praebeo nato :*

- Infans dum lactet, nutrix hunc sedula lactat.
- 130 *Laetitiam* vultu prae te fers, *gaudia* mente.  
Ne fer *laternam*, quum prodis, absque *lucerna*.  
Non *licet* asse mihi, qui me non asse *licetur*.  
Tango *lyram* digitis, sed *liram* vomere findo.  
Ad mare *litus* habes, ambas ad flumina *ripas*.
- 135 Scripta *locos* praebent, praebent *loca* terra polusque.  
*Humidus* est intra *madidus*que est uvidus extra.  
*Articulus* membri, sed *membrum* corporis est pars.  
*Mente* pia *mensa* frueri, omni *mense* parata.  
Venduntur *merces*, operantibus est data *merces*.
- 140 Sperne *minas* auri, vulgi contemne *minas*, rex.  
Confundit temere *miserum* cum *paupere* tiro.  
*Muros* cum vallis ac fossis *moenia* dicas.  
Dat *mortem* natura, *necem* vis, fataque *letum*.  
*Mulcet* equos famulus, sed *vaccas* rustica *mulget*.
- 145 In muris *mures* *murique* in moenibus insunt.  
Sis unus semper *nostrum* *nostrique* memento.  
*Nucleus* in pomis, *gramum* reperitur in herbis.  
*Otia* dant *odium*: non hoc habet *otia* multa.  
*Offactis* id, quod *olet*: *fragrat*, non *foetet* odorum.
- 150 Dic, *opus* est, *operam* confundere semper *opes*que.  
Nox *operit* terras, fures te quum *opperiuntur*.  
Qui didicit, *gnarus*, qui exercuit, ille *peritus*.  
*Praeco* vocet cives, adeat *caducifer* hostes.  
*Vas* vitam, numinos *praes* praestat, *sponsor* utrumque.
- 155 *Prandia* nulla gulo nisi post *jentacula* sumit.  
*Prora* prior, *puppis* pars ultima, et ima *carina*.  
*Prospera* fert fortuna, deus dat *fausta* supremus.  
*Prunus* habet *prunum*, *prunam* focus, aura *pruinum*.  
*Forfice* *tondentur*, quos stricta *novacula* *radit*.
- 160 Ipse *regit* cives *regnans* rex sive *senatus*.  
*Aemulus* invidia, *rivalis* amore movetur.  
Corpore *robustus* diceris, *pectore* *fortis*.  
In terris sunt *sancta*, deo quae *sacra* putantur.  
Lignum est oblongum *scutum*, *clipeus*que rotundum est.
- 165 Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste.  
*Seditiosus* erit civis, gens victa *rebellis*.  
*Aetatis* nostrae pars est extrema *senectus*.  
Natura *sermo* fuit, est *oratio* facta.  
Qui *simul* egreditur, non tecum semper ita *una*.
- 170 Quae non sunt, *simulo*; quae sunt, ea *dissimulantur*.  
Sperne merum, contemne pericula, despice vulgus.  
*Tempora* florescunt, dum cingant *tempora* cani.  
*Est aetas* hominum, contra sunt *tempora* rerum.

- Hastam dic *teretem*, sphaeram dic esse *rotundam*.  
 175 *Tranquillus* placide transit, recubante *quieto*.

*Ungula* conculcat; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*.  
 Est *vacuus* non obsessus, non plenus *inanis*.

- Miles* *vallat* opus: stabulum *sepimus* et hortum.  
 Si *via* longa tua est, sit *iter* non segne, viator.

- 180 Quos *vicit*, *vinxit*, dum *vixit*, barbarus hostis.  
 Ne confunde *viros*, *vires*, *virus*que *virum*que.  
 Illum tu *caveas*, tibi qui non cavit *amicus*.  
*Coeptus* erit laedi, qui laedere coeperit ipse.  
*Consulo* te doctum; *tibi consulo*, dum tua *curo*.

- 185 *Conveniunt* alios alii, quos *convenit* inter.  
*Imponis* stupido, cui res *imponis* inane.  
*In studia incurbas*, libris *incumbere* noli.  
 Si nos dura *mument*, *maneant* constantia nobis.  
 Sit persona *sui similis*, *similis sibi* res sit.

- 190 A moerore *vacet*, studiis cui rite *vacandum* est.

### 3. NAMES OF RELATIONSHIP.

- Agnati* *patris*, *cognati* *matris* habentur.  
 Dic *patruos* *patris* fratres, *amitas*que sorores.  
*Frater avunculus* est, soror est *matertera*, *matris*.  
 Quos fratres generant natos, dices *patrueles*,  
 195 Sed *consobrinos* dic, quos peperere sorores;  
 Quos soror et frater gignunt, dices *amitinos*.  
*Vir* *natae* *gener* est, *nurus* est pro conjuge nati.  
*Uxor* *genitor* *socer* est, *socrus*que *genitrix*.  
*Vitricus* haud verus pater est, materque *noverca*.  
 200 Ipse viri frater *levir*, sed *fratria* fratris  
*Uxor*; *glos* uxor fratris, soror atque mariti.

### 4. THE MUSES.

- Otto* gesta canens transactis tempora reddit.  
*Melpomene* tragico proclamat moesta boatu.  
*Comica* lascivo gaudet sermone *Thalia*.  
 205 Dulciloquos calamos *Euterpe* flatibus urget.  
*Terpsichore* affectus citharis movet, imperat, auget.  
*Plectra* gerens *Erato* saltat pede, carmine, vultu.  
*Carmina* *Calliope* libris heroica mandat.  
*Uranie* coeli motus scrutatur et astra.  
 210 Signat cuncta manu, loquitur *Polyhymnia* gestu.  
*Mentis* *Apollineae* vis has movet undique *Musas*.  
 In medio residens complectitur cuncta *Phoebus*.



## 5. NAMES OF THE WINDS.

- Asper ab axe ruit *Boreas*, furit *Eurus* ab ortu,  
*Auster* amat medium solem, *Zephyrusque* cadentem.  
 215 Flant *Subsolanus*, *Vulturnus* et *Eurus* ab ortu;  
*Circius* occasum *Zephyrusque Favonius* adflant.  
 Et solis medio surgunt *Notus*, *Africus*, *Auster*;  
 220 Conveniunt *Aquilo*, *Boreas* et *Caurus* ab arsa.

## 6. SIGNS OF THE ZODIAC.

- Sunt *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, *Leo*, *Virgo*,  
 220 *Libraque*, *Scorpius*, *Arcitenens*, *Caper*, *Amphora*, *Pisc*

## 7. THE SEVEN WISE MEN OF GREECE.

- Cum *Solone* *Thales*, *Cleobulus* cum *Fericiandro*,  
*Chilon* *Spartanus*, *Pittacus* atque *Bias*.

## 8. THE FOUR SEASONS.

- Ver*, *Aestas*, *Auctumnus*, *Hiems* dominantur in anno.  
*Aestas* a *Geminis*, *Auctumnus* *Virgine* surgit;  
 225 *Bruma* *Sagittifero*, *Ver* *Piscibus* incipit esse.

## 9. THE NAMES OF THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

- Nomina quae septem cujusque adjuncta diebus  
*Hebdomadis*, sex constituunt cum sole planetae.  
 Primum rite diem sibimet *Sol* vindicat almus.  
 Proxima fraterno succedit *Luna* nitori.  
 230 Tertiis insequitur rutilo *Mars* sidere fulgens.  
*Mercurius* quartum signat mediumque dierum.  
 Ab *Jove* quinta dies insigne est nomen adepta.  
*Sexta* salutiferum sequitur *Venus* atque parentem.  
 Omnia supergressi *Saturni* septima lux est.

THE END,

## NOTICE.

*Kalaidoscope* ~~~~~ *Shiver*  
 THE present Work is an Abridgment of the Student's Latin Grammar, adapted to the use of Junior Classes. One of the main objects of the Work is to introduce into Schools some of the results of the linguistic discoveries of modern philologists, without changing the general form and arrangement of the Latin Grammar.

The numbering of the paragraphs of the Student's Grammar has been retained, in order to facilitate reference from one work to the other.

---

*Uniform with the present Work.*

**A SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR.** Abridged from the larger work of Professor CURTIUS. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**THE GREEK ACCIDENCE.** Extracted from the above work. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

~~~~~  
**INITIA GRÆCA: Part I.** An INTRODUCTION to GREEK. Containing a Grammar, Delectus, Exercise-Book, and Vocabularies. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**INITIA GRÆCA: Part II.** A READING BOOK. Containing Short Tales, Anecdotes, Fables, Mythology, and Grecian History; with a Lexicon. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**INITIA GRÆCA: Part III.** An INTRODUCTION to GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION: containing a systematic course of Exercises on the Syntax, with the principal rules of Syntax, and an English-Greek Vocabulary to the Exercises. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

~~~~~  
*For Colleges and the Upper Forms in Schools.*

**THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.** By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., and T. D. HALL, M.A. Post 8vo. 6s.

**THE STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR.** By Professor CURTIUS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. Post 8vo. 6s.

**ELUCIDATIONS OF CURTIUS' GREEK GRAMMAR.** Translated from the German. By EVELYN ABBOT. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**PLATO.** THE APOLOGY OF SOCRATES, THE CRITO, AND PART OF THE PHÆDO; with Notes in English from STALLBAUM, and SCHLEIERMACHER's Introductions. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

